



GUIDE

# New Hello! ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors

**1<sup>st</sup>**  
Prep.  
2024  
FIRST TERM



**AL TALABA BOOKSTORE**

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faqqa - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

E-mail: [info@elmoasserbooks.com](mailto:info@elmoasserbooks.com)

☎ 15014

[www.elmoasserbooks.com](http://www.elmoasserbooks.com)



**Specifications for First Year Preparatory (1<sup>st</sup> Term) English Examination 2023 - 2024**  
مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الإعدادي الفصل الدراسي الأول  
للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٣ / ٢٠٢٤

Marks : 24      2023 / 2024      Time : Two hours

**A Listening (4 Marks)**

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :** (4 Marks)

Students listen to a text from (25 - 30) words. Topics should be from the Set Books. Students listen and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. (1 Mark each)

يستمع الطالب إلى نص استماع لا يزيد عن (٢٥ - ٣٠) كلمة ويجب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

**B Language Functions (2.5 Marks)**

**2 Complete the following dialogue :**

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions (3 responses & 2 stimuli) is provided. The students are asked to complete the deletions completely without providing them with any part of the answers. The situation should be provided and clear. The first sentence is given in full. (0.5 Mark each)

يكمل الطالب المحادثة بها خمس فراغات، (٣ إجابات وسؤالين) ويطلب من الطالب أن يملأ هذه الفراغات وتُعطى الجملة الأولى كاملة.

**C Reading Comprehension (4.5 Marks)**

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions :** (4.5 Marks)

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. The students are required to answer **THREE (3)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each (Half a mark each) and **THREE (3)** open-ended questions (One mark each).

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills :

- \* Giving the main idea (1 question)
- \* Extracting information (2 questions)
- \* Understanding reference (1 question)
- \* Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (1 question)
- \* Critical thinking skill (1 question)



- عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال وثلاث أسئلة بأداة استفهام :  
لا بد أن تقيس الأسئلة مهارات قراءة قطعة الفهم التالية :  
- إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية. - استخراج المعلومات. - فهم (المرجع / الإشارة إلى).  
- تخمين معنى مفردة في النص. - مهارة التفكير النقدي.

## D Vocabulary & Structures (7 Marks)

### 4 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d : (5 Marks)

**TEN (10)** multiple-choice questions (7 vocabulary & 3 structures) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. (0.5 Mark each)

يختار الطالب الإجابة الصحيحة في 10 جمل (7 جمل مفردات لغوية + 3 جمل قواعد لغوية) بها أربع خيارات لكل جملة.

### 5 Read and correct the underlined words : (2 Marks)

**FOUR (4)** structure sentences, with an underlined error in each, are provided. The students are required to correct the error in each sentence. (0.5 Mark each)

يقوم الطالب بتصحيح الكلمات التي تحتها خط في أربع جمل تقيس القواعد اللغوية فقط.

## E Writing (6 Marks)

### 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on ..... : (6 Marks)

The students are asked to write a paragraph from **SEVENTY FIVE (75)** to **EIGHTY FIVE (85)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.

(One mark for organization – One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for choice of vocabulary – One mark for spelling – One mark for punctuation – One mark for grammar)

مطلوب من الطالب كتابة فقرة انشائية من ٧٥ : ٨٥ كلمة عن موضوع محدد مرتبط بالكتب المدرسية.

ملحوظة : يجب مراعاة الآتي :

- 1) درجة على التنظيم - 1 درجة على ترابط الأفكار - 1 درجة على اختيار المفردات اللغوية - 1 درجة على التهجى بشكل صحيح - 1 درجة على علامات الترقيم - 1 درجة على القواعد اللغوية).

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للنصف الأول الإعدادى للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٣/٢٠٢٤ First Term

Months	New Hello! English for Preparatory Schools Year One (SB+WB)
October	Unit 1 + Unit 2
November	Unit 3 + Review A + Unit 4
December	Unit 5 + Unit 6
January 2024	Review B + General Revision



# Contents

	<b>Check Your English</b>	13
Unit <b>1</b>	My family and me	16
Unit <b>2</b>	It's my favourite subject	68
Unit <b>3</b>	Different people	121
Review <b>A</b>		170
Unit <b>4</b>	We're using technology !	176
Unit <b>5</b>	Holidays	228
Unit <b>6</b>	Let's eat!	278
Review <b>B</b>		330
Videoscript		336
Answers of Paragraphs		339
Listening Texts		343







## Check your English

WB pages 70 and 71

### Vocabulary

age (n)	عمر / سن	jump (ed) (v)	يقفز
favourite (adj)	مفضل	weather (n)	الطقس
toy animal (n)	حيوان لعبة	rainy (adj)	ممطر
park (n)	حديقة عامة	restaurant (n)	مطعم
sports (n)	ألعاب رياضية	twice (adv)	مرتين
cook (n)	طباخ	tail (n)	ذيل
gate (n)	بوابة	shop (n)	محل

### 1 This is a fact file of some students. Look and make sentences.

1. Name : Basel

Age : 12

Likes : football

Favourite food : fish with rice

2. Name : Fatma

Age : 13

Likes : books

Favourite food : chicken

3. Name : Maher and Hany

Age : 12

Likes : tennis

Favourite food : ice cream

4. Name : .....

Age : .....

Likes : .....

Favourite food : .....

1. His name is Basel. He is twelve. He likes football. His favourite food is fish with rice.

2. ....

3. ....

### 2 Complete fact file 4 for you and write sentences like those in Exercise 1.

4. ....

### 3 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة. (تصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. The bag is .....

a. new

b. Injy's

c. Lama's

d. Lama's sister's



2. The pencil case is .....  
 a. red                      b. blue                      c. yellow                      d. green
3. Lama has got .....  
 a. a book about sport                      b. a toy animal  
 c. an English book                      d. a book about animals
4. She has also got .....  
 a. some oranges    b. an orange                      c. an apple                      d. a ball
5. The girls are in .....  
 a. a school                      b. a house                      c. a park                      d. a shop

**4 Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences :**

1. Hatem don't like sports. Hatem doesn't like sports.
2. I want play tennis this afternoon. ....
3. Look ! Those children jumping very high. ....
4. I visit my cousins yesterday. ....
5. You speak English very good. ....

**5 Read the text, then answer the questions :**

Mr Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Friday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch: chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant near the school. He loves the food there. The cook makes it all himself.

1. Where does Mr Taha work ?  
He works in a school in Port Said.
2. What does he usually eat for lunch ?  
 .....
3. What does he usually do twice a week ?  
 .....
4. Why did Mr Taha not want to walk home yesterday ?  
 .....



5. Is the weather always rainy in Port Said ?

6. Who makes the food in the restaurant ?

7. What does the underlined word there refer to ?

**6 Do these words have the same sound ? Listen and put (✓) or (X).**

هل هذه الكلمات تحتوي على نفس الصوت ؟ استمع إلى معلمك وضع علامة [✓] أو [X]. [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. washed / talked

☐

2. called / waited

☐

3. blue / duck

☐

4. cake / home

☐

5. shop / chick

☐

6. father / brother

☐

7. candy / July

☐

8. tail / gate

☐

**7 What did they do at the weekend ? Look at the table and answer the questions.**

	Friday	Saturday
Ashraf	play football	visit cousins
Yunis	bake a cake	work in his father's shop
Riham	visit friends	play tennis

1. Did Yunis play football on Friday ? No, he didn't. He baked a cake.

2. Did Ashraf work in his father's shop on Saturday ?

3. What did Ashraf do on Friday ?

4. Did Riham visit her cousins on Friday ?

5. Where did Yunis go on Saturday ?

6. What did Riham do on Saturday ?

**8 Write about your weekend. What do you usually do ? What did you do yesterday ?**

.....

.....

.....

.....





## Unit

# 1

## My family and me

SB pages 2 : 11

WB pages 72:78

### Objectives :

- **Reading :**  
An interview with twin brothers; Heidi;  
a text about a gymnast
- **Writing :**  
A paragraph on hobbies; a description of a  
person in your family
- **Listening :**  
An interview with twin brothers
- **Speaking :**  
Talking about your family; asking questions
- **Language :**  
Pronouns; Present simple
- **Life Skills :**  
Self-management
- **Values :**  
Love of family
- **Issues :**  
Awareness of rights and duties; loyalty and  
belonging





## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

band (n)	فرقة موسيقية	twin (n)	توأم
voluntary work (n)	عمل تطوعي	quiz (n)	امتحان موجز / قصير
research (ed) (v), (n)	يجري بحث - بحث	interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية
diary (n)	مفكرة يومية	hobby (n)	هواية
drums (n)	طبول	chess (n)	لعبة الشطرنج



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

twins - interview - band - quiz

1. We have an English ..... every Thursday.
2. Omar and Ali have the same age. They're .....
3. My brother plays the drums in a .....

### Lesson 1

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 72

great-grandchildren (n)	أبناء الحفيد - الحفيدة	football player (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
great-grandfather (n)	الجد الأكبر	both	كلًا من / كلاهما
baby (n)	رضيع	work (ed) (v), (n)	يعمل - عمل [اسم لا بعد]
skim (med) (v)	يتصفح [بسرعة]	clap (ped) (v)	يصفق
parents (n)	الوالدين	busy (adj)	مشغول
birthday (n)	عيد ميلاد		

### Lesson 2

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 73

children's hospital (n)	مستشفى أطفال	age (n)	عمر / سن
glossary (n)	قاموس / معجم	favourite (adj)	مفضل



musical instruments (n)	آلات موسيقية	dictionary (n)	قاموس
What kind .... ?	ما نوع ... ؟	match (n)	مباراة
story (n)	قصة	together (adv)	معًا / سويًا

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
show يوضح / يبين	showed	shown
say يقول	said	said
meet يقابل	met	met
win يفوز	won	won
throw يرمى	threw	thrown

### Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

	Family members	أفراد العائلة
<b>aunt</b>	your mother's or father's sister	خالة / عمّة
<b>uncle</b>	your mother's or father's brother	خال / عم
<b>grandfather</b>	your mother's or father's father	جد
<b>grandmother</b>	your mother's or father's mother	جدة
<b>brother</b>	your parent's son / a boy or man with the same parents as you	أخ
<b>sister</b>	your parent's daughter / a girl or woman with the same parents as you	أخت
<b>cousin</b>	your aunt or uncle's child	ابن / ابنة (العم / العمّة / الخال / الخالة)
<b>parent</b>	your mum or dad	أحد الوالدين
<b>son</b>	a boy child	ابن
<b>daughter</b>	a girl child	ابنة
<b>great-grandfather</b>	your grandfather's father	الجد الأكبر
<b>great-grandchildren</b>	the children of your grandchildren	أبناء الحفيد / الحفيدة



## Other definitions تعريفات أخرى

swimming	moving your body through water	سباحة
drums	musical instruments which you hit to make a noise	طبول
twins	two children born at the same time	توأم
voluntary work	work you do without getting money	عمل تطوعي
chess	a board game for two people	لعبة الشطرنج
band	a group of people singing or playing musical instruments together	فرقة موسيقية

## Collocations

do	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي	listen to	music	يستمتع إلى الموسيقى
	work	يؤدي عمل		the teacher	يستمتع إلى المعلم
go	swimming	يمارس السباحة		the radio	يستمتع إلى الراديو
make	noise	يحدث ضوضاء			

## Vocabulary Study

## Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة Word	المرادف Synonym	المضاد Opposite
true صحيح - حقيقي	right	false خاطئ - مزيف
different مختلف	unlike	the same نفس الشيء
finish ينهي	end	start يبدأ
busy مشغول	engaged	free متفرغ
male ذكر - مذكر	-	female أنثى - مؤنث
win يفوز	achieve / gain	lose يخسر

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Suffix	Prefix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
Inter -		تعطي معنى بين	interview مقابلة
- er		تكون الاسم من الفعل	teacher معلم player لاعب
- ing		تكون الاسم من الفعل	swimming السباحة
al		تكون الصفة من الاسم	musical موسيقى





## Exercise

### on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The synonym of the word "finish" is .....  
a. drive      b. start      c. end      d. meet
- Mum was busy in the kitchen yesterday. The antonym of "busy" is .....  
a. true      b. false      c. empty      d. free
- Adding the suffix ..... to the word "swim" makes it a noun.  
a. -ment      b. -ed      c. -al      d. -ing
- To get the adjective from the noun "music", we use the suffix .....  
a. -able      b. -y      c. -ing      d. -al
- The opposite of "win" is ".....".  
a. show      b. lose      c. hit      d. throw



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 (be) called

يسمى / يدعى

- This girl **is called** Rodayna.

### call (ed) (v)

يتصل / ينادى

- Salma **is calling** her father now.

### 2 on + (جمع) يوم = every + (مفرد) يوم

تعتبر من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع البسيط.

- We play chess **on Saturdays / every Saturday**.

- He plays football **on Fridays / every Friday**.

### 3 play

لاحظ استخدام (play) مع الألعاب التي بها كرة أو مع بعض الهوايات بمعنى (يلعب)

- We **play** games with children.

تستخدم (play) مع الآلات الموسيقية مسبوقة بـ the بمعنى (يعزف).

- I **play** the drums in a band.

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 4

### 4 (be) aged = (be) .... years old

دع عمر / سن

- Basem **is aged 12**. = Basem is 12 years old.



## Important Expressions &amp; Prepositions

## تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
work hard	يعمل بجد	belong to	ينتمي إلى
for no money = for free	بلا مقابل مادي	clap for	يصفق من أجل
of course	بالطبع	the same as .....	نفس الشيء مثل
Let's + inf.	هيا بنا .....	a picture of	صورة لـ
That's true !	هذا صحيح !	on TV	على شاشة التلفاز
You're welcome.	لا شكر على واجب.	on the radio	في الإذاعة / الراديو
It's great !	هذا عظيم !	proud of	فخور بـ



## Skills



## Reading and Listening

## Reading

## on Lesson 1 SB page 3

Hello ! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a picture of <sup>(1)</sup> my family.

My mum's name is Amira. She's a teacher. Next to her is my dad. His name is Adel. He's a teacher, too. Both <sup>(2)</sup> my parents <sup>(3)</sup> are teachers at my school.

They have one daughter <sup>(4)</sup> – she's my sister, Lamia, and she's 9 years old.

And they have two sons – me, and my brother, Khaled. He's 11.

Our grandmother is 64 and she's called " Huda. She's my mum's mother. My mum's father is our grandfather – he's called Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy. She's my mum's sister and she's my aunt . My uncle's called Marwan. He is a doctor. Their son is called Tarek, and he's my cousin <sup>(9)</sup>. It's his birthday today – he's 3 years old.



(1) صورة لـ (2) كلاهما (3) الوالدين (4) ابنته (5) جدة  
(6) تسمى / تدعى (7) جد (8) خاله (9) ابن العم



## Listening

### on Lesson 1 WB page 72



**Lara :** Hi ! My name's Lara and this is my family. That's my brother. His name's Ayman. Lina and Hatem are our parents. We have one cousin, Khadeeja. Her parents are my uncle and aunt. Their names are Imad and Dina. What about you ? What's your name ?

### Listening skill

⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Lara's brother is called \_\_\_\_\_ .  
a Adam                      b. Ayman                      c. Hatem                      d. Mohamed

### Reading on Lesson 2 SB page 4

## An interview with twin brothers

Meet Hazem and Hatem. They are brothers and they are both **aged** 12. They have **the same parents** and the same birthday. They're twins!

**What are your hobbies ?**

**Hazem :** I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays. I **go swimming** <sup>(4)</sup> on Tuesdays and I play football on Saturdays.

**Hatem :** And he watches football matches on **TV** <sup>(5)</sup> on Saturday evenings. He loves football!

**Hazem :** I love football!

**Hatem :** I don't like football, but I like music. I **play the drums** <sup>(6)</sup> and I **listen to music** <sup>(7)</sup>.

**Hazem :** He plays the drums in a band .

**Do you have any hobbies that you both like ?**

**Hazem :** We play chess together on Saturdays. Hatem usually wins.



- (1) يبلغ من العمر                      (2) نفس الوالدين                      (3) يمارس الرياضة                      (4) على شاشة التلفاز  
(5) يعزف على الطبول                      (6) يستمع إلى الموسيقى                      (7) في فرقة موسيقية





**Hatem** : Yes, that's true! And on Saturday afternoons we **do voluntary work** <sup>(A)</sup>.

يقوم بعمل تطوعي 8

**What kind of voluntary work ?**

**Hazem** : We help in the children's hospital.

**Hatem** : We play games with the children and read them stories. It's great !

- Critical thinking skill

مهارة التفكير النقدي

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

**Learn**

1. Do you think Hazem and Hatem are different ? Why / Why not ?  
*Yes. Because they have different hobbies.*

**Practise**

2. Do you think Hazem and Hatem are kind ? Why / Why not ?

### • Listening on Lesson 2 SB page 5



**Interviewer** : Can I ask you some more questions ?

**Hazem** : Yes, of course.

**Interviewer** : Hazem, when do you play basketball ?

**Hazem** : I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays.

**Interviewer** : And when do you play football ?

**Hazem** : I play football on Saturdays and I watch football matches on the TV on Saturday evenings.

**Interviewer** : When do you go swimming ?

**Hazem** : I go swimming on Tuesdays.

**Interviewer** : Wow, you are busy ! Hatem, when do you play the drums ?

**Hatem** : I play the drums on Mondays at home. And I play the drums in a band on Thursdays.

**Interviewer** : What do you do on Tuesdays and Wednesdays ?

**Hatem** : I listen to music. I like pop music.

**Interviewer** : What do you do on Saturdays ?

**Hatem** : I help my mother and I do voluntary work with Hazem. And on Sundays I play chess with Hazem or my dad.

**Interviewer** : Thank you both.

**Hazem** : You're welcome.



## Exercise 1 on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### ► Key vocabulary

- I'll write the date of the interview in my .....  
a. diary                      b. band                      c. hobby                      d. drum
- They gave him a prize for his ..... work in poor countries.  
a. musical                      b. voluntary                      c. favourite                      d. false
- This afternoon, I'll have a/an ..... for a new job in an oil company.  
a. shower                      b. research                      c. interview                      d. match
- Maged and Magdy are ..... They were born at the same time.  
a. parents                      b. cousins                      c. twins                      d. uncles
- Reading is my favourite .....  
a. job                      b. hobby                      c. project                      d. band

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

- Your brother is your parents' .....  
a. son                      b. uncle                      c. sister                      d. daughter  
*(Qena 2023)*
- ..... are musical instruments which you hit with your hands or sticks.  
a. Drums                      b. Guitars                      c. Flutes                      d. Harps  
*(Dokki Giza 2022)*
- ..... Maher ..... voluntary work at a hospital.  
a. plays                      b. makes                      c. does                      d. watches

### ► El-Moasser Exercises

- He always reads a ..... before he goes to bed.  
a. show                      b. story                      c. music                      d. hobby
- "Female" is the opposite of "....."  
a. meal                      b. mail                      c. mall                      d. male

### ► Definitions

- Your ..... is your father's or mother's sister.  
a. uncle                      b. aunt                      c. daughter                      d. son





12. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a group of people singing or playing musical instruments together.

- a. match                      b. band                      c. class                      d. chorus

13. .... means moving your body through water.

- a. Driving                      b. Surfing                      c. Hiking                      d. Swimming

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Our English teacher is ..... Ayman.

- a. sold                      b. told                      c. called                      d. made

15. My father and mother are ..... "60" and "53".

- a. old                      b. aged                      c. age                      d. ago

16. .... Omar and Ahmed are my cousins.

- a. Every                      b. Each                      c. All                      d. Both

## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### ► Talking about yourself and your family :

يمكنك التحدث عن نفسك وعائلتك باستخدام الجمل التالية :

1. My name's ...	الاسم
2. I'm ... years old.	العمر
3. My dad's / mum's name is ...	اسم الأب / الأم
4. He's / She's ... years old.	عمر الأب / الأم
5. He's / She's a ...	وظيفة الأب / الأم
6. He / She works in a / an ...	مكان عمل الأب / الأم
7. I have one brother / sister.	عدد الإخوة / الأخوات
8. My brother's / sister's name is ...	اسم الأخ / الأخت
9. He's / She's ... years old.	عمر الأخ / الأخت

## 3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

1. I like sports.	أحب الألعاب الرياضية.
2. My favourite sport is football.	رياضتي المفضلة هي كرة القدم.
3. I play football at the club on Saturdays.	ألعب كرة القدم في النادي أيام السبت.
4. I watch football matches on TV.	أشاهد مباريات كرة القدم على شاشة التلفاز.
5. On Friday afternoon, I do voluntary work.	في يوم الجمعة بعد الظهر أقوم بعمل تطوعي.
6. I help in the children's hospital.	أساعد في مستشفى أطفال.



Step 1 Vocabulary اختر المفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 writing اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
<p>Read and complete :</p> <p>1. A. What's your ..... 's name ? B. His name is Ahmed. الآح</p> <p>2. A. .... is he ? كم العمر B. He is 19 years old.</p> <p>3. A. .... does he live ? أين B. He lives in Giza.</p>	<p>Complete the following dialogue :</p> <p>Mazen is telling Adam about his cousin Ahmed.</p> <p>Mazen : This is a photo of my cousin. Adam : (1) ?</p> <p>Mazen : His name is Ahmed. Adam : (2) ?</p> <p>Mazen : He is 14 years old. Adam : Where does he live?</p> <p>Mazen : Does he like flowers? Adam : (4) ? What about you? Adam : (5) ?</p>	<p>Write a paragraph on : "A person in your family"</p>
<p>1. A. What's your favourite .. ? B. Playing football. هواة</p> <p>2. A. Where do you play it ? B. In the ..... النادي</p> <p>3. A. .... do you play it with ? B. I play it with my friends. ص</p> <p>4. A. Would you like to with me ? B. Sure. باني</p>	<p>Said and Omar are talking about their favourite hobbies.</p> <p>Omar : Hi Said ! Pleased to meet you. Said : Hi Omar. What's your favourite hobby ?</p> <p>Omar : ..... Said : ..... Omar : I play it in the club. Said : (4) ..... Omar : Sure. Who do you play it with ? Said : (4) ..... Omar : Do you have any other hobbies ? Said : (5) ..... Omar : I like reading, too.</p>	<p>"Your favourite hobby"</p> <p>Bulok El Dakrou - Giza 2023</p>





## Language

## 1. Pronouns



## 2. Using possessive adjectives and pronouns

استخدام صفات الملكية وضمائر الملكية

We use possessive adjectives to show something belongs to somebody.

تستخدم صفات الملكية لتبين أن شيء ما يخص شخص ما

ex. - Marwan is **my** uncle. - Nader and Mona are **their** parents.

• لاحظ أن ضمائر الملكية لا تأتي بعدها اسم ونحل محل صفة الملكية والاسم المملوك مقاً.

ضمير الملكية = اسم + صفة الملكية

ex. - This is **my** pen. This pen is **mine**.  
 - It's **her** bag. It's **hers**.



## Important Notes on Pronouns

### — ملاحظات هامة على الضمائر —

\* عند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام Whose ويعدها الاسم المملوك كآلاتي :

Whose + [noun] الاسم المملوك ..... ?

► - Whose bag is it ?

- It's my bag. = It's mine.

\* هناك تعبيرات تستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية :

- This is my car. = This car is mine. = This car belongs to me.

= I have a car. = I own this car. = I am the owner of this car.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. Hany told Samy that it was nice to see ..... . (Dakahlia - 2024)  
a. him                      b. his                      c. he                      d. she
2. ~~My~~ Our parents are proud of ..... because we work hard at school.  
a. we                      b. our                      c. ours                      d. us  
(El Salam - Cairo 2023 - Moushat Al Qanater - Giza 2024)
3. ~~SB~~ My sister's name is Ola. .... 's 7. (Sedja - Assiut - 2020)  
a. Her                      b. She                      c. Hers                      d. Him
4. ~~WB~~ Clap for football players. .... have played very well.  
(Multidisciplinary - Damietta 2024)  
a. Them                      b. They                      c. Their                      d. Theirs
5. This room belongs to my daughters. It's ..... . (South Giza - Giza 2020)  
a. they                      b. their                      c. them                      d. theirs
6. What does . . . like to do at the weekend ? (Badrashin - Giza 2022)  
a. his                      b. hers                      c. she                      d. him





### ► El-Moasser Exercises

7. Are all these toys ..... ?  
a. my                      b. yours                      c. her                      d. your
8. My father spends most of ..... time working.  
a. her                      b. his                      c. him                      d. he
9. Tarek and I visit ..... grandfather every Friday.  
a. they                      b. our                      c. its                      d. her
10. Give this mobile to .....  
a. she                      b. her                      c. our                      d. their
11. .... mobile is this ? - It's Rokaya's.  
a. Who                      b. Whose                      c. When                      d. Where
12. This is ..... computer. He bought it last week.  
a. mine                      b. my                      c. his                      d. hers

### 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

#### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. My friends are very kind. I like their. (.....)
2. My Can you give me you pen, please ? (.....)
3. It's not my camera. My is new. (.....)  
(El Fashn - Beni Suef 2020 - El Jebbin - Cairo 2023 - Shubrakhat - Belheira 2023)
4. SB Today is hers birthday. (.....)
5. Who car is this ? - It's mine. (El Zettoun - Cairo 2022) (.....)

#### ► El-Moasser Exercises

6. Where is yours brother ? (.....)
7. The red bike is my. (.....)
8. She forgot his jacket in the shop. (.....)
9. This book belongs for him. (.....)
10. All the players in our team like his captain. (.....)

**Almost enough**

مراجعة المنهج  
والتمكن منه في اسبوع واحد فقط





# General Exercises

## LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create



### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (تصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. What's your favourite sport ?  
a. Basketball      b. Tennis      c. Football      d. Hockey
2. When do you play basketball ?  
a. On Fridays      b. On Mondays      c. Every day      d. On Sundays
3. Who do you play it with ?  
a. My father      b. My mother      c. My sister      d. My friends
4. Basketball is a/an ..... sport.  
a. boring      b. easy      c. interesting      d. hard

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

**Hany and Ali are talking about their favourite hobbies.**

**Hany** : Hello, Ali. How are you ?

**Ali** : (1) ..... What is your favourite hobby ?

**Hany** : (2) .....

**Ali** : When do you usually play it ?

**Hany** : (3) .....

**Ali** : (4) ?

**Hany** : I play it with my friends.

**Ali** : (5) ..... ?

**Hany** : I like playing chess. Do you like chess ?

**Ali** : Of course. I like it very much.

(Ain Shams - Cairo 2023)

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **VB** It's her car. .... often drives it. (Farshout - Qena 2023)  
a. Her      b. She      c. He      d. They
2. They enjoy ..... video games. (Kaf El Shaikh 2024)  
a. staying      b. doing      c. playing      d. running
3. Your sister is your parent's ..... (East Mansoura - Dakahlia 2023)  
a. niece      b. mother      c. cousin      d. daughter



- 4. Mai helps in a children's hospital for free. She likes \_\_\_\_\_ work.  
(Heliu - Sharkia 2020)  
a. voluntary      b. school      c. easy      d. writing
- 5. The children of your grandchildren are your .....  
a. sons      b. great-grandchildren  
c. parents      d. great-grandfathers
- 6. He is a famous violinist عزف الكمان in a big .....  
(Ahmed - Cairo 2022)  
a. hand      b. pond      c. band      d. match
- 7. We are having dinner with ..... friends.  
a. our      b. me      c. hers      d. theirs
- 8. The cat always protects ..... little kittens.  
a. he      b. its      c. she      d. their
- 9. Toka and Mona look like each other. They are .....  
a. neighbours      b. twins      c. students      d. daughters
- 10. I don't know this word. I'll look it up in a .....  
a. dictionary      b. basket      c. vase      d. van

#### 4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Who drum is that ? – It is Ahmed's. (Fekrou - Beni-Suef 2021) ( )
2. My friend found mine blue pen. (Ola - Giza 2023) ( )
3. This new car belongs to mine. (Fekrou - Sharkia 2022) ( )
4. The girls are going to the park with her friends. ( )

#### 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

محباب علة في هوايا الكتاب

"Your hobbies"

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

(El Mar) - Cairo 2023



## Lessons

# 3 & 4

SB page 73  
WB pages 74



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

orphan (n)	يتيم	country (n)	دولة - بلد
mountain (n)	جبل	attic (n)	سندرة / شقيفة [غرفة علوية للتخزين]
city (n)	مدينة [كبيرة]	adventure (n)	مغامرة



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي بهدف إتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

Adventure - orphan - attic - city - mountain

- This child is an ..... . He has no parents.
- Cairo is a big ..... in Egypt.
- They climbed the ..... to see the view of the far city.
- ..... stories are my favourite. They are very exciting.

### Lesson 3

SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 74

correct (ed) (v), (adj)	يصحح - صحيح	conversation (n)	محادثة
minutes (n)	دقائق	How long ...?	كم المدة ...?
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	airport (n)	مطار

### Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 75

add (ed) (v)	يضيف	one day (adv)	دات يوم
end (ed) (v), (n)	ينتهي - نهاية	walk (ed) (v), (n)	يمشي - تمشية
goat (n)	عنزة - ماعز		

### Countries and Cities

دول ومدن

Morocco	دولة المغرب	South Africa	دولة جنوب أفريقيا
England	دولة إنجلترا	Oman	دولة عمان
Cape Town	كيب تاون [مدينة في جنوب أفريقيا]	Switzerland	دولة سويسرا



## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think يفكر / يعقد	thought	thought
fly يطير / يسافر جواً	flew	flown
feel يشعر	felt	felt
hear يسمع	heard	heard
catch يمسك / يلحق بـ	caught	caught
learn يتعلم	learned/learnt	learned/learnt

## You can see

in a city	in the mountains
airport مطار	goats ماعر
hospital مستشفى	sheep أغنام / خراف
park منزه	birds طيور
shops محلات	flowers رهور

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

adventure	an exciting activity	مغامرة
goat	a mountain animal you can eat or get milk from	ماعر
orphan	a child with no mother or father	يتيم
city	a place with lots of houses, shops and people	مدينة
attic	the top room in a house (غرفة عوييه في سطح المنزل)	سيدر / سقيفه
mountain	a high area of land, higher than the land around it	جس

## Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومنضادات		
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
old عجور	elderly / aged	young صغير السن
small صغير الحجم	little	big كبير الحجم



high	مرتفع	tall	منخفض
arrive	يصل	reach / get to	يفادر
important	مهم	necessary / serious	غير مهم
sad	حزين	unhappy	سعيد
difficult	صعب	hard	سهل

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادلة وناهية		
Suffix / Prefix	الوظيفة Function	أمثلة Examples
un -	تعطي عكس المعنى	unimportant غير مهم
- ful	تكون الصفة من الاسم	beautiful جميل
- ing	تكون الصفة من الفعل	exciting شيق



### on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Computer is an important invention. The synonym of important is ".....".  
a. healthy      b. essential      c. natural      d. usual
- The opposite of the word "high" is ".....".  
a. big      b. Important      c. tall      d. low
- We can make an adjective from the word "beauty" by adding the suffix ".....".  
a. -ment      b. -ful      c. -er      d. -able
- "Arrive" is similar in meaning to ".....".  
a. live      b. leave      c. reach      d. feel
- We add the prefix "....." to the adjective "happy" to give its opposite.  
a. un-      b. dis-      c. im-      d. ir-
- The suffix "....." changes "excite" into an adjective.  
a. -ing      b. -ment      c. -ion      d. -ly
- The synonym of "....." is elderly.  
a. happy      b. new      c. old      d. ugly





## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 country - the country - city - town - village

#### \* country

دولة - بلد

- ▶ Egypt is a big country in Africa.

#### \* the country = the countryside

الريف

- ▶ Living in the country is comfortable. مريح.

#### \* city

مدينة كبيرة

- ▶ Alexandria is a beautiful city.

#### \* town

مدينة صغيرة

- ▶ Shoubra El Kheima is a busy town.

#### \* village

قرية

- ▶ I like going to my village in Sham El Neseem.

### 2 sheep

خروف / أغنام [تدل المفرد أو الجمع]

- ▶ - I bought a sheep from the market yesterday.

[مفرد]

- Sheep have wool on them.

SB page 8 [جمع]

### 3 with

يستخدم حرف الجر (with) ليدل على الملكية بمعنى «لديه» «ذو»

- ▶ - **S9** A child with no mother or father is an orphan.

- I can see a girl with long hair.

SB page 8

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
(be) right to + inf. يكون محقاً في ...	away from بعيداً عن
lots of = a lot of كثير من	think of + (n. / inf. + ing) يفكر في
take + (time) to + inf. يستغرق وقت لـ ...	at the end of في نهاية
feel + [صفة] يشعر بـ	in the summer في فصل الصيف
catch a plane يلحق بطائرة	communicate with يتواصل مع
come home يعود للمنزل	at the top of ... في قمة
make a video call يجري مكالمة فيديو	live in يعيش في (مكان)
walk in the mountains يمشي في الجبال	live with يعيش مع (شخص)
would	compare ... with يقارن ... بـ





## Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

## Listening



## • on Lesson 3 SB page 7

**Sami** : My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris, France.

He goes to the airport on Sundays and he **catches a plane** to Paris.

It **takes five hours to** fly there. And then he catches a plane home to Egypt on Thursday evening. He **works very hard** .

On Saturdays we play football in the park and we play chess. I love my dad and I'm happy when he's **at home** <sup>(4)</sup> .

يلحق بطائرة  
يستغرق (٥ ساعات) لكي  
يعمل بجد (3)  
في المنزل (4)  
طريق طويل  
يجري مكالمة فيديو

**Aya** : My grandmother and grandfather live in South Africa.

They live next to the beach in Cape Town. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them, but it's **a long way** . It takes twelve hours to fly there !

I talk to them on the phone but they don't have a computer so we can't **make a video call** . I would like to see them every day but I can't.

## Listening skill

⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

• We play chess on ... .. .

a. Sundays      b. Thursdays      c. Saturdays      d. Fridays

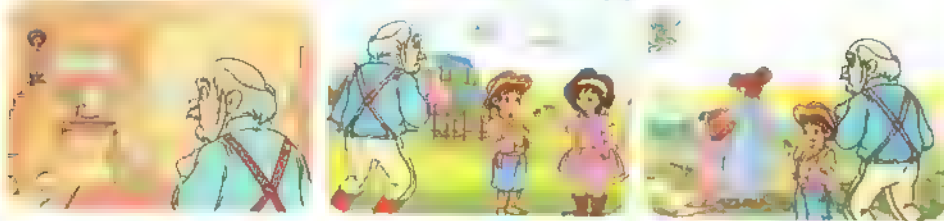
## Reading

## • on Lesson 3 WB page 74

I am Hassan. My family **lives** in Alexandria, but my dad **doesn't work** in Egypt. He works in London. He **goes** to the airport on Sunday evenings and he **catches** a plane to England. He comes home on Thursday evenings. On Saturday, I **don't go** to school and my father doesn't work. We **play** chess or we **go** to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My brother is three and he **doesn't** swim. He watches us !



on Lesson 4 SB page 8

**Heidi (By Johanna Spyri)**

Heidi is the story of an **orphan** girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in **Switzerland**. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the **mountains** and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the **attic** of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy!

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats.

Heidi has lots of **adventures** in the city.

1. يقيم  
دولة سويسرا  
جبال  
غرفة علوية للتخزين  
معامرات

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

- Giving the main idea.

**Learn** 1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

- An orphan girl.

- Extracting information.

**Practise** 2. In which country does Heidi live ?

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

استخراج المعلومات

**Exercise****on Vocabulary**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► **Key vocabulary**

1. A person who doesn't have a father or mother is called a / an .....  
a. member      b. orphan      c. cousin      d. friend
2. Alexandria is a large ..... on the Mediterranean coast.  
a. country      b. village      c. city      d. airport
3. Alice had exciting ..... in Wonderland.  
a. videos      b. adventures      c. lives      d. countries



► **SB, WB & Previous Exams**

4. Farmers get ..... from goats. (Isma - Luxor 2022 / El Shorouk city - Cairo 2021)  
 a. bread                      b. meat                      c. rice                      d. eggs
5. **WB** A / An ..... is very high. (Multidisciplinary - Cairo 2021 / Faqous - Sharkia 2023)  
 a. list                      b. menu                      c. mountain                      d. adventure
6. **SB** A ..... is an animal that is like sheep. (Esna - Luxor 2021)  
 a. lion                      b. goat                      c. dog                      d. tiger

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

7. They went to the ..... to catch the plane to Italy.  
 a. mountain                      b. airport                      c. park                      d. attic
8. Can you tell me the ..... answer to this question ?  
 a. kind                      b. high                      c. left                      d. correct
9. What happened at the ..... of the film ?  
 a. country                      b. right                      c. timetable                      d. end
10. Egypt is a big ..... in Africa.  
 a. city                      b. country                      c. village                      d. mountain

► **Definitions**

11. A ..... is a place with lots of houses, shops and people.  
 a. forest                      b. desert                      c. station                      d. city
12. A/An ..... is the top room in a house.  
 a. city                      b. office                      c. attic                      d. shop

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

13. Now, you can communicate ..... your friends easily using smartphones.  
 a. in                      b. on                      c. with                      d. about
14. What is your feeling when you are away ..... your parents ?  
 a. from                      b. to                      c. on                      d. at
15. Salma is ..... a video call now.  
 a. making                      b. doing                      c. delivering                      d. talking
16. It ..... twelve hours to fly to Cape Town.  
 a. makes                      b. takes                      c. gives                      d. talks





## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

#### ▶ Asking and answering questions about hobbies :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الهوايات :

Questions	?	Answers	✓
• Do you listen to music ? هل تستمع إلى الموسيقى ؟		- Yes, I do.	نعم، استمع.
• Does she play chess ? هل هي تلعب شطرنج ؟		- No, she doesn't.	لا، لا استمع.

## 3. Writing

### مهارة الكتابة

#### حياتك Your life

1. My name is Mohamed. اسمي محمد.
2. I live with my family. أعيش مع عائلتي.
3. My family lives in Cairo. نعيش عائلتي في القاهرة.
4. My father doesn't work in Cairo. He works in Alexandria.  
لا يعمل والدي بمدينة القاهرة. هو يعمل بمدينة الإسكندرية.
5. My father comes home on Thursday evenings.  
يأتي والدي إلى المنزل في مساء أيام الخميس.
6. My family and I go to the park on Fridays. اذهب أنا وعائلتي، لى لمسره في أيام الجمعة.
7. On Saturday, I don't go to school. لا أذهب إلى المدرسة يوم السبت.
8. I play chess with my father on Saturday. ألعب شطرنج مع والدي في يوم السبت.

#### هايدي Heidi

1. Heidi is an orphan girl. هايدي فتاة يتيمة.
2. She went to live with her grandfather. ذهبت لتعيش مع جدها.
3. Her grandfather is a farmer. يعمل جدها فلاخا.
4. She sleeps in a bed in the attic. نام هايدى في سرير في سقيفه [عرفه علوية].
5. She doesn't like the city. لا تحب المدينة.
6. She is very sad to be away from her grandfather.  
هي حزينة جدًا للغاية لكونها بعيدة عن جدها.



## Step 1

### Vocabulary

اختر اتفاقك للمعردات اللغوية

### Read and complete :

1. A. Can I you

some questions ?

Yes, of course.

2. A. musical instruments  
do you play ?

I play the drums.

3. A. do you play it ?

I play it on Monday.

## Step 3

### writing

اختر صدي اتفاقك لمهاره الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Different hobbies"

Sami is asking Omar some questions.  
Can I ask you some questions ?

Omar : Do you play music ?

Omar : I play the drums.

Sami : (4) ?

Omar : I play music on Monday. I like pop music.

Omar : Thanks for your time.

Omar : (5) ?

(Helwan - Cairo 2023)

Nada is asking Sama about her favourite story.

Sama : Hi Sama ! What's your favourite story ?

Sama : Hi Nada !

Sama : The story of Heidi !

Sama : She is an orphan girl.

Nada : (3) ?

Sama : She lives with her grandfather in Switzerland.

Sama : Does she like living in the city ?

Sama : Does Heidi have lots of adventures in the city ?

Sama : (5) ?

(Impress - Wazir/23)

Different hobbies

The story of Heidi

"The story of Heidi"





## Language

## The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

## Formation التكوين

1  
Affirmative  
Statementsالحمل الخبرية  
المثبتةI / You / We / They / + inf.  
فاعل جمع المصدرex. - We usually **play** tennis on Friday.  
- My grandparents sometimes **use** a computer.He / She / It / + inf. + s/es/ies  
فاعل مفرد المصدرex. Rodina sometimes **listens** to the radio.

## • لاحظ أن :

١. يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).

ex. - Marwa usually **plays** tennis on Fridays.٢. يضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان مسهتا  
بـ (ss , ch , sh , o , x) :ex. - My brother often **watches** TV after lunch.٣. يضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهيا بـ (y)  
مسيوقة بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y) :ex. - Amal always **studies** hard for her exams.

## • لاحظ أن :

١. يتم استخدام (verb to be) في زمن المضارع البسيط كالآتي :

be

يكون

I → am = 'm

He / She / It → is = 's

You / They / We → are = 're



٢. يتم استخدام (verb to have) في زمن المضارع البسيط كالآتي

have	He / She / It / فاعل مفرد	has = 's
يمتلك	I / You / They / We / فاعل جمع	have = 've

### Key words كلمات دالة

always usually often sometimes never

لاحظ أن ظروف التكرار السابقة تسبق الفعل الأساسي في الجملة.

- She usually gets up early.

لاحظ أيضًا أن ظروف التكرار السابقة تتبع (verb to be).

- She is usually late for school.

أما ظرف التكرار [مدة + every] إما أن يأتي أول الجملة أو في نهايتها.

- Every day, I go to school. - I go to school every day.

عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار (عدد مرات حدوث الفعل) نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام

(How often) بمعنى كم مرة ... ؟

- How often do you play football ?

- I usually play football.

وللإجابة نستخدم أحد ظروف التكرار.

- I play football once / twice a week.

أو ذكر عدد مرات تكرار الفعل.

## 2

### Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

I / You / We / They / + don't + inf.  
اسم جمع المصدر

ex. I don't get up early on Fridays.

He / She / It / + doesn't + inf.  
اسم مفرد المصدر

ex. She doesn't walk to school.

• لاحظ أن :

حرف (s) يحذف من الفعل عند النفي.

ex. He doesn't play football every Thursday.

(never) تستخدم في النفي مع عدم حذف (s) مع الفاعل المفرد العائب.

ex. The bus never stops near my house.



## (A) Yes/No question :

(أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

3

## Interrogative

صيغة  
الاستفهامDo + I / we / you / they + inf. ... ?  
المصدر

ex. Do you speak English ?

- Yes, I do.

- No, I don't.

Does + he / she / it + inf. ... ?  
المصدر

ex. Does she cook well ?

- Yes, she does.

- No, she doesn't.

• لاحظ أن : حذف حرف (s) من الفعل عند السؤال بـ (Does) :

## (B) Wh-question :

(ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word + do + I / we / you / they + inf. ... ?  
كلمة الاستفهام does he / she / it المصدر

ex. A : What do you study ?

B : I study English.

A : Where does she go ?

B : She goes to the park.

## Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن المصارع البسيط للتعبير عن :

## 1. facts

• الحقائق الثابتة خاصة الحقائق العلمية والقوانين والحقائق المرتبطة بالكون والطبيعة .

ex. - The sun always rises in the east.

## 2. habits &amp; repeated actions

• عادات وأحداث متكررة

ex. - Maha gets up early every day.

## Exercises on Language

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

## ► SB , WB &amp; Previous Exams

1. Ali usually ... voluntary work at hospital.

a. do



b. does

c. done

d. doing

(Bachra 2023)



2. .... he speak English ? *(Sinnuris - Fayyum 2022)*  
 a. Do                      b. Does                      c. Is                      d. Was
3. They ..... watch TV in the morning. *(Khusus - Qalyubia 2021)*  
 a. aren't                      b. doesn't                      c. weren't                      d. don't
4.  How does Sami ..... when his dad is at home ?  
 a. feel                      b. feels                      c. felt                      d. feeling
5. The bus ..... stops near my house. *(Nozha - Cairo 2022)*  
 a. don't                      b. isn't                      c. doesn't                      d. never
6.  Hany loves basketball. He ..... it every day. *(Hany - Giza 2021)*  
 a. plays                      b. play                      c. played                      d. playing
7. Nabila ..... like cooking. *(South Giza - Giza 2021)*  
 a. don't                      b. isn't                      c. doesn't                      d. wasn't

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

8. Do you ..... any musical instrument ?  
 a. has                      b. had                      c. having                      d. have
9. I don't ..... up early on holidays.  
 a. gets                      b. got                      c. get                      d. getting
10. English ..... a very important language around the world.  
 a. has                      b. was                      c. is                      d. does
11. The architect ..... new buildings.  
 a. build                      b. is built                      c. builds                      d. building
12. Hady and I ..... the full mark in English.  
 a. usually gets                      b. usually get                      c. gets usually                      d. get usually
13. Over a billion people ..... Chinese as their first language.  
 a. speak                      b. spoke                      c. speaks                      d. speaking
14. Where does your friend ..... ?  
 a. live                      b. lives                      c. lived                      d. living
15. The sun ..... us heat and light.  
 a. gives                      b. giving                      c. is giving                      d. give
16. We all ..... our country.  
 a. loving                      b. be loved                      c. love                      d. loves





## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. How often do your mother help you ? (El Shorouk - Cairo 2023) ( ..... )
2. He never eating unhealthy food. (Monshout El Kanater - Giza 2023) ( ..... )
3. WB Maher always do voluntary work at hospital. ( .. )
4. They do usually tired after the school day. ( ..... )
5. SB I plays the drums in a band. ( ..... )
6. Salma plays always basketball. (Rafah - North Sinai 2020) ( ... )

### ► El-Moasser Exercises

7. Does Hala and Farah go swimming on Sundays ? ( ..... )
8. Where do your father work ? ( ..... )
9. They writes English well. ( ..... )
10. Do you like reading ? - Yes, I am. ( ..... )

## El-Moasser Homework Interactive

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي
- يمكنك من إتقان المفردات اللغوية ( التسميم )
- والقواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على الوحدات





# General Exercises

## LESSONS 3 & 4

● Understand    ● Apply    ● Create

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Habiba is asking Nada about her family.

Habiba : Where do you live, Habiba ?

Nada : (1) .....

Habiba : Do you have any brothers or sisters ?

Nada : (2) ...

Habiba : (3) ..... ?

Nada : He is called Ali.

Habiba : (4) ..... ?

Nada : I like swimming.

Habiba : Are you good at swimming ?

Nada : (5) .....

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Samar is an **orphan** girl. She went to live with her uncle Adnan who was a shepherd راعي in the Western Desert. He lived in a small house and he had a lot of goats and camels. Samar slept in a bed made from animal's skin and drank goat's milk. She ate bread and cheese. She made friends with a female camel which she called Felfela. Samar loved her and **they** went on long walks in the desert. Samar had a lot of adventures in the desert. She loved the life of desert and mountains.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The word "**orphan**" means .....

- |                            |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| a. has no father or mother | b. has no friends |
| c. has no brothers         | d. has no sisters |

2. Felfela is a .....

- |          |          |        |         |
|----------|----------|--------|---------|
| a. horse | b. camel | c. cow | d. goat |
|----------|----------|--------|---------|

3. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to .....

- |                         |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| a. Samar and her cousin | b. Adnan and Felfela |
| c. Samar and Felfela    | d. Adnan and Samar   |

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

5. What did Adnan have ?



1. They always ..... to work on time. (Fl Qanater Qulvabia 2024)

- 4 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. He **doesn't comes** to school late. (Tulu Monufia 2023) ( .. ,..... )

- 5** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

- **"Your family"**



## Lessons

# 5 & 6

SB pages 9 & 10

WB pages 76 & 77



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	partner (n)	شريك / زميل
gymnast (n)	لاعب جمباز	studies (n)	دراسات
gymnastics (n)	رياضة الجمباز	balance (d) (v), (n)	يتزن / توازن
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحي	train (ed) (v)	يتدرب / يتمرن
Olympics (n)	ألعاب أوليمبية	busy life	حياة مليئة بالعمل
mathematics (n)	مادة الرياضيات	physics (n)	مادة الفيزياء
achieve (d) (v)	يلجئ / يحقق [أهداف]	athletics (n)	ألعاب قوى



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

diagrams - mathematics - achieve - busy - partner

1. .... is the science of numbers and shapes.
2. You should work hard to \_\_\_\_\_ your goals.
3. Work with your ..... to finish the school project.
4. Famous sportsmen have a ..... life.

### Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 76

topic (n)	موضوع	present (ed) (v)	يعرض / يقدم
idea (n)	فكرة	answer (ed) (v), (n)	يجيب - إجابة
related (adj)	مرتبط / متصل	writing tip (n)	نصيحة للكتابة
best (adj)	أفضل	person (n)	شخص

### Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 77

stay (ed) (v), (n)	يقوم / يبيت - إقامة	dream (ed) (v), (n)	يحلم - حلم
description (n)	وصف	club (n)	نادي



## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
lose يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>gymnastics</b>	a sport which has a lot of different skills, such as jumping	رياضة الجمباز
<b>gymnast</b>	a person who does gymnastics	لاعب جمباز
<b>busy</b>	spending a lot of time doing things	مشغول
<b>train</b>	practise a sport	يتدرب

## Vocabulary Study

## Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
healthy صحي	well / fit	unhealthy / ill / sick غير صحي / مريض
strong قوى	powerful	weak ضعيف
stay يبقى / يظل	wait	leave يغادر
nearby قريب	near / close	far / faraway بعيد

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Suffix	Prefix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- ing		تكون الاسم من الفعل	writing كتابة
- ed		يكون الصفة من الفعل	related متصل
- y		تكون الصفة من الاسم	healthy صحي



## Exercise

## on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Baby animals are very weak. The opposite of the word "weak" is .....  
a. sick                      b. strong                      c. different                      d. fast
- We add the prefix ..... to form the opposite of "healthy".  
a. er-                      b. im-                      c. un-                      d. in-



3. We use the suffix ..... to form the noun of the verb "write".  
a. -ment      b. -ing      c. -ed      d. -ness
4. I live near the park. The synonym of the word "near" is .....  
a. far      b. close      c. easy      d. related
5. The word "weak" is a/an .....  
a. verb      b. adjective      c. adverb      d. preposition



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 gymnast - gymnastics

\* gymnast

لاعب جمباز

▶ My friend is a famous gymnast.

\* gymnastics

رياضة الجمباز [يأتي بعدها الفعل في صيغة المفرد]

▶ Gymnastics is a great sport.

Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10

### 2 so that

لكي

المصدر + can / will + inf. + فاعل + so that + .... + دالة في زمن المضارع البسيط

▶ She eats healthy food so that she can stay strong.

### 3 busy

مزدحم - مشغول

▶ - The classroom is busy. There are 70 students.

- Habiba has a very busy life.

Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10

### 4

لنلاحظ أن هذه الكلمات تنتهي بحرف (s) إلا أنها تتبع بفعل مفرد

physics / athletics / mathematics / gymnastics

▶ Gymnastics makes me fit.

Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10

### 5 make + مفعول + inf. مصدر الفعل

يجبر / يجعل

▶ The teacher made Amal do her homework.

make + مفعول + (adj) صفة

▶ Playing football makes me happy.



## Important Expressions &amp; Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
study hard	يذاكر بجد
stay strong	يظل قوياً
top gymnast	أفضل لاعب جمباز
have the same hobbies	لديهم نفس الهوايات
	find it difficult about يجد صعوبة بشأن
	a description of وصف لـ
	answer to إجابة لـ
	train (for) + [مدة] يدرّب لمدة



## Skills

## Reading and Listening

## Reading



- on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Habiba Marzouk achieves<sup>(1)</sup> her dreams<sup>(2)</sup>

Habiba Marzouk is a **gymnast**<sup>(3)</sup>. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with **her** family.

Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she **trains**<sup>(4)</sup> for five or six hours. She is a top gymnast in **Africa**<sup>(5)</sup> and she wants to go to the **Olympics**<sup>(6)</sup>.

Habiba's family always helps her. She eats **healthy** food so that she can stay strong. **Gymnastics**<sup>(8)</sup> is a difficult sport, but **it** makes her happy.



**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

## Understanding reference

مهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

## Learn

1. What does the underlined word "**her**" in the first paragraph refer to ?

- It refers to **Habiba Marzouk**.

## Practise

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" in the third paragraph refer to ?

(1) يحقق / ينجز

(2) أختار

(3) لاعب جمباز

1 يدرّب

(5) قارة أفريقيا

(6) الألعاب الأولمبية

(7) صحي

8 رياضة الجمباز



• on Lesson 6 WB page 77

My name is Omar. Nabila is my sister. She lives with me and my family in Damietta. Her favourite food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming ! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday. My sister plays chess, too. I do not like chess. How old is Nabila ? She is 12. That is the same as me. I am 12, too.

• on Lesson 7 SB page 11

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I *live* in Aswan with my family. My parents *are* teachers. My brother Ali *is* 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Khaled goes swimming every Friday.

I *listen* to music with *my* brothers. Ali *plays* football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Khaled *goes* swimming every Friday. There is a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is called Aya. We *play* basketball at school, and we're both in the school team. *Our* team is very good !

- Critical thinking skill

مهارة التفكير النقدي

Learn

1. Do you think it is easy for Khaled to go swimming every Friday ? Why ?

- Yes, Because the swimming pool is near his house.

Answer  
the following  
questions :

Extracting information

استخراج المعلومات

Practise

2. Where does Lamia live ?

• on Lesson 7 WB page 78

Munir and Mustafa are twins. *Their* sister is called Radwa. *Her* hobby is tennis and she is my best friend. I live with *my* brother and *his* name is Sayed. *Our* house is in Cairo. What is *your* best friend's name ?



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

► Key vocabulary

1. You must be a good ... to finish the race in two minutes.

a. parent

b. athlete

c. partner

d. musician

2. The Egyptian football team ... hard to get a medal in the next Olympics.

a. rain

b. train

c. make



d. stop





3. .... is a difficult sport, but it makes me fit.  
 a. Physics      b. Mathematics      c. Gymnastics      d. Olympics
4. Athletes work hard to ..... their school studies, their friends and families.  
 a. repeat      b. leave      c. balance      d. stay

► **SB , WB & Previous Exams**

5. All sportsmen dream of going to the .....  
 a. hospital      b. olympics      c. school      d. factory *(Minya 2023)*
6. Habiba has no time to ..... She is always busy.  
 a. miss      b. lose      c. mess      d. catch *(Kafu - Minya 2023)*
7.  Our science teacher made some ..... to make the lesson easier.  
 a. diagrams      b. grams      c. noise      d. food *(Samalout - Minya 2020)*
8. Good students work hard to ..... their dreams.  
 a. stay      b. achieve      c. study      d. carry *(Kafu - North Minya 2023)*
9.  Nabila and Omar like ..... They always go to the sea.  
 a. printing      b. swimming      c. staying      d. reading *(Multidisciplinary - Alexandria 2021)*

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

10. When you write a paragraph, you should write ..... ideas.  
 a. busy      b. related      c. weak      d. difficult
11. The policeman asked me to give the ..... of the thief I saw.  
 a. question      b. dream      c. description      d. balance
12. How long will you ..... in Egypt ? - For 3 weeks.  
 a. carry      b. stay      c. know      d. make

► **Definitions**

13. A ..... is a person who does gymnastics.  
 a. waiter      b. gymnast      c. customer      d. tourist
14. .... means spending a lot of time doing things.  
 a. Busy      b. Bored      c. Lazy      d. Weak

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. Habiba trains ..... five or six hours daily.  
 a. at      b. for      c. on      d. with
16. Mathematics ..... a school subject.  
 a. are      b. is      c. have      d. were



## 2. Speaking

## مهارة التحدث

## ► Asking and answering questions about a friend or a person :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن صديق أو شخص :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• What is his / her name ? ما اسمه أو اسمها ؟	- He / She is ... اسم الشخص. اسمه / اسمها ...
• How old is he / she ? ما عمره أو عمرها ؟	- He / She is ... السن أو العمر. عمره / عمرها ...
• Where does he / she live ? أين يعيش أو تعيش ؟	- He / She lives in ... اسم المكان. هو يعيش / هي تعيش في ...
• Who is his / her best friend ? من هو أفضل صديق له أو لها ؟	- His / Her best friend is ... أفضل صديق له هو / صديقة لها هي ...
• What is his / her favourite food ? ما هو الطعام المفضل له أو لها ؟	- His / Her favourite food is ... طعامه / طعامها المفضل هو ...
• What are his/ her hobbies ? ما هي هواياته أو هواياتها ؟	- His / Her hobbies are ... (الهوايات). هواياته أو هواياتها هي ...



## Pop Quiz

## on Speaking

## • Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is asking Ahmed about a person in his family.

Ali : Can I ask you some questions ?

Ahmed : (1) ..

Ali : What is the name of your grandfather ?

Ahmed : (2) ..

Ali : (3) .. ?

Ahmed : He is 50 years old.

Ali : (4) .. ?

Ahmed : He is interested in playing chess.

Ali : Do you like playing chess ?

Ahmed : (5) ..

(Detr Mawais - Munya 2021)



## 3. Writing

## مهارة الكتابة

## ► Writing tips :

نصائح للكتابة :

- A paragraph is a group of related sentences that present one topic or one idea.

الفقرة الإنشائية هو عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل المترابطة التي تعرض/تقدم موضوع واحد أو فكرة واحدة.



## ► Punctuation marks :

علامات الترقيم :

1. Start each sentence with a capital letter. ابدأ كل جملة بحرف كبير.
2. Use capital letters for : names, cities, days of the week, etc. استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع : أسماء الأشخاص ، المدن ، أيام الأسبوع ، الخ.
3. End your sentence with a (.), (!) or (?). ضع :  
 أ . النقطة (.) في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.  
 ب . علامة التعجب (!) في نهاية الجملة التي تعبر عن الدهشة أو المفاجأة.  
 ج . علامة الاستفهام (?) في نهاية الجملة الاستفهامية.

## Your best friend or a person in your family

صديقك المفضل / المقرب أو شخص في عائلتك

1. My best friend is called Adam. صديقي المفضل / المقرب يدعى آدم
2. He is 12. He has the same age as me. يبلغ من العمر اثنتي عشرة سنة. هو لديه نفس عمري
3. He lives in Giza. هو يعيش بالجيزة.
4. We play basketball at school. We're both in the school team. نلعب كرة السلة بالمدرسة. كلا منا في فريق المدرسة.
5. He loves chicken with rice. يحب الدجاج مع الأرز.

## A famous sportswoman لاعبة رياضية مشهورة

1. Habiba Marzouk is a top gymnast. حبيبة مرزوق لاعبة حصار على مستوى عال
2. She is 18. تبلغ من العمر ثمانية عشر عامًا.
3. She lives in Cairo. تعيش في مدينة القاهرة.
4. She is very good at gymnastics. هي جيدة في رياضة الجمباز.
5. She has a busy life. هي لديها حياة مليئة بالأنشطة.
6. Every day, she goes to school. كل يوم تذهب إلى المدرسة.
7. She wants to go to the Olympics. هي تريد الوصول إلى الأولمبياد.
8. She trains for about 6 hours daily. تتدرب لمدة حوالي 6 ساعات يوميًا.
9. Her family always helps her. تقوم عائلتها بالمساعدة دائمًا.
10. She eats healthy food to stay strong. تناول طعام صحي ليعطي صحتها جيدة
11. I am very proud of her. أنا فخور بها جدًا.



# General Exercises



LESSONS

**5 & 6**

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Gymnastics is a/ an ..... sport.  
a. easy                      b. difficult                      c. interesting                      d. boring
2. Gymnasts ..... for many hours daily.  
a. wave                      b. tell                      c. keep                      d. train
3. Gymnasts must ..... their hobby, work and study.  
a. train                      b. balance                      c. make                      d. charge
4. Gymnasts always want to ..... their dream.  
a. achieve                      b. study                      c. take                      d. go

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

**Noura is asking Salma about her uncle.**

Noura : What is your uncle's job ?

Salma : (1) .....

Noura : (2) ..... ?

Salma : He works in a school.

Noura : (3) ..... ?

Salma : He was born in Alexandria.

Noura : What is his favourite sport ?

Salma : (4) .. ..

Noura : Do you love him ?

Salma : (5) .....

(El Mansra - Cairn 2023)

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Remas studies hard to ..... her dreams. (Sakula - Sohag 2023)

a. give                      b. make                      c. achieve                      d. take

2. (33) Habiba Marzouk eats well because ..... is a difficult sport.

(Ismailia 2023)

a. gymnastics                      b. gymnast                      c. physics                      d. maths



- 3. Let's go to the club to ..... for the match.  
a. sleep                      b. eat                      c. train                      d. drink
- 4. Does she watch TV ? – No, she .....  
a. don't                      b. doesn't                      c. do                      d. does  
(Tima - Sohag 2023)
- 5. I find it difficult to ..... to the city.  
a. move                      b. write                      c. train                      d. achieve
- 6. **WB** Habiba is a great athlete. .... family lives in Cairo.  
a. Her                      b. She                      c. Hers                      d. She's
- 7. **SB** Habiba is a top ..... In Africa.  
a. gym                      b. gymnastics                      c. gymnast                      d. gymnastic
- 8. I like math. My ..... is to be an engineer.  
a. dream                      b. hobby                      c. party                      d. match  
(Tamia - Fayoum 2022)
- 9. How often do you ..... sports ?  
a. make                      b. do                      c. plan                      d. dive
- 10. Tourists often ..... in hotels near the Nile in Cairo.  
a. achieve                      b. stay                      c. answer                      d. balance

#### 4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Which bag is this ? - It's Jane's. (East Alexandria - Alexandria 2023) ( ..... )
2. **SB** She is 18 and live in Cairo with her family. ( ..... )
3. Mathematics are an interesting subject. ( ..... )
4. What do your telephone number ? ( ..... )

#### 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : **موضوع مقبول في نهاية الكتاب**

**"Your favourite person in your family"**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---





# Review

1

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary		Language	
<b>Lessons 1 &amp; 2</b>		<b>1- Possessive adjectives &amp; Possessive pronouns</b>	
twin (n)	توائم	Sub. pronouns	Possessive adjectives
quiz (n)	امتحان موجز / قصير	I	mine
interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية	He	his
hobby (n)	هواية	She	hers
chess (n)	لعبة الشطرنج	It	its
band (n)	فرقة موسيقية	They	theirs
voluntary (adj)	تطوعي	We	ours
research (ed) (v), (n)	بحري بحث - بحث	You	yours
diary (n)	مفكرة يومية	نستخدم ضمائر وضمات الملكية للإشارة إلى أن الشيء يخص شخص ما.	
drums (n)	طبول	يأتي صواب بمكية قبل اسم الشيء المملوك.	
What kind ... ?	ما نوع	لا تأتي بعد ضمائر الملكية لاسم المملوك	
discuss (ed) (v)	ناقش	<b>ex.</b> - This is my bag. It's mine.	
childrens hospital (n)	مستشفى أطفال	- That is her pen. It isn't yours.	
age (n)	عمر / سن	<b>2- Present Simple</b>	
<b>Lessons 3 &amp; 4</b>		+ inf. + s/es/ies	
orphan (n)	يتيم	فاعل جمع	
mountain (n)	جبل	<b>ex.</b> He lives in Cairo.	
communicate (ed) (v)	بواصل	- They live in Cairo.	
correct (ed) (v), (adj)	صحح - صحيح		
conversation (n)	محادثة		



## Giving the main idea

لحدی قد تجد صعوبة فی تحديد الفکره الرئيسیة بسبب وجود عدة افکار <sup>١</sup>م عرضها فی الفقرة.

عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية] أو [العنوان المناسب] للفقرة.

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

► Read and answer the questions :

Heidi is the story of an orphan girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goats' milk, eats bread and cheese. Every day, she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend, Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy!

- What is the main idea of the passage.
- or What does the passage talk about ?
- or Give a suitable title for the passage.

## Karim and Ramzy's interests.

اعتقدوا انهم كبرياء و فقهه



# 2

## Speaking

### Your favourite hobbies

٤ اكتب سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

٥ اكتب تربية السؤال عن (الهوايات لمعصية) وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

٦ اكتب محادثة يحب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

٧ اكتب وقم بالإجابة متبقيا الخطوة الأولى.



٨ اكتب وتعلم كيفية الإجابة

Read and learn how to ask and answer

الحوار عن الهوايات وشخص مفضل لك.

السؤال	الإجابة	الاستخدام
What's your favourite sport?	I like basketball.	
When do you play tennis?	I play tennis on Mondays	حوار عن الهوايات
What kind of voluntary work do you do?	I help in a children's hospital	
What's his name?	It's Omar.	
How old is he?	He is 14 years old.	
Where does he live?	He lives in Cairo.	حوار عن شخص مفضل لك
What's his favourite food?	He loves fish with rice	
What are his favourite hobbies?	He likes swimming and chess.	

Dina is telling Rehab about her cousin.

Dina : This is a photo of my cousin.

Rehab : (1) .....

Dina : It's Randa.

Rehab : .....

Dina : She's 14.

Rehab Where does she live ?

Dina : (3) .....

Rehab What's her favourite food ?

Dina : .....

Rehab What are her hobbies ?

Dina : .....





نحس سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية [paragraph] مهارتك في التعبير عن موضوع ما. للبريد من لدرج كراسه لنعصر لنعطيه للوحه انصوى



استعدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [الهوايات المفضلة] و [وصف لاسخاص] وتحد صعبه في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.



مصاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية وكيفية استخدامها في تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

### Step 1 Review your vocabulary

#### Write the meaning :

مباريات كرة قدم  
نادي  
أصدقاء  
محبوب  
هواية  
يجمع رياضي

Write the meaning

Describing people

عم / خال  
السباحة  
مفضل  
روجة  
الطهي  
فصل الصيف

### Step 2 Sentences

#### Fill in using the words

1. It is a ..... sport all over the world.
2. I watch football ..... on TV.
3. My favourite ..... is Mohamed Salah.
4. My favourite ..... is playing football.
5. I play it five times a week in the .....

### Step 3 Paragraph

#### Write a paragraph on "your favourite hobby"

#### Write an email about : "A description of someone in your family"



### Questions collected from previous exams

#### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't ..... noise. I want to study my lessons.

(Beheira - Qalyubia 2023)

a. take      b. go      c. make      d. do

2. "Small" has the same meaning as .....

(Zagazig - Sharkia 2023)

a. big      b. little      c. hard      d. huge

3. She's a/an ..... She lost her father and mother.

(El Shorouk - Gharbia 2023)

a. clever      b. orphan      c. sensible      d. brave

4. Sarah is my father's daughter. She is my .....

(Minya El Qumh - Sharkia 2023)

a. aunt      b. cousin      c. brother      d. sister

5. Take that phone charger to Ali. It's .....

(Fayoum - Sharkia 2023)

a. your      b. hers      c. his      d. yours

6. .... is a game for two people. (Nasser City - Cairo 2023)

a. Football      b. Handball      c. Chess      d. Volleyball

7. The ..... is a room at the top of a house. (Sohag 2022)

a. hall      b. attic      c. office      d. kitchen

8. My grandfather keeps ..... for meat and milk.

(Nasser - Beni Suef 2023)

a. geese      b. cats      c. goats      d. ducks

9. We ..... go to school on Fridays. (Helwan - Cairo 2022)

a. never      b. sometimes

c. always      d. often

10. Mathematics ..... my favourite subject.

(Dakla - Qena 2023)

a. are      b. is      c. does      d. has

#### 2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That house is our. (Assiut - Cairo 2023) ( ..... )

2. Grandfather arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go to meet his. (South Giza - Giza 2023) ( ..... )

3. What is your sister look like ? (Menouf - Minufia 2023) ( ..... )

4. My friend found mine blue pen. (Obour - Qalyubia 2023) ( ..... )

5. I've nine years old. (El Suthiya - Sharkia 2023) ( ..... )

6. Sarah and Mona always are happy. (El Fashin - Beni Suef 2023) ( ..... )

7. How much is the book cost ? (Khinis - Qalyubia 2023 / Sharkia 2023) ( ..... )

8. He work in a hospital. (El Balvana - Sohag 2022) ( ..... )

9. I doesn't go to bed late. (Abnub - Assiut 2023) ( ..... )

10. Where does your aunt living ? (El Mahmudiya - Beheira 2022) ( ..... )



# Test

## on unit 1

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

يمكنك حل الاختبار  
إلكترونياً وتصويبه

### A. Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

28

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)



1. Habiba Marzouk lives in ..... .  
a. Aswan                      b. Cairo                      c. Tanta                      d. Luxor
2. Habiba Marzouk wants to go to ..... .  
a. China                      b. France                      c. the Olympics                      d. Italy
3. Habiba Marzouk is a top ..... .  
a. gymnast                      b. basketball player  
c. tennis player                      d. referee
4. Habiba Marzouk has a ..... life. (Hiba - Sharkia 2020)  
a. busy                      b. free                      c. sad                      d. angry

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

29

Hossam is asking Omar about his hobby.

Hany : Hello, Omar.

Omar : (1) ..... .

Hany : What is your favourite hobby ?

Omar : (2) ..... .

Hany : Where can you read books ?

Omar : (3) ..... .

Hany : (4) ..... ?

Omar : Yes, I like funny stories.

Hany : (5) ..... ?

Omar : A librarian helps me at the library.

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

30

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I live in Aswan with my family. My parents are teachers. My brother Ali is 13 years old and Khaled is nine. I listen



to music with my brothers. Ali plays football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Khaled goes swimming every Friday. There's a swimming pool **near** our house. My best friend is Aya. We play basketball at school, and we're **both** in the school team. Our team is very good !

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The swimming pool isn't ..... their house.  
a. near                      b. far from                      c. by                      d. beside
2. The underlined word "**both**" refers to .....  
a. Lamia's parents                      b. Aya and Khaled  
c. Khaled and Ali                      d. Lamia and Aya
3. The underlined word "**near**" is the opposite of .....  
a. cheap                      b. hard                      c. far                      d. easy

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.
5. Who is older, Lamia or Ali ?
6. Do you think Lamia has a busy life ? Why / Why not ?

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... are sisters or brothers who are the same age. ....  
a. Twins                      b. Couples                      c. Doubles                      d. Cousins
2. Playing chess is one of my favourite ..... (Khanka - Qalyubia 2023)  
a. subjects                      b. colours                      c. hobbies                      d. ideas
3. My father and my mother are my ..... (Sinnix - Fayoum 2023)  
a. grandchildren                      b. parents                      c. cousins                      d. daughters
4. My brother always helps ..... with my homework.  
a. my                      b. mine                      c. me                      d. myself
5. He hurried to the ..... to catch his plane.  
a. station                      b. stop                      c. centre                      d. airport



- 6.** Sara always ..... nice stories in the library.  
a. reads                  b. to read                  c. reading                  d. has read
- 7.** Hadeer is ..... 11.  
a. older                  b. age                  c. aged                  d. old  
*(North Suez - Suez 2022)*
- 8.** That pen isn't my pen. It's .....  
a. mine                  b. her                  c. yours                  d. its  
*(Haram - Giza 2022)*
- 9.** Doing this kind of sport ..... me happy.  
a. takes                  b. plays                  c. gives                  d. makes
- 10.** Her father and mother are alive, so she isn't an .....  
a. orphan                  b. archeologist                  c. engineer                  d. Italian

**5** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What is her hobbies ? ( )  
2. WB Seleem doesn't plays tennis after school. ( )  
3. SB Habiba eats healthy food so that she can stays strong. ( )  
4. We respect hers teachers. ( )

### E. Writing

**6** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : **مخاطر منه في نهاية الكتاب**

### “Your favourite sports star”

(Macall - Cairo 2023 / El Mostakbal - Cairo 2023 / Al Ayyaz - Giza 2023 / All Fashin - Beni Suef 2023)



# Stop here !

## Mini-Test on unit 4 for Al-Azhar students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Ali : What is your favourite subject ?

Hany : .....

B. Leen : ..... ?

Toka : My sister is called Amira.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Some people ..... nuts to rice pudding.

a. make                      b. bake                      c. add                      d. train

2. They never ..... to school late.

a. comes                      b. coming                      c. to come                      d. come

3. Hany likes to visit his uncle. .... is called Ayman.

a. Him                      b. He                      c. His                      d. Her

4. .... means to practise a sport.

a. Achieve                      b. Decide                      c. Train                      d. Balance

5. .... is your grandfather's father.

a. Grandchildren                      b. Great-grandfather  
c. Grandson                      d. Great-grandchildren

6. We ..... swimming twice a week.

a. do                      b. work                      c. have                      d. go

### 3 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

**"Voluntary work"**



**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. How old is Amira ? - She is (1) .....  
a. 13      b. 14      c. 12      d. 16
2. Where is she from ? - (2) .....  
a. Cairo      b. Hurghada      c. Luxor      d. Giza
3. Amira is in (3) ..... one at school.  
a. elementary      b. primary  
c. secondary      d. preparatory
4. She likes (4) .....  
a. English and art      b. maths and Arabic  
c. science and sport      d. science and math

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :**

**"Youssef is asking Hazem about his family".**

**Youssef :** Can I ask you some questions ?

**Hazem :** (5) ....

- a. Yes, of course.      b. Yes, I do.
- c. Yes, he can.      d. Yes, she can.

**Youssef :** (6) ....

- a. What is your father's job ?
- b. What is your father's name ?
- c. What is your father's food ?
- d. What is your father's sport ?

**Hazem :** He is called Amgad.

**Youssef :** How old is he ?

**Hazem :** (7) .....

- a. He's 50 years old.      b. He's 175 cm.
- c. He's fat.      d. He's 80 kg.

**Youssef :** (8) .....

- a. What does your mum play ?
- b. What does your mum cook ?
- c. What does your mum do ?
- d. What does your mum watch ?

**Hazem :** She is a teacher in a big school.

**Youssef :** Do you have any cousins ?

**Hazem :** (9) .....

- a. Yes, I have one pet.
- b. Yes, I have one book.
- c. Yes, I have one cousin.
- d. Yes, I have one car.

**3. Choose the correct form of the underlined word(s) from a, b, c or d :**

10. My teacher always work very hard.

- a. to work      b. working
- c. works      d. is working

11. I always listens to the teacher carefully.

- a. listening      b. to listen
- c. listen      d. have listened

12. Is there any figs in the fridge ?

- a. Do      b. Are      c. Have      d. Has

13. Does Ahmed walking to school ?

- a. is walking      b. walked      c. walks      d. walk





Unit

2

## It's my favourite subject

12:21 WB pages 7

Objectives :

• Reading :

• Writing :

• Listening :

• Speaking :

timetables

• Life skills :





## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

home economics (n)	مادة الاقتصاد المنزلي	drama (n)	مادة الفن المسرحي
computer studies (n)	مادة الحاسب الآلي	playground (n)	ملعب
bell (n)	جرس	art (n)	مادة التربية الفنية [الرسم]
library (n)	مكتبة [للقراءة والاستعارة]	typical (adj)	نمطي / نموذجي
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	hall (n)	قاعة / فناء
social studies (n)	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية	religion (n)	مادة التربية الدينية



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

art - bell - playground - library

1. The door ..... is ringing. I'll open the door.
2. We learn how to draw and paint in ..... class.
3. I like going to the ..... at break to read books.

### Lesson 1

SB pages 12 & 13 WB page 79

travelling (n)	السفر / التنقل	quarter to	إلا ربع [للإخبار عن الوقت]
difference (n)	فرق / اختلاف	half (n)	نصف
quarter past	وربع [للإخبار عن الوقت]	break (n)	فسحة / راحة
lesson (n)	حصة / درس	subject (n)	مادة دراسية

### Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 80

school days (n)	أيام الدراسة	trip (n)	رحلة قصيرة
road (n)	طريق	finally (adv)	أخيرًا / في النهاية
head teacher (n)	ناظر المدرسة	Nairobi (n)	مدينة نيروبي
daily life (n)	الحياة اليومية	Kenya (n)	دولة كينيا



### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
get up يستيقظ	got up	got up
mean يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
ring يرن / يتصل (تليفونيا)	rang	rung

### Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

School subjects مواد دراسية	
Arabic	the main language of Arab people مادة اللغة العربية
art	painting and drawing مادة التربية الفنية [الرسم]
computer studies	the subject for learning how to use a computer مادة الحاسب الآلي
drama	the subject of how to learn about acting مادة الفن المسرحي
English	the language of England, the USA and many other countries مادة اللغة الإنجليزية
home economics	the subject for learning about cooking and skills for the home مادة الاقتصاد المنزلي
religion	the subject for learning about what people believe in مادة تربية الدين
science	the subject for learning about how to test and understand facts. It includes biology, chemistry and physics مادة العلوم
social studies	the subject for studying people and how they live مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية
Other definitions تعريفات أخرى	
break	the time at school when you do not have lessons راحة / فسيحة
library	a place where you can borrow or read books مكتبة
playground	a place outside where children at school can play ملعب
bell	an object that makes noise when you ring it جرس
hall	a large room where people can meet together قاعة / صالة
typical	means usual نمطي



## Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات			
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym Opposite المضاد	
usual	typical / ordinary	unusual	غير عادي
after	following	before	قبل
far away	remote / distant	near	قريب

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية		
Prefix & Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى حال تحويل الاسم إلى صفة	finally أخيرًا daily يومي
-er	يكون الاسم من الفعل	teacher معلم
un-	تكون عكس (الصفة)	unusual غير عادي

## Exercise

## on Vocabulary Study

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I never walk to school because it is far away. The synonym of "far away" is ".....".  
a. usual                      b. late                      c. near                      d. remote
- You can make an adverb from the adjective "final" by adding .....  
a. -ly                      b. -al                      c. -ful                      d. -ness
- The antonym of the word "before" is .....  
a. next                      b. after                      c. above                      d. under
- We add the prefix "....." to get the opposite of "usual".  
a. dis-                      b. ir-                      c. un-                      d. im-
- The word "usual" and the word "....." have the same meaning.  
a. different                      b. interesting                      c. boring                      d. typical



## General Notes on Reading &amp; Listening

## 1 by / on / in + means of transport

وسائل المواصلات بعد حروف الجر

يستخدم حرف الجر "by" قبل كل وسائل المواصلات بشرط عدم وجود أداة أو أي كلمة أخرى قبلها مثل "a - an - the - my" وإن وجدت كلمة أخرى يتغير حرف الجر إلى "on - in".  
• لاحظ أنه يستخدم حرف الجر "in" قبل وسائل المواصلات الخاصة مثل "car - taxi - canoe".

► Toka goes to school by car / in a car.

• لاحظ أنه يستخدم حرف الجر "on" دائمًا قبل كلمة "foot" لتعني سيرًا على الأقدام وتأتي قبل وسائل المواصلات العامة مثل "bus - plane - train".



- ▶ - He goes to school **on foot** = He walks to school.
- I go to work **by bus / on a bus**.

SB Page 15

## 2 drive (someone) to a (place).

يوصل [شخص] لمكان بالسيارة

- ▶ - Dad drives me to school.

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14

## 3 home / there

• لاحظ هاتان الكلمتان [home / there] لا تسبقان بحرف جر كما بالأمثلة.

- ▶ - I get **home** at 7 p.m.
- She went **there** last week.

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14

## 4 on / in / at + time

حروف الجر قبل الوقت

\* on

يستخدم حرف الجر "on" قبل الأيام وتاريخ اليوم

- on Friday / Tuesday / on 15<sup>th</sup> August, 2019

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14

\* in

يستخدم حرف الجر "in" مع الشهور والسنوات وفصول السنة

- in October / In 2018 / in summer

WB page 85

\* at

يستخدم حرف الجر "at" قبل الساعة

- at seven o'clock.

- at quarter past ten

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14

## 5 a girl's school / a girls' school

\* a girl's school

المدرسة التي تذهب إليها بنت

\* a girls' school

مدرسة للبنات فقط

SB page 12

## 6

• لاحظ أن المواد الدراسية المنتهية بحرف "s" مثل

physics / mathematics / computer studies / home economics / social studies

تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد وتستخدم معها فعل مفرد ولا يستخدم فعل جمع.

- ▶ - Computer studies is my favourite subject.

WB page 85

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
have a busy day لديه يوم مزدحم بالعمل	good <b>at</b> + (n. / inf. + ing) جيد في
see you later أراك لاحقًا	<b>on</b> school days في أيام الدراسة
take a long time يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا	<b>at</b> break في الفسحة
tell the time يخبر بالوقت	school starts <b>at</b> ... تبدأ الدراسة في ...
go to bed يذهب إلى الفراش	typical day <b>for</b> me يوم نموذجي / نموذجي بالنسبة لي
get home يصل إلى المنزل	<b>on</b> a typical weekend في عطلة نهاية أسبوع نموذجية
do homework يؤدي الواجب المنزلي	It is time <b>for</b> (noun / inf. + ing) حان الوقت لـ ...
	<b>around</b> the world حول العالم





## Skills

## 1 Reading and Listening

## Listening



• on Lesson 1 SB page 13

**Amal** : I like the new **timetable** . What's your favourite day, Injy ?

**Injy** : I like Thursday. We have **social studies** first on Thursday. Then we have English and then we go **to science** <sup>(3)</sup> . That's my favourite subject.

**Amal** : My favourite day's today. We have **maths** <sup>(4)</sup> first and second lesson after break today. I love maths! Then we have science and **art** <sup>(5)</sup> .

**Injy** : I like art too, but I'm not very good at it. What do we have tomorrow ?

**Amal** : English, then **religion** <sup>(6)</sup> is next, then Arabic and then **home economics** <sup>(7)</sup> . After **break** <sup>(8)</sup> , we have social studies. Then we have science and **computer studies** <sup>(9)</sup> . Finally, we have music.

**Injy** : When do we have **drama** <sup>(10)</sup> ?

**Amal** : That's the last two lessons on a Tuesday and the last lesson Wednesday. It's time for the next lesson now ! See you later !

- 1 جدول مواعيد
- 2 دراسات اجتماعية
- 3 مادة العلوم
- 4 مادة الرياضيات
- 5 مادة التربية الفنية
- 6 مادة التربية الدينية
- 7 مادة الاقتصاد المنزلي
- 8 فسحة / راحة
- 9 مادة الحاسب الآلي
- 10 مادة الفن المسرحي

## Listening skill

⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Amal's favourite subject is .  
 a. maths      b. drama      c. English      d. science

• on Lesson 1 SB page 13

**Say the times. Listen and check.**

1. A quarter past ten.
2. Half past twelve.
3. Half past five.
4. Twenty-five past seven.
5. Five to twelve.
6. A quarter to nine.





## Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 14

### Daily life around the world

"I'm Akeyo. I live in Nairobi, in Kenya. This is a **typical day** for me. On school days I **get up** <sup>1</sup> at half past six. I usually **have breakfast** <sup>2</sup> with my family. My school is **far away** <sup>3</sup>, so we never walk there. My mum and dad **drive us there** <sup>4</sup>. It always **takes a long time** <sup>5</sup> because the roads are busy. When we hear the bell at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall. We have four lessons, then it is break. I usually talk with my friends in the playground, but sometimes we go to the library to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have lunch at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I **get home** <sup>6</sup>, I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I **have a busy day!**" <sup>7,8</sup>



1. يوم نمطي / عادي
2. يستيقظ
3. يتناول الإفطار
4. بعيد
5. يوصلنا بالسيارة
6. يستغرق وقت طويل
7. يصل للمنزل
8. يوم ملي بالأعمال

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

- Giving the main idea.

**Learn**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.  
- A typical day for Akeyo.

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

- Extracting information.

**Practise**

2. How does Akeyo go to school?

استخراج المعلومات

## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► Key vocabulary

1. There are ten English lessons in the ..... a week.  
a. map                      b. diary                      c. timetable                      d. play
2. We know it is time for the next lesson when we hear the school ..... ringing.  
a. ball                      b. bin                      c. bell                      d. mail





3. You can know everything about countries, seas and rivers in \_\_\_\_\_ class.  
a. maths                      b. art                      c. social studies      d. English

► **SB , WB & Previous Exams**

4. It always takes a long time because the \_\_\_\_\_ are busy.  
a. lessons                      b. subjects                      c. roads                      d. hobbies

5. Social studies and science are school \_\_\_\_\_ .

*(East Cairo 2023 / El Warrag - Giza 2023 / El Idwa - Mina 2023 / Shubrakhat - Behera 2023)*

- a. objects                      b. subjects                      c. teams                      d. groups

6. \_\_\_\_\_ is the subject of how to learn numbers.

*(El Idwa - Mina 2023)*

- a. Drama                      b. Maths                      c. Arabic                      d. English

7. On a \_\_\_\_\_ weekend, I visit my grandmother.

- a. physical                      b. musical                      c. typical                      d. national

*(Multidisciplinary - Qalsoubia 2021 / Samuties - Fayoum 2023)*

8. At break, I play games with my friends in the \_\_\_\_\_ .

*(Desouk - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*

- a. bathroom                      b. playground                      c. laboratory                      d. classroom

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

9. We have seven \_\_\_\_\_ on the school day.

- a. trips                      b. breaks                      c. tapes                      d. lessons

10. In \_\_\_\_\_ class , we learn about acting.

- a. math                      b. drama                      c. Arabic                      d. religion

11. What \_\_\_\_\_ do they speak in Korea ?

- a. subjects                      b. lessons                      c. languages                      d. studies

► **Definitions**

12. \_\_\_\_\_ is the time at school when you do not have lessons.

- a. Learning                      b. Break                      c. Study                      d. Drama

13. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a large room where people can meet together.

- a. hall                      b. wall                      c. hole                      d. playground

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

14. Mona was late. She had to go to school \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi.

- a. by                      b. on                      c. at                      d. in

15. When I \_\_\_\_\_ home, I have my lunch.

- a. take                      b. give                      c. have                      d. get

16. My uncle \_\_\_\_\_ me to school yesterday.

- a. made                      b. gave                      c. drove                      d. went



## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### 1. Telling the time :

١. الإخبار بالوقت :

There are two ways of telling the time : هناك طريقتان للإخبار عن الوقت :



9:15 : a quarter past nine → nine fifteen



10:45 : a quarter to eleven → ten forty-five



**Note :** 15 minutes = a quarter of an hour | 20 minutes = a half of an hour

### 2. Asking and answering about timetables and the school days :

٢. توجيه أسئلة والإجابة عليها عن جدول المواعيد و الأيام الدراسية :

Questions	Answers
• What day is it today? - أي يوم في الأسبوع يكون اليوم ؟	• It is Sunday. - إنه يوم الأحد.
• What time does science start on Sunday ? - متى تبدأ حصة مادة العلوم يوم الأحد ؟	• It starts at ten to one. - تبدأ في الساعة الواحدة إلى عشر دقائق.
• What time does the math class finish on Tuesday ? - متى تنتهي حصة مادة الرياضيات يوم الثلاثاء ؟	• It finishes at half past one. - تنتهي في الساعة الواحدة ونصف.
• What time is the break ? - ما الوقت الذي تكون فيه فترة الراحة (المسحاة) ؟	• It is at a quarter past ten. - إنها في الساعة العاشرة والرابع.



## 3. Writing

## مهارة الكتابة

## Your day يوم خاص بك

1. I'm ..... . I live in ..... . أنا اسمي ..... أنا أعيش في .....
2. This is a typical day for me. هذا هو يومي العادي.
3. On school days, I usually get up at .... . في الأيام الدراسية عادة ما استيقظ في الساعة .....
4. On weekends and holidays, I get up at ..... . في العطلات الأسبوعية والإجازات ، استيقظ في الساعة ...
5. I usually have breakfast with ..... at ..... . أناأول عادة وجبة الإفطار مع ... في الساعة .....
6. I go to school by ..... /on foot . أذهب إلى المدرسة مسبقاً ... / سيزا على الأقدام.
7. As my school is near / far ..... لأن مدرستي قريبة / بعيدة .....
8. It takes ..... to go to school. إنها تستغرق ..... للوصول إلى المدرسة.
9. We have ..... lessons every school day. لدينا (عدد) حصص في اليوم الدراسي.
10. The school day finishes at ..... . ينتهي اليوم الدراسي في الساعة .....



## Quick Look

An hour before the exam

## مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه في ساعة  
واحدة فقط في نهاية ملحق

A Week is enough



## Step 1

## Vocabulary

اختر أمثالك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. A. What's your ..... day like ?  
نمطي3. I usually get up at six  
o'clock.2. A. When do you ..... ?  
تسهرB. I have breakfast at six thirty  
with my family.3. A. When do you ..... ?  
تعود إلى المنزل

B. I come back home at 1 : 30.

1. A. What's your favourite  
ماده دراسية ?

B. I like computer studies.

2. A. Why do you like it ?

B. Because I like learning how  
to ..... a computer.  
يستخدم3. A. .... is your teacher this  
year ?  
من

B. Mr. Mohamed.

## Speaking

اختر أمثالك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Abdu is asking Zeinab about her typical day.

Zeinab : What's your typical day like ? Do you  
wake up early ?Abdu : ..... I usually get up at six  
o'clock.Abdu : I have breakfast at six thirty with my  
family.

Zeinab : What time do you arrive at school ?

Abdu : (3) .....

Zeinab : (4) .....

Abdu : I come back home at 1:30 in the  
afternoon.Zeinab : Do you always do your homework  
after lunch ?

Abdu : (5) .....

Aya asks Heba about her favourite subject.

Aya : What's your favourite subject ?

Heba : (1) .....

Aya : (2) .....

Heba : Because I like learning how to use  
a computer.

Aya : (3) .....

Heba : Mr Ali is my teacher this year.

Aya : When do we have computer studies ?

Heba : (4) .....

Aya : How often do we study it ?

Heba : (5) .....

## Step 3

## writing

اختر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Your typical day"

10/10/2023

"Your favourite school  
subject"

10/10/2023





## Language

## Adverbs of Frequency

ظروف التكرار

\*\*\*\*\*

always

دائماً

\*\*\*\*

usually

عادة

\*\*\*

often

غالباً

\*\*

sometimes

أحياناً

0

never

أبداً

## Usage الاستخدام

• نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار فعل ما :

ex. - I always get up early.

## لاحظ أن :

• تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي وبعد (verb to be) :

ex. - We usually go out on Fridays. - We are never late for school.

How often ► [do / does] + subj. + inf. ?  
 كم مرة ؟      الفاعل      مصدر الفعل

• نستخدم للسؤال عن عدد المرات التي يتكرر فيها فعل ما وللإجابة نستخدم ظروف التكرار :

ex. - How often does he do his homework in the evening ?

- He always does his homework in the evening.

• يمكن الإجابة أيضاً على السؤال المبدوء بـ [How often] بعدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

ex. - How often do you go to the club ?

- I go to the club twice a week.





## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. Which lesson \_\_\_\_\_ after home economics on Sunday ? *(Al-Sharif - Sayeda 2021)*  
 a. will                      b. has                      c. does                      d. is
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ her breakfast with her family. *(Abo El Nomros - Giza 2023)*  
 a. usually has              b. has usually              c. has often              d. often have
3. ~~We~~ We \_\_\_\_\_ go to the beach in winter. It's too cold to swim. *(Multidisciplinary - Fayoum 2021)*  
 a. never                      b. always                      c. usually                      d. sometimes
4. Yara never \_\_\_\_\_ video games. *(Ismailia 2022)*  
 a. watches                  b. watching                  c. is watching              d. watch
5. They \_\_\_\_\_ to the supermarket on weekends. *(Bilbeis - Sharkia 2022)*  
 a. usually goes              b. goes usually              c. go never                  d. never go
6. ~~SB~~ How \_\_\_\_\_ do you get up at 6.30 a.m ? - Always. *(Multidisciplinary - Beheira 2021)*  
 a. many                      b. long                      c. much                      d. often

#### ► El-Moasser Exercises

7. My father usually \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper in the evening.  
 a. read                      b. reading                      c. to read                      d. reads
8. How often \_\_\_\_\_ he eat lunch at a restaurant ?  
 a. is                          b. do                          c. does                          d. were
9. Hala \_\_\_\_\_ goes to school early. She never comes late.  
 a. never                      b. ever                      c. always                      d. sometimes
10. Ashraf always travels on a train. This means he \_\_\_\_\_ travels by plane.  
 a. always                      b. never                      c. sometimes                      d. often

### 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

#### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. I play always the drums. *(El Marj - Cairo 2023 / Dakahlia 2024) ( .... )*
2. How much do you play sport every week ? - Sometimes. *(Badrashim - Giza 2023) ( ..... )*



3. **WB** Dina sometimes go swimming.

( )

4. **SB** We both get up in half past six.

Rejoice North Street ( )

### ► El-Moasser Exercises

5. Sara and Mona always are happy.

( )

6. They never walks to school.

( )

7. How often do you got up at 5:00 am ?

( )

8. We always go to school on Fridays.

( )

9. He always have breakfast at 7 o'clock.

( )

10. No, I ever do my homework after breakfast.

( )

## El-Moasser

### Homework Interactive

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي
- تمكنك من إتقان المفردات اللغوية ( التسميم )
- والقواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على الوحدات





# General Exercises



## LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

• **Mazin is talking to Ahmed about school.**

**Mazin** : Hi, Ahmed. How are you ?

**Ahmed** : (1) .

**Mazin** : (2) . ?

**Ahmed** : My favourite day of the week is Monday.

**Mazin** : (3) . ?

**Ahmed** : Because I have art and P.E.

**Mazin** : What's your favourite subject ?

**Ahmed** : (4) .

**Mazin** : Where do you have science at school ?

**Ahmed** : (5) .

(Dakki - Giza 2021)

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Othmano lives in Rowanda. This is a typical day for him. On school days, Othmano always gets up at half past six. He usually has breakfast with his family. His school is far away, so he takes the school bus at five to seven. He arrives at school at quarter past seven. The school bell rings at eight o'clock and the pupils go to the school hall. Othmano has four lessons before the break. At break he talks to his friends and plays in the playground. He has more lessons after break. He has lunch at 12:30. The school day finishes at 3:00. He arrives home at 3:30.

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to . . . . .  
a. Othmano      b. Adel      c. Othmano's friend      d. Samy
2. Othmano always gets up . . . . .  
a. hard      b. quickly      c. late      d. early
3. The underlined word "break" has the same meaning as . . . . .  
a. work      b. rest      c. fun      d. lunch

#### b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

5. Do you think Othmano's feel tired after his school day ?

6. Why does Othmano take the bus to school ?



**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 1. I sometimes go to the library \_\_\_\_\_ break. (The Resource Centre) (2023)  
a. for                      b. on                      c. at                      d. in
- 2. What's the \_\_\_\_\_ between your school and my school ? (The Resource Centre) (2023)  
a. different              b. difference              c. typical              d. physical
- 3. **SB** What \_\_\_\_\_ does school start ? - At 8 a.m.  
a. sport                      b. time                      c. class                      d. lesson
- 4. **SB** Arabic is the main \_\_\_\_\_ of Arab countries.  
a. subject                      b. sport                      c. language              d. hobby
- 5. **WB** The subject for learning about cooking and skills for the home is called \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. home economics              b. science  
c. drama                      d. computer studies
- 6. **WB** \_\_\_\_\_ is the subject for learning about what people believe in.  
a. Science                      b. Maths                      c. Art                      d. Religion
- 7. A plane \_\_\_\_\_ fast. That's why I like flying.  
a. always is                      b. is always                      c. never is                      d. is never
- 8. \_\_\_\_\_ do you get up early on holidays ? - Never.  
a. What time                      b. When                      c. How often                      d. How old
- 9. **A :** Do you often \_\_\_\_\_ your friends on Fridays ? - **B :** Yes, I do.  
a. visits                      b. visit                      c. to visit                      d. visiting
- 10. Yesterday was a/an \_\_\_\_\_ day for me. It was the same as every day.  
a. ugly                      b. typical                      c. free                      d. different

**4 Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1. Mr Adel is never helpful, so we like him. (The Resource Centre) (2023) ( )
- 2. What time does you get up ? ( )
- 3. Injy and Amal has maths on Sundays. ( )
- 4. He does usually exercises on Fridays. (The Resource Centre) (2023) ( )

**5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :**

**"Your favourite subject"**

---



---



---



---



---



# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 16 : 18  
WB pages 81 & 82



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

school uniform (n)	زي مدرسي	culture (n)	ثقافة
school rules (n)	القواعد المدرسية	way (n)	طريقة / وسيلة
school objects (n)	أدوات مدرسية	classrooms (n)	حجرة الدراسة
cycle (d) (v)	يقود [دراجة]	snowmobile (n)	دراجة جليدية
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع	canoe (d) (v) , (n)	يجدف / قارب طويل ضيق



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

snowmobiles - follow - uniform - canoe - cycle

1. Pupils of primary school should wear their school \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt.
2. You can cross the canal using a .....
3. People use ..... in areas of heavy snow.
4. All the students should \_\_\_\_\_ the school rules.

### Lesson 3

SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 81

football shirt (n)	قميص كرة القدم	teachers' room (n)	حجرة المدرسين
pencil case (n)	مقلمة [حافظة أقلام]	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
office (n)	مكتب	towel (n)	منشفة / فوطة

### Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 82

forms (n)	أشكال / أنماط	village (n)	قرية
transport (n)	النقل والمواصلات	journey (n)	رحلة طويلة
travel (ed) (v)	يسافر	Lake Bunyonyi	بحيرة بوليوني
again (adv)	مرة ثانية	Uganda (n)	دولة أوغندا



## forms of transport

## وسائل المواصلات

in a village	في القرية	in a city	في المدينة	on water	على الماء	in the air	في الجو
horse/camel	حصان / جمل	car / taxi	سيارة / تاكسي	boat	قارب	plane	طائرة

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	Past	الماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
wear	يرتدي	wore		worn	
forget	ينسى	forgot		forgotten	

## Study these definitions

## ادرس هذه التعريفات

canoe	a small, narrow boat for one or two people	قارب طويل ضيق
cycle	ride a bicycle	يركب دراجة
snowmobile	a vehicle that you can drive on snow	دراجة جليديه
Uganda	a country in central Africa	دولة أوغندا

## Vocabulary Study

## Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المترادف	Antonym Opposite	المضاد
kind	طيب - عطوف	friendly		unkind - unfriendly	قاسي
outside	خارج	outdoor		inside	داخل
dangerous	خطير	unsafe		safe	آمن
forget	ينسى	-		remember	يتذكر
cheap	رخيص الثمن	-		expensive	غالي الثمن

## Prefixes &amp; Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix & Suffix	الوظيفة	Function	أمثلة	Examples
uni-	تعطي معنى موحد		uniform	زي موحد
un-	تعطي عكس المعنى		unkind	قاسي
-ous	تكون الصفة من الاسم		dangerous	خطير





## Exercise

## on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Climbing mountains is a dangerous sport. The word dangerous means .....  
a. safe                      b. healthy                      c. strong                      d. unsafe
- The antonym of the word "outside" is .....  
a. inside                      b. far                      c. beside                      d. kind
- The prefix ..... forms the opposite of the word "kind".  
a. il-                      b. en-                      c. ir-                      d. un-
- We add the suffix ..... to form the adjective from the word "danger".  
a. -ous                      b. -less                      c. -ness                      d. -er
- Kind people help animals. The word "kind" has the same meaning of .....  
a. friendly                      b. unkind                      c. safe                      d. inside



## General Notes on Reading &amp; Listening

**1** عند جمع الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يتم حذف حرف (y) ويضاف (ies) في نهاية الاسم.

\* a hobby → hobbies                      \* a country → countries  
\* أما إذا كان الاسم ينتهي بحرف (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a / e / i / o / u) لا يتم حذف (y) ويضاف (s) في نهاية الاسم عند الجمع.

\* a boy → boys

\* a toy → toys

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 18

## 2 on time / in time

\* on time

في الوقت المحدد

► - Good students arrive at school on time.

\* in time

في الوقت المناسب (قبل الوقت المحدد قليلاً)

► - Ali saved the young boy in time.

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 18

## 3 أفعال تعبر عن طريقة السفر أو وسيلة المواصلات

\* He cycles to school.

(by bicycle / bike)

\* Bassem always drives to work.

(by car)

\* We often walk to school.

(on foot)

\* Rahma usually flies to Hurghada.

(by plane)

\* Tourists sailed to Alexandria.

(by boat / ship)

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 18



## Important Expressions &amp; Prepositions

## تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
take the same time يستغرق نفس الوقت	on the right على جهة اليمين
say unkind things يقول أشياء غير طيبة	on the other side of على الجانب الآخر من
follow school rules يتبع القواعد المدرسية	on the timetable في جدول المواعيد
help each other يساعد كلاً مّن الآخر	work in groups يعمل في مجموعات
live a long way from يعيش بعيداً عن	travel on a snowmobile يسافر / ينتقل على دراجة جليدية
take a difficult journey to يقوم برحلة صعبة لـ ...	important to هام لـ
	cycle to يستقل دراجة إلى



## Skills

## Reading and Listening

## Listening



on Lesson 3 WB page 81

**Fatma** : Hi Mariam. Is this Malak's pen ?

**Mariam** : No, that's Judy's pen. She always uses that pen.

**Fatma** : OK. Whose bag is this ?

**Mariam** : That's Huda's bag.

**Fatma** : No, it's not Huda's bag. Her bag is red. This bag is blue.

**Mariam** : Oh, OK. Then it's Malak's bag.

**Fatma** : There's a book on the desk. Is that your book ?

**Mariam** : No, it's the teachers' book. All the teachers use that book.

**Fatma** : Ah, I know whose ruler this is. It has Dalia and Azza's names on it.

## Listening skill

© Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

• Whose bag is it ? - It's ..

a. Malak's

b. Judy's

c. Mariam's

d. Fatma's





- on Lesson 4 SB page 18



**Narrator 2 : 1**

**Narrator** : Every morning, children from this **village** in Egypt **cycle** to school. It is a **cheap**<sup>3</sup> and **healthy**<sup>4</sup> **way**<sup>5</sup> to travel.

**Boy** : When the roads are busy, the bus is slow but the bike is **quick**<sup>1</sup> !

**Narrator 2 : 2**

**Narrator** : These children live next to **Lake** Bunyonyi in **Uganda** . Their school is on the **other side** of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a **canoe**<sup>10</sup>. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

**Boy** : Sometimes, when it **rains** a lot, the water's dangerous and we can't go to school that day.

**Narrator 2 : 3**

**Narrator** : This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of **snow** . The children travel to school on a **snowmobile**<sup>13</sup> !

**Boy** : It's cold, but it's fast - and fun !

(7) بحيرة	(6) سريع	(5) طريقة	(4) حتى	(3) لخص	(2) يركب دراجة	(1) قرية
مركبة للنقل فوق الجليد	جليد	تمطر	قارب طويل ضيق	الجانب الآخر	دولة أوميدا	

## Reading

- on Lesson 4 SB page 18

### How do they go to school ?



- In some countries, children live **a long way from** their school. They do not go to school by car, bus or train.
- 1. Every morning, children from this village in Egypt **cycle** to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive **on time**<sup>(2)</sup>.

على مسافة  
بعيدة من  
(2) في الوقت المحدد





2. These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda.

Their school is **on the other side of**<sup>(5)</sup> the lake, so they do not walk to school. They **go in a canoe**<sup>(4)</sup>.

The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

3. This boy lives in the USA. **In winter**<sup>(5)</sup>, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school **on a snowmobile**<sup>(6)</sup>!

3 على الجانب الآخر من

1 يذهب في زورق

(5) في فصل الشتاء

(6) على دراجة جليدية

## Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### ► Key vocabulary

1. We should ..... our school rules to learn and enjoy.  
a. fill                      b. follow                      c. fight                      d. fire
2. Reading stories is an interesting ..... to learn new vocabulary.  
a. rain                      b. door                      c. way                      d. canoe
3. Some children in Egypt ..... to school.  
a. recycle                      b. cycle                      c. swim                      d. guess
4. You can move over snow and ice easily by .....  
a. taxi                      b. bus                      c. snowmobile                      d. canoe

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

5. Pens, notebooks and books are school .....  
a. uniforms                      b. rules                      c. objects                      d. subjects *(Sumura - Fayoum 2024)*
6. My school ..... is a white shirt and blue pants.  
a. rule                      b. uniform                      c. form                      d. picture *(Wetters - Cairo 2024)*
7. **SB** We never ..... unkind things to other students.  
a. talk                      b. say                      c. speak                      d. see *(Multidisciplinary - Cairo 2021)*
8. **SB** Sometimes, when it ..... a lot, the water is dangerous and we can't arrive at school on time.  
a. trains                      b. reads                      c. rains                      d. runs *(Khanka - Qalyubia 2022)*

### ► El-Moasser Exercises

9. The ..... from Cairo to Aswan takes about ten hours.  
a. journey                      b. case                      c. rule                      d. view
10. Buses, cars, trains and motorbikes are forms of .....  
a. clothes                      b. transport                      c. subjects                      d. energy
11. You can know a lot about different ..... of countries using the internet.  
a. cultures                      b. babies                      c. toilets                      d. rooms



► Definitions

12. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a small, narrow boat for one or two people.  
a. ship                      b. ferry                      c. canoe                      d. yacht
13. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a vehicle that you can drive on snow.  
a. cart                      b. bicycle                      c. canoe                      d. snowmobile

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. The children travel to school \_\_\_\_\_ a snowmobile when it snows.  
a. of                      b. in                      c. at                      d. on
15. How long does it \_\_\_\_\_ to finish your work ?  
a. give                      b. have                      c. take                      d. talk
16. By cycling to school, students can always arrive \_\_\_\_\_ time.  
a. into                      b. on                      c. from                      d. about

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about the journey to school :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن رحلة الذهاب إلى المدرسة :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
A : How do you travel to school ? كيف تذهب إلى المدرسة ؟	B : I travel to school by bus. أذهب إلى المدرسة بالأتوبيس.
A : How long does it take ? كم المدة التي تستغرقها الرحلة ؟	B : It takes 15 minutes. تستغرق الرحلة 15 دقيقة.
A : Why do some children need to take difficult journeys to school ? لماذا يحتاج بعض الأطفال للقيام برحلات صعبة للوصول لمدارسهم ؟	B : Because this is the only way they can go to school. لأن هذه هي الوسيلة الوحيدة للذهاب للمدرسة.
A : Why is it important to go to school ?	B : Because we all need to learn and study. لأننا جميعًا نحتاج أن نتعلم وندرس.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

Your journey to school رحلة انوصول إلى المدرسة

- Children go to school in different ways. يذهب الأطفال بطرق مختلفة للمدرسة
- Some live a long way from their school. بعضهم يعيش على مسافة بعيدة من المدرسة.
- They can't walk to school. لا يستطيعون الذهاب للمدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.
- They go by car, bus or train. يستقلون السيارة أو الأتوبيس أو القطار



Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
<p><b>Read and complete :</b></p> <p>1. A. How do you ..... to school ? B. My dad drives me to school every day.</p> <p>2. A. Why do you go to school in the car ? B. Because my school is .....</p> <p>3. A. .... does it take ? B. It takes 50 minutes.</p>	<p><b>Complete the following dialogue :</b> Samar and Aya are talking about how they go to school.</p> <p>Samar : How do you go to school ? Aya : (1) ..... And you ? Samar : (2) ..... Aya : (3) ..... ? Samar : Because my school is far away. Aya : (4) ..... ? Samar : It takes 50 minutes. Aya : Which is better, to go to school in the car or on the bus ? Samar : (5) ..... Aya : I agree with you.</p>	<p><b>Write a paragraph on :</b> "How do you go to school ?"</p>
<p><b>How do you go to school ?</b></p> <p>1. A. Why is it ..... to go to school ? B. Because we all need to learn and study.</p> <p>2. A. Why would you prefer to cycle to school ? B. Because it is ..... and healthy.</p> <p>3. A. Does it always take ..... ? B. Yes, it does.</p>	<p><b>Your journey to school</b></p> <p>Ramy asks Fady about his journey to school. Ramy : Hi Fady ! Why is it important to go to school ? Fady : Hi Ramy ! ..... ? Ramy : That's right. (2) ..... ? Fady : I'd prefer to cycle to school. Ramy : (3) ..... ? Fady : Because it's cheap and healthy. Ramy : Is it dangerous or safe ? Fady : (4) ..... Ramy : Does it always take the same time ? Fady : (5) .....</p>	<p><b>"Your journey to school"</b></p>

America - Alexandria 2023

h... - Qidubia 2022





## Language

## Possessive ('s)

## الملكية (s)

تستخدم [s] الملكية في الحالات الآتية :

ستستخدم عادة مع الأسماء المفردة من الكائنات الحية (الأشخاص - الحيوانات .....).

- ex. - a boy's name اسم ولد - a king's palace قصر ملك  
- a spider's web شبكة عنكبوت - Sara's book كتاب سارة

ستستخدم [s] مع الأسماء الجمع غير المنتظمة (غير المنتهية ب-s).

- ex. - men's coats معاطف الرجال - women's bags حقائب السيدات

ستستخدم [s] مع الوظائف للإشارة لمكان العمل.

- ex. - the butcher's محل الجزار - the chemist's الصيدلية  
- the baker's لمخبز - the grocer's محل البقالة

ستستخدم [s] مع الأسماء الجمع المنتظمة المنتهية ب-s من الكائنات الحية (الأشخاص - الحيوانات ...).  
ولكن يوضع الفاصلة العنقبة (') فقط بعد [s].

- ex. - The boys' house منزل الأولاد - horses' legs أرجل الخيول

ستستخدم [s] في حالة المفرد أو (') في حالة الجمع مع التعبيرات التي تدل على الوقت.

- ex. - a week's holiday إجازة لمدة أسبوع - ten minutes' break استراحة لمدة عشر دقائق  
- tomorrow's weather طقس بعد - two days' work يومان عمل

ستستخدم [s] أو (') فقط مع الأسماء المفردة المنتهية ب-s.

- ex. - Mr Jones's house or Mr Jones' house.

ستستخدم [s] بعد الاسم الأخير في حالة إمتلاك شخص أو أكثر لشيء ما.

- ex. -  Can you see Kamal and Amir's classroom ?

لا تستخدم [s] مع أسماء الجماد.

- ex. - exercise book كتاب تدربات - computer screen شاشة كمبيوتر

يمكن استخدام [belong to] بدلا من [s] الملكية للتعبير عن الملكية

- ex. - This is Sama's dress. = This dress **belongs to** Sama.

ستستخدم أداة الاستفهام [Whose] للسؤال عن الملكية وسعها اسم الشيء المملوك.

- ex. - **Whose** bag is that ? B : It's Omar's bag.



## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. My mother wants to buy meat, so she went to the .....  
(Rayyan - Gharbia 2023)

- a. butcher      b. butcher's      c. butchers      d. butchers'

2. **A** : What is your ..... favourite subject ? **B** : She likes science.  
(El Shorouk - Cairo 2023)

- a. sister      b. sisters      c. sister's      d. sisters's

3. **SB** The ..... are Judy and Ola. (Multidisciplinary - Souhag 2021)

- a. girls names      b. girls' names      c. girl's names      d. girl names

4. This is the ..... bag. She likes it very much. (Mena - Qena 2023)

- a. girls'      b. girl's      c. girls      d. girl

5. **WB** These are my ..... jackets. They go to the same school.

- a. brother      b. brothers      c. brother's      d. brothers'

(Fayed - Ismailia 2022)

6. This dress ..... Noha. (Naqada - Qena 2020)

- a. belonging      b. belongs      c. belong      d. belongs to

7. **SB** They are not the ..... notebooks.

- a. children      b. childs'      c. children's      d. childrens'

#### ► El-Moasser Exercises

8. Did you find the ..... key ?

- a. door's      b. doors'      c. door      d. doors's

9. Whose bag is this ? - It is .....

- a. Dina      b. Dina's      c. Dinas'      d. Dinas

10. He bought a new .....

- a. computer's screen      b. computers' screen  
c. computer screen      d. computers screen



11. This ..... tail is black.  
 a. cat                      b. cat's                      c. cats'                      d. cats
12. We will meet at six in the .....  
 a. car park                      b. car's park                      c. cars' park                      d. car park's
13. I need to go to the ..... to buy some bread.  
 a. baker's                      b. bakers                      c. baker                      d. bakers'

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. This is my grandparents's house. (Sohag 2023) (       )
2. WB My sister goes to a girl's school. (Tina - Sohag 2023) (       )
3. SB When shoes are these ? - They are Ali's. (       )
4. It's Dalia's and Azza ruler. (       )
5. WB This is Alis phone. It's new. (Zetoun - Cairo 2023) ( ..... )

### ► El-Moasser Exercises

6. I fixed the cars's engine. (       )
7. We buy medicine at the chemist. (       )
8. This is Halas' website. (       )
9. Who's pen is that ? - It is Ali's. (       )
10. These are my brother sunglasses. (       )



## A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه في اسبوع واحد فقط





# General Exercises

LESSONS

3 & 4

• Understand

• Apply

• Create



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واحتر اللجاجة الصحيحة (انصوب الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. My school is ..... from my house.  
a. near                      b. far                      c. easy                      d. long
2. I ..... to school every morning.  
a. recycle                      b. cycle                      c. drive                      d. take
3. I ..... at my school on time.  
a. drive                      b. arrive                      c. walk                      d. talk
4. It's ..... to go to school by bike.  
a. unhealthy                      b. bad                      c. boring                      d. healthy

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Samar and Aya are talking about how they go to school.

Samar : How do you go to school ?

Aya : (1) ..... And you ?

Samar : I usually go to school by bus

Aya : (2) ..... ?

Samar : Because my school is far away.

Aya : (3) ..... ?

Samar : It takes 50 minutes.

Aya : Which is better, to go to school in the car or on the bus ?

Samar : (4) ..... It's faster than the bus.

Aya : (5) ..... (Ajam - Alexandria 2023)

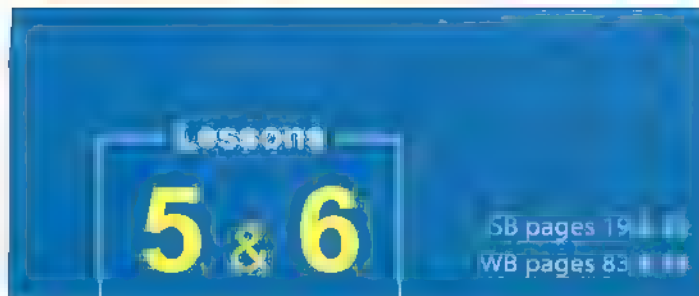
## 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It's important to follow the school ..... (El Idya - Minya 2023)  
a. roles                      b. rolls                      c. rails                      d. rules
2. Our school is not near. It's ..... (El Masara - Cairo 2023)  
a. near                      b. small                      c. big                      d. far away
3. The man washed the .....  
a. doctor car                      b. doctor's car                      c. car doctor                      d. car's doctor









## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

project (n)	مشروع	grade (n)	صف دراسي
message (n)	رسالة	put on (phr.v)	يرتدى



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

puts on - grade - message - shower - project

- What \_\_\_\_\_ are you in ? - Prep one.
- Ali sent me a \_\_\_\_\_ to tell me about the meeting.
- Dad works on a \_\_\_\_\_ in the New Valley.
- Hassan \_\_\_\_\_ his school uniform at seven a.m.

### Lesson 5

SB page 19 WB page 83

French (n),(adj)	اللغة الفرنسية / فرنسي (الجنسية)	quite (adv)	إلى حد ما
------------------	----------------------------------	-------------	-----------

### Lesson 6

SB page 20 WB page 84

preparatory	إعدادي / المرحلة الإعدادية	separate (d) (v)	يفصل
dinner (n)	وجبة العشاء	reply (ied) (v), (n)	يرد - رد
items (n)	أشياء / أصناف	flag (n)	علم

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
wake up يستيقظ	woke up	woken up

### Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

email	a simple message sent through the internet	رسالة البريد الإلكتروني
-------	--	-------------------------



### Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات			
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/Opposite المضاد	
put on يرتدي	wear	take off	يخلع ملابسه
come يأتي	reach / get	leave	يفادر
correct صحيح	right	incorrect	غير صحيح

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية		
Prefix & Suffixes	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- ly	تكون الصفة من الاسم	friendly ودود
un -	تكون العكس من الكلمة	unfriendly غير ودود



### Exercise

#### on Vocabulary Study

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective of the word "friend".  
a. -less                      b. -ed                      c. -ly                      d. -ing
- The prefix "....." gives the opposite of "friendly".  
a. un-                      b. il-                      c. lr-                      d. lm-
- The antonym of the word "come" is .....  
a. wear                      b. learn                      c. correct                      d. leave
- The synonym of the word "correct" is ".....".  
a. incorrect                      b. dangerous                      c. safe                      d. right
- I put on my school uniform at 7 am. The word "put on" means .....  
a. leave                      b. come                      c. wear                      d. take off





## General Notes on Reading & Listening

**1 very - quite** تستخدم هذه الظروف في توضيح التدرج في مستوى الأداء من الأسوأ إلى الأفضل.

- \* bad at سيئ في
- \* not good at = quite bad at ليس جيدًا في = سيئ لحد ما في
- \* not very good at ليس جيدًا جدًا في
- \* not bad at/quite good at ليس سيئ في = جيد لحد ما في
- \* good at جيد في
- \* very good at جيدًا جدًا في

**2 good for / good at**

- \* good for مفيد لـ / جيد لـ
- - Milk is **good for** our bones عظام.
- \* good at (inf. + ing) / noun اسم جيد في
- - She is **good for** English / reading English.

Reading on lesson 5 WB page 83

**3 quiet - quite**

- \* quiet = calm صفة بمعنى [هادئ]
- \* quite + ظرف / صفة إلى حد ما
- - The village is **quiet**.
- - He is **quite good** at maths.

Reading on lesson 5 WB page 83

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
go shopping يذهب للتسوق	at the weekend في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
have a shower يستحم	talk on the bus يتحدث في الأتوبيس
Hooray = Hurray	from another country من دولة أخرى
تستخدم للتعبير عن الفرح والبهجة	come home from school يعود للمنزل من المدرسة
best wishes أطيب التمنيات	end with ينتهي بـ
What about you ? ومادا عندك ؟	work with computers يتعامل مع أجهزة الحاسب الآلي
At the end ? في النهاية	





## Skills



## Reading and Listening



## Listening



• on Lesson 5 SB page 19

**Leila** : There's the bell<sup>(1)</sup> !

**Aya** : What subject have we got next ?

**Leila** : Let's look at the timetable<sup>(2)</sup> . We've got computer studies next, in the hall. Hooray !

**Aya** : Computer studies ... I'm not very good at computer studies !

**Leila** : I love it ! It's my favourite ! What's your favourite subject, Aya ?

**Aya** : I like science and languages.

**Leila** : Are you good at languages ?

**Aya** : I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French.



**Leila** : Who's our English teacher this year ?

**Aya** : It's Mrs Amal.

**Leila** : Oh good. She's really friendly<sup>(3)</sup> . When have we got English ?

**Aya** : It's after break<sup>(4)</sup> .

**Leila** : What time is break ?

**Aya** : It's from quarter past ten to half past ten. Let's meet in the playground<sup>(5)</sup> and go to the library.

**Leila** : OK !



(1) جرس

(2) جدول الحصص / المواعيد

(3) ودود

(4) راحة / مسحة

(5) ملعب





## Reading

on Lesson 5 WB page 83

**Hatem** : What's your favourite subject, Hazem ?

**Hazem** : I like English.

**Hatem** : Who's our English teacher this year ?

**Hazem** : It's Mrs Eman.

**Hatem** : She's a good teacher. And when have we got English ?

**Hazem** : We have it today, after break. Then we have maths.

**Hatem** : Good, I like maths. Are you good at maths ?

**Hazem** : I'm quite good at maths. I'm not bad at science, too.

**Hatem** : Yes, you're good at science. What time is break ?

**Hazem** : Now. Let's go to the playground.

on Lesson 6 SB page 20

### A Day in MY Life !

**Amira is from Egypt.**

**Q** : How old are you, and where are you from ?

**A** : I'm twelve years old, and I'm from **Hurghada**<sup>(1)</sup>.

**Q** : What subjects do you like ?

**A** : This year, I'm in **preparatory**<sup>(2)</sup> 1 at school. My **favourite**<sup>(3)</sup> subjects are science, **computer studies**<sup>(4)</sup> and maths. We have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but we only have computer studies on Wednesday. I like music, **too**<sup>(5)</sup>, but I'm not very good at it !

**Q** : What do you usually do after school ?

**A** : I sometimes read or watch TV. I always do my **homework**<sup>(6)</sup> before I have **dinner**<sup>(7)</sup>. After dinner, I usually have a **shower**<sup>(8)</sup> and read my book in bed. What time do you **wake up**<sup>(9)</sup> and go to bed ?



(4) مادة الحاسب الآلي	(3) مفضل	(2) المرحلة الإعدادية	(1) مدينة الغردقة
(9) يستيقظ	(8) دش	(7) وجبة العشاء	(6) واجب منزلي
			(5) أيضًا



- on Lesson 6 WB page 84

## Hi Nagwa

How are you ? **You** want to know what my parents do at the weekend. My father works with computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park.



My brother always plays football when we go there! **He** is very good at football. What about you ? What do you do at the weekend ?

Best wishes

Nesma

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

### Understanding reference

فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### Learn

1. The pronoun "He" in the text refers to

- a. Nesma's cousin
- b. Nesma's brother
- c. Nesma's father
- d. Nesma's teacher

#### Practise

2. The pronoun "You" in the first line refers to

- a. Nesma
- b. Nahed
- c. Nagwa
- d. Noha



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► Key vocabulary

- I sent a ..... to my cousin on his birthday.  
a. message      b. grade      c. view      d. lesson
- The High Dam is a very important .....  
a. band      b. project      c. meal      d. flag
- Pupils in my school must ..... on their school uniform every day.  
a. take      b. put      c. make      d. talk
- What ..... are you in ? - I'm in preparatory one.  
a. age      b. grade      c. colour      d. school





► **SB , WB & Previous Exams**

5. **SB** A : Are you ..... at computer studies ? B : Yes, I'm not bad at it.  
 a. bad                      b. good                      c. busy                      d. easy
6. Can you ..... me the time, please ? *(Damanhour Behira 2023)*  
 a. say                      b. speak                      c. tell                      d. reply
7. My brother is ..... short for a basketball player.  
 a. quiet                      b. quit                      c. quite                      d. quote
8. **WB** We often ..... shopping at the weekend. *(5/2/2023)*  
 a. go                      b. make                      c. give                      d. lead

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

9. Breakfast, lunch and ..... are meals.  
 a. dinner                      b. dessert                      c. drones                      d. dams
10. I asked my friend but he didn't .....  
 a. separate                      b. reply                      c. put                      d. show
11. He is 14 years old, so he goes to a ..... school.  
 a. preparatory                      b. primary                      c. kindergarten                      d. secondary
12. We all like Dr Amir because he is kind and .....  
 a. unkind                      b. friendly                      c. impatient                      d. greedy

► **Definitions**

13. **WB** A/An ..... is a simple message sent through the internet.  
 a. project                      b. card                      c. email                      d. calendar

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

14. He works ..... computers. He is a computer engineer.  
 a. for                      b. on                      c. with                      d. from
15. I usually finish an email with .....  
 a. Hi                      b. Hello                      c. Dear                      d. Best wishes
16. I like music, but I'm not very good ..... it.  
 a. for                      b. on                      c. in                      d. at



## 2 Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### ► Asking and answering questions about your school day :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن يومك الدراسي :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• What subjects have we got today ? ما المواد الدراسية التي ندرسها اليوم ؟	- We have computer studies and science. سندرس مادة الحاسب الآلي والعلوم.
• What is your favourite subject ? ما هي المادة المفضلة بالنسبة لك ؟	- I like science. أحب مادة العلوم.
• Are you good at languages ? هل أنت جيد في اللغات ؟	- I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French. إلى حد ما أنا جيد في اللغة الإنجليزية ولست سيئاً في مادة اللغة الفرنسية.
• Who is our English teacher this year ? من هو مدرسنا لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام ؟	- It is Mrs Amal. إنها الأستاذة أمل.
• When have we got English ? متى ندرس مادة اللغة الإنجليزية ؟	- It is after break. بعد فترة الاستراحة [الفسحة].
• What time is the break ? ما وقت فترة الاستراحة [الفسحة] ؟	- It is from quarter past ten to half past ten. إنها من الساعة العاشرة والرربع حتى الساعة العاشرة والنصف.



### Pop Quiz on Speaking

#### • Complete the following dialogue :

**Rania asks Mohab about her favourite subject.**

**Rania :** What is your favourite subject ?

**Mohab :** (1) .....

**Rania :** (2) ..... ?

**Mohab :** Because I like reading English short stories.

**Rania :** (3) ..... ?

**Mohab :** Mr Samy teaches us English this year.

**Rania :** How often do you study it ?

**Mohab :** (4) .....

**Rania :** Have a nice day !

**Mohab :** (5) .....

(Biba - Beni Suef 2023)



### 3. Writing

#### مهارة الكتابة

#### ► Writing tips :

نصائح للكتابة :

#### ► Punctuation :

علامات الترقيم :

#### 1 full stop (.)

تستخدم في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

ex. - I'm in grade one at school.

#### 2 question mark (?)

تستخدم في نهاية السؤال.

ex. - What subjects do you like ?

- Is it your book ?

#### 3 Comma (,)

تستخدم للفصل بين الأشياء في قائمة.

ex. - My favourite subjects are science , computer studies and maths.

#### 4 Apostrophe (')

- تستخدم في حالة الملكية.

ex. - Amira's family is from Hurghada.

- The pupils' books are over there.

- تستخدم في الاختصارات.

ex. - I'm very good at English.

- He's my teacher.

#### Your school day يومك الدراسي

1. This year, I'm in preparatory one at school. أنا هذا العام، أنا في الصف الأول لإعدادي بالمدرسة.
2. I start my school day at 8 : 00 am. أبدأ يومي الدراسي في الساعة الثامنة صباحاً.
3. We have 7 lessons a day. لدينا ٧ حصص كل يوم.
4. We have science in the first lesson every day. لدينا مادة العلوم في الحصة الأولى كل يوم.
5. We only have computer studies on Wednesday. لدينا فقط مادة الحاسب الآلي في يوم الأربعاء.
6. My favourite subjects are science, computer studies and maths . المواد المفضلة بالنسبة لي هي مادة العلوم والحاسب الآلي والرياضيات.
7. I am good at English, but I am not good at maths. أنا جيد في اللغة الإنجليزية ولست جيداً في مادة الرياضيات.
8. I finish my school day at 2.00 pm. أنهى من يومي دراسي في الساعة الثانية ظهراً.



# General Exercises

## LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create



### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. How old is Amira ? - She is .....  
 a. 13                      b. 14                      c. 12                      d. 16
2. Where is she from ?  
 a. Cairo                      b. Hurghada                      c. Luxor                      d. Giza
3. Amira is in ..... one at school.  
 a. kindergarten                      b. primary                      c. secondary                      d. preparatory
4. She likes .....  
 a. English and art                      b. maths and Arabic  
 c. science and sport                      d. science and maths

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nessma and Reem go to the school library.

Reem : When will we start doing our research ?

Nessma : (1) .....

Reem : During the break. Great ! (2) ?

Nessma : In the school Library.

Reem : (3) ..... ?

Nessma : Of course. I am ready.

Reem : Is it easy to find the books we need ?

Nessma : (4) .....

Reem : Who will help us there ?

Nessma : (5) .....

(E.I Bagour - Monafia 2023)

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 1. "Wear" has the same meaning as ..... on.  
 a. give                      b. hold                      c. put                      d. sit
- 2. The Egyptian ..... has three colours and an eagle.  
 a. band                      b. flag                      c. map                      d. desert



- 3. **SB** I always ..... my homework before I have dinner.  
a. take                      b. do                      c. make                      d. have
- 4. We use a comma to ..... between items in a list. (Uta El Barud - Beheira 2022)  
a. put on                      b. separate                      c. leave                      d. take off
- 5. My mother often ..... shopping at the weekend.  
a. takes                      b. makes                      c. goes                      d. has
- 6. He sent me a message and he is waiting my ..... now.  
a. flag                      b. reply                      c. grade                      d. hobby
- 7. In hot weather, we should ..... a shower.  
a. talk                      b. have                      c. do                      d. make
- 8. What time do you ..... up ? - At 6 : 00 am.  
a. wake                      b. walk                      c. wait                      d. talk
- 9. We ..... play football every Friday. It's our weekly routine.  
a. ever                      b. always                      c. never                      d. sometimes
- 10. The ..... is Waleed. (East Zagazig - Sharkia 2023)  
a. boys' name                      b. boy's name                      c. boys name                      d. boy name

#### 4 Read and correct the underlined words :

- 1. No, he ever does his homework after breakfast. (       )
- 2. **SB** What subjects do they studied ? (       )
- 3. Where are you come from ? (       )
- 4. He don't go swimming on Mondays. (       )

#### 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A day in your life"

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

W. A. S. C. (Cairo 2023)





قيم مستواك | يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختيار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary		Language
<b>Lessons 1 &amp; 2</b>		<b>1. Adverbs of frequency</b> ظروف التكرار
drama (n)	مادة الفن المسرحي	أحيانًا - sometimes - دائمًا - always - never - أبدًا - عادة
playground (n)	ملعب	
art (n)	مادة التربية الفنية [الرسم]	
typical (adj)	نمطي / نموذجي	
hall (n)	قاعة / فناء المدرسة	
computer studies (n)	مادة الحاسب الآلي	تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المصارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما : <b>ex.</b> - She always studies hard for her exams. - He usually plays tennis on Friday.
bell (n)	جرس	
library (n)	مكتبة [للمعارة والاستعارة]	
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	
social studies (n)	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية	
difference (n)	فرق / اختلاف	
language (n)	لغة	
break (n)	قسط / راحة	
subject (n)	مادة دراسية	
trip (n)	رحلة قصيرة	
school days	أيام الدراسة	
daily life (n)	الحياة اليومية	
road (n)	طريق	
<b>Lessons 3 &amp; 4</b>		
culture (n)	ثقافة	
way (n)	طريقة / وسيلة	
snowmobile (n)	دراجة حابيه	
canoe (d) (v), (n)	يخف / قارب طويل ضيق	
school uniform (n)	زي مدرسي	
school rules (n)	القواعد المدرسية	
school objects (n)	أدوات مدرسية	
cycle (d) (v)	يقود [دراجة]	
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع	
towel (n)	منشفة / فوطة	
teachers' room (n)	حجرة المدرسين	
transport (n)	النقل والمواصلات	
journey (n)	رحلة طويلة	
<b>Lessons 5 &amp; 6</b>		
project (n)	مشروع	
message (n)	رسالة	
grade (n)	صف دراسي	
put on (phr.v)	يرتدي	
quite (adv)	إلى حد ما	
separate (d), (v)	يفصل	
preparatory	إعدادي / المرحلة الإعدادية	
reply (ied) (v), (n)	يرد - رد	
flag (n)	علم	



# Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

## Understanding reference

تخبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تحديد ما تشير إليه الكلمة في النص.

مثال: قد تجد صعوبة في تحديد ما تشير إليه الكلمة التي تحبها خط في الفقرة.

مثال: موضح بحر عند قراءة الفقرة يمكنك معرفة دلالات الصمائر / الكلمات الموحدة في الفقرة.

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

اقرأ وطم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and learn how to answer:

I cycled to the summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. I now have a friend from Uganda. My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it.

The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

- a. the summer school
- b. Cairo
- c. Uganda
- d. a river in Cambridge

نشر وادخل  
عند قراءة قطعة الفهم التي تتفق الفهم لها في  
تذكر في عين نوار في عملية فهمها ج وادى ذكر  
في الجملة الثالثة ان لم يتضح فيه

Read and answer the questions :

I'm Tarek. I live in Cairo, in Egypt. This is a typical day for me. On school days, I get up at half past six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is far away, so I never walk there.

The underlined word "there" refers to Tarek's

- a. school library
- b. school
- c. school playground
- d. school hall



# 2

## Speaking

## Timetables

يحتس سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

سأحدثك تريد (التحدث عن الجدول الزمني المدرسي ويومك الدراسي) وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

سأحدثك يحب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بك وبين زميلك في المدرسة.

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to ask and answer:

حوار ما بين زميلك في المدرسة

السؤال Question	الإجابة Answer	الاستخدام Usage
That's the bell. What's the next lesson ?	Let's look at the timetable. We have got maths.	حوار عن جدول الحصص والمواد الدراسية
What are your favourite subjects ?	I like maths and science.	
What language are you good at ?	I am good at French. (Mallawa - Minya 2020)	
When do you get up ?	I usually get up at six o'clock.	
When do you have breakfast ?	At six thirty with my family.	
How do you get to school ?	My dad drives us there in his car.	حوار عن يومك الدراسي
What time do you arrive at school ?	At seven thirty.	
When do you finish school ?	At one thirty in the afternoon.	
Do you always do your homework after lunch ?	Yes, I do.	

اقرأ

Complete the following dialogue :

Kareem is Ali's new friend.

Ali : How are you ?

Kareem : I .....

Ali : Where do you live ?

Kareem : I live .....

Ali : (3) .....

Kareem : I go to school by bus.

Ali : (4) .....

Kareem : My favourite subject is English.

Ali : Do you play football ?

Kareem : (5) .....

(Sulfa - Assut 2023)



# 3 Writing

٢٥ خمسة سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph) قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما

٢٦ احدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (اسم الموضوع) و (حدا من) وتجد صعوبة في كتابه عدة جمل عنها.

٢٧ مفهاح لحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية و كيفية استخدامها في تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraph
Typical day	<p>Write the meaning :</p> <p>يستيقظ / يمتطي / يمدحجي فسيحة / راحة يصل للمنزل حصص / دروس وجبة الافطار</p>	<p>Fill in using vocabulary :</p> <p>1. I have a ..... school day. 2. I ..... at 6 : 30 am. 3. During the ..... , I talk to my friends. 4. At school, I have seven ..... 5. I have my ..... with my family.</p>	<p>Write a paragraph on "Your typical day"</p>
How to get to school	<p>مختلف يقود [دراجة] رخيص [التمن] قارب طويل صيق بحيرة فصل الشتاء</p>	<p>1. They use bikes because they are ..... and clean. 2. In Uganda, children use a ..... 3. They use snowmobiles in ..... 4. Children go to school in ..... ways. 5. Children in Egypt ..... to school.</p>	<p>Write an email about : "How children go to school"</p>



### Questions collected from previous exams

#### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- What time do you come ..... from school ?  
(Bayroun - Ghazbia 2023)  
a. home      b. at home  
c. on home      d. to home
- When we hear the ..... during break, we go to our classrooms.  
(Hosh Issa - Beheira 2023)  
a. match      b. bell  
c. music      d. birds
- Pupils wear school .....  
(East Mansoura - Dakahlia 2023)  
a. uniforms      b. forms  
c. reforms      d. performs
- How ..... do you go to the club ? - Once a week.  
(Sers El Iwan - Monufia 2023)  
a. many      b. much      c. often      d. long
- For homework, we often read books from the .....  
(Youssef El Seddik - Fayoum 2023 Qus - Qena 2023)  
a. laboratory      b. house  
c. playground      d. library
- This is your ..... book. Please, give it to her.  
(Mallawi - Minya 2023)  
a. sister      b. sisters      c. sister's      d. sisters' lesson.  
We learn how to count in the .....  
(Ashmoun - Monufia 2023)  
a. English      b. science      c. maths      d. art
- Sara is in ..... 6 at school.  
(Matai - Minya 2023)  
a. age      b. mark      c. grade      d. hobby

- A ..... is a place where we do sports at school.  
(El Warraq - Giza 2023)  
a. waterwheel      b. fair  
c. funfair      d. playground
- During ..... lesson, we learn about countries and the weather.  
(Dairut - Assiut 2023)  
a. history      b. maths  
c. social studies      d. religion

#### 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- I usually get up at quarter to seven at a school day.  
(Dokka - Giza 2023) ( )
- Good students always come late to school.  
(Kinn Hamuda - Beheira 2023) ( )
- This is my sister dress. (Farhat - Qena 2023) ( )
- Mariam likes English, so she never reads English stories.  
(Iwa - Fayoum 2023) ( )
- Where is Ahmed's and Ali classroom ?  
(El Marj - Cairo 2023) ( ..... )
- Maher always is busy on school days.  
(El Qanater - Qalyubia 2023) ( ..... )
- Samy is a student at a boy's school.  
(Sudat - Monufia 2023) ( ..... )
- Polite boys are usually rude.  
(Hhya - Shukia 2023) ( ..... )
- A** : How long do you get up at 6:30 am ?  
**B** : Always.  
(Sohag 2023) ( )
- That teachers name is Mr Adel.  
(Beheira 2023) ( )



### A. Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Akeyo lives in .....  
a. Nairobi      b. Cairo      c. Paris      d. Rome
2. Her ..... drive her to school.  
a. brothers      b. uncles      c. sisters      d. parents
3. Akeyo's school is .....  
a. near      b. far away      c. not remote      d. difficult
4. Akeyo goes to the ..... to read.  
a. playground      b. bookshop      c. club      d. library

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Samar and Aya are talking about how they go to school.

Samar : How do you go to school ?

Aya : (1) ..... And you ?

Samar : (2) .....

Aya : Why do you usually go by bus ?

Samar : (3) .....

Aya : (4) ..... ?

Samar : It takes 50 minutes to get to school.

Aya : (5) ..... ?

Samar : I think it is better to go by car.

Aya : I agree with you.

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I'm Nada. I live in Hurghada **by** the Red Sea. I'm in preparatory one. My favourite subjects are science and home economics. I have science and



maths in the first lesson every day, but I only have home economics on Tuesday. I always do my homework before I have dinner. I usually have a light dinner عشاء خفيف : a cheese sandwich or some vegetables. I usually have a shower and surf the internet on my mobile phone. I sleep at 10:00 p.m. But before sleeping, I prepare my uniform and my school bag.

(West Naser City - Cairo 2023)

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Nada goes to bed at ..... .  
a. 10:00 a.m.      b. 12 p.m.      c. 10:00 p.m.      d. 1: 00 a.m.
2. Nada does her homework ..... she has dinner.  
a. in      b. before      c. after      d. next
3. The underlined word "**by**" has the same meaning as ".....".  
a. above      b. under      c. next to      d. far away

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**I**" refer to ?

5. Give a suitable title for the passage.

6. Why do you think Nada's mobile phone is useful ?

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. A ..... is a small, narrow boat for one or two people. (Qus - Qena 2023)  
a. bicycle      b. motorbike      c. canoe      d. snowmobile
2. Sama ..... happy when she meets her friends.  
a. are always      b. is always      c. always is      d. always
3. It's healthy to ..... to school. (Korn Omho - Aswan 2022)  
a. cycle      b. use      c. recycle      d. rain
4. The ..... room is over there. They always sit in it.  
a. teachers      b. teacher's      c. teachers'      d. teacher

(Hosh Issa - Behara 2023)



5. This is the .....  
 a. school playground                      b. schools' playground  
 c. school's playground                  d. school playground's
6. My village is ..... far from the city center.  
 a. queue              b. quit                      c. quite                      d. quiet
7. We use a question mark at the ..... of a question.  
 a. first                      b. left                      c. end                      d. top
8. We go to the ..... in science lessons.  
 a. garden              b. laboratory              c. park                      d. club
9. Reading and painting are my favourite .....  
 a. sports                      b. languages              c. subjects                      d. hobbies
10. Mona is good ..... English. (Sharkia 2023)  
 a. at                      b. in                      c. for                      d. on

**5 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Who's book is this ? (Akhmim – Sohag 2022) { ..... }
2. She works in a famous chemist. (Dairut – Assiut 2023) { ..... }
3. **SB** The girl's names are Sara and Toka. { ..... }
4. Let's goes to the summer camp. { ..... }

**E. Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

**"A day with your family"**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

(El Shorouk – Cairo 2023)



# Stop here !

## Mini-Test on unit 2 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Salma : . ?

Mariem : Today is Monday.

B. Tabarak : How often do you go to the library ?

Nada : .....

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

School starts at half past seven every day. Nabil lives near his school, so he goes to school on foot. He is kind and friendly. He works hard to pass the exams every year. He likes reading, so he goes to the school library twice a week. He hopes to be a doctor because he is good at maths, science and English. He likes meeting clever people, but he doesn't like meeting bad people. He also likes visiting new places. His favourite foods are fish, meat and rice. He helps his mother at home. His favourite sport is football. He plays it three times a week.

#### a. Answer the following questions :

1. Why does Nabil go to school on foot ?
2. Do you think Nabil will be a doctor ? Why ?
3. How often does Nabil go to the school library ?

#### b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Nabil likes meeting ..... people.  
a. bad                      b. clever                      c. unkind                      d. unhappy
5. The underlined word "His" refers to .....  
a. Nabil's friend      b. Nader                      c. Nabil                      d. Nabil's teacher

### 3 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :

"Your school day"

---

---

---



1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Baher and Salah are talking about school subjects

Baher : What subjects do we have today ?

Salah : (1) .....

- a. We've English, Arabic and maths
- b. I was sick
- c. We have English at 8:30
- d. I don't like maths

Baher : (2) ..... ?

- a. What time is maths class
- b. Do you like English
- c. What's your favourite subject
- d. Where are you now

Salah : My favourite subject is science.

Baher : (3) ..... ?

- a. What's your favourite sport
- b. What about music
- c. Have you got any hobbies
- d. Are you good at English

Salah : Yes, I'm quite good at English.

Baher : Who's our English teacher this year ?

Salah : (4) .....

- a. History is fun
- b. Mr Ahmed
- c. On Sundays
- d. At the library

Baher : When do we have social studies ?

Salah : (5) .....

- a. On Wednesdays
- b. It's my favourite
- c. No, I don't
- d. Let's play chess

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

6. She ..... a sports car.

- a. never drive
- b. drives never
- c. never drives
- d. drive never

7. In this box, there are ..... T-shirts.

- a. girls
- b. girl
- c. girls's
- d. girls'

8. .... do you play football ? - Once a week.

- a. How
- b. How much
- c. How long
- d. How often

9. .... is the subject for learning how to test and understand facts.

- a. Maths
- b. Art
- c. Science
- d. Drama

10. A/An ....., is a simple message sent through the internet.

- a. telegram
- b. letter
- c. blog
- d. email

11. Hatem's father has a car so he ..... him to school.

- a. walks
- b. cycles
- c. sails
- d. drives

12. They are ..... good at French and English.

- a. quite
- b. quiet
- c. quit
- d. queue

13. .... is the time when you don't have lessons.

- a. Brake
- b. Book
- c. Bike
- d. Break

14. Cars, buses and bikes are forms of .....

- a. books
- b. trains
- c. bicycles
- d. transport

15. Our teacher of English ..... speaks Arabic in class.

- a. don't
- b. doesn't
- c. never
- d. won't



### A. Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. How old is Amr ?
  - a. Thirteen
  - b. Three
  - c. Thirty
  - d. Seventy
2. What is his mother's job ?
  - a. A teacher
  - b. A nurse
  - c. An engineer
  - d. A housewife
3. How many brothers does Amr have ?
  - a. One
  - b. Two
  - c. Three
  - d. Five
4. What is his grandmother called ?
  - a. Huda
  - b. Hana
  - c. Nadia
  - d. Lina

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is asking Samy about his best friend.

**Ali** : What's your best friend's name ?

**Samy** : He is (1) ..... Mohamed.

**Ali** : What does he (2) ..... like ?

**Samy** : He has got curly hair and green eyes.

**Ali** : What does he (3) ..... doing ?

**Samy** : He likes reading and (4) ..... video games.

**Ali** : Is he friendly and kind ?

**Samy** : Yes, he (5) .....

**Ali** : How old is he ?

**Samy** : He's 12.





### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Everyone has their favourite hobbies. I have many hobbies. The most important hobbies for me are reading and using the internet. I like reading very much. Reading helps me to get useful information about anything I want. I spend many hours reading. When I have enough money, I buy a new book. My second hobby is using the internet. I think the internet is one of the most important inventions. I use it to do many things. I use it to **communicate** with my friends online. I use it to do research for my school. I advise everyone to have a hobby to enjoy life.

##### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- ..... helps me to get useful information.  
a. Reading                      b. Running                      c. Sleeping                      d. Walking
- Everyone should have a/an ..... to enjoy life.  
a. email                      b. energy                      c. hobby                      d. bag
- The underlined word "**communicate**" means to ..... your friends.  
a. contact                      b. lose                      c. destroy                      d. drive

##### b. Answer the following questions :

- Give a suitable title for the passage.  
.....
- Why do you think the internet is a useful invention ?  
.....
- What does the underlined word "it" refer to ?  
.....

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- They are ..... They are brothers and have the same age.  
a. twins                      b. enemies                      c. foreigners                      d. vans
- Reading and chess are my favourite .....  
a. hopes                      b. foods                      c. meals                      d. hobbies
- He ..... football every day.  
a. play                      b. plays                      c. playing                      d. is played



4. Playing ..... needs just two people.  
a. handball      b. basketball      c. football      d. chess
5. They are helpful and do ..... work on Fridays for no money.  
a. noisy      b. happy      c. voluntary      d. musical
6. I like fish. My sister likes it, .....  
a. neither      b. either      c. as      d. too
7. This dress belongs ..... Maha.  
a. to      b. too      c. two      d. toe
8. After finishing school, we join the .....  
a. kindergarten      b. university      c. nursery      d. park
9. At break, I play games with my friends in the .....  
a. library      b. chemist's      c. bookshop      d. playground
10. Please, take the .....  
a. cars' key      b. car's key      c. car key      d. cars' keys

**5 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. She studies always hard. (      )
2. Omar go swimming on Mondays and Fridays. (      )
3. This car belongs to mine. (      )
4. Who's shoes are these ?-They are Omar's. (      )

**6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

***"Your favourite subject"***

---



---



---



---



---





## Unit

# 3

## Different People

BB pages 22 : 31 / WB pages 56:82

### Objectives :

#### • Reading :

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

#### • Writing :

A blog post about a friend

#### • Listening :

Descriptions of people

#### • Speaking :

likes and dislikes

#### • Language :

have / has got; can / can't

#### • Life Skills :

Respect for diversity; resilience



## Lessons

# 1 & 2

SB pages 1 & 2  
WB pages 8 & 9



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

blond hair (n)	شعر أشقر	beard (n)	بحية
curly hair (n)	شعر مجعد	moustache (n)	شارب [شنب]
dark hair (n)	شعر داكن	glasses (n)	نظارة
straight hair (n)	شعر غير مجعد	scarf (n)	وشاح [إيشارب]
running (n)	الجرى	sports star (n)	نجم رياضى
fans (n)	مشجعين - معجبين	smile (d) (v), (n)	بتسم - ابتسامة
runner (n)	عداء / مُتسابق	feature (n)	سمة / ميزة
goal (n)	هدف	poor people (n)	الفقراء



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

fans - beard - friendly - curly hair

- Salah has ..... . His hair isn't straight.
- The ..... is the hair that grows on a man's cheek and chin.
- Mohammed Munir has a lot of ..... . Many people like his songs.

### Lesson 1

SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 86

glasses (n)	نظارة	holiday (n)	أجازة
describe (d) (v)	يصف		

### Lesson 2

SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 87

team (n)	فريق	carry (ied) (v)	يحمل
footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم	funny (adj)	مضحك
score (d) (v)	يحز / يسجل	The Cairo Tower (n)	برج القاهرة
squash (n)	لعبة الاسكواش	nicely (adv)	بطريقة لطيفة
person (n)	شخص	name (d) (v), (n)	يُسمى - اسم
Italian (n), (adj)	اللغة الإيطالية - إيطالى الجنسية	Europe (n)	قارة أوروبا



## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

## تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
choose يختار	chose	chosen
give يعطي	gave	given
build يبني	built	built

## Study these definitions

## ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>beard</b>	hair that grows on a man's face or chin	لحية / دقش
<b>blond</b>	yellow or light brown hair	أشقر (الشعر)
<b>curly</b>	hair that has turns	شعر مجعد
<b>dark</b>	brown or black hair	شعر داكن اللون
<b>friendly</b>	behaving in a way to people that shows you like them	ودود
<b>glasses</b>	what you wear over your eyes to help you see better	نظارة
<b>goal</b>	when you win a point in e.g. football	هدف (في كرة القدم)
<b>kind</b>	wanting to help and be good to people	طيب / عطوف
<b>moustache</b>	hair that grows above a man's top lip	شارب (شيب) الشفاة العليا
<b>score</b>	win points / goals in a game or a match	يسجل (نقاط أو أهداف)
<b>smile</b>	when the corners of your mouth turn up to show that you are happy	ابتسامة / يبتسم
<b>straight</b>	hair without any turns	شعر غير مجعد
<b>fans</b>	people enjoying watching football matches and players	مشجعين / معجبين

## Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات			
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/Opposite المضاد	
famous مشهور	well known	unknown	غير معروف
normal طبيعي	ordinary	abnormal	غير طبيعي
blond أشقر	fair / light - coloured	dark	داكن



curly	شعر مجعد	wavy	straight	شعر غير مجعد
long	طويل	tall	short	قصير
fast	سريع	quick	slow	بطئ
poor	فقير	needy	rich	غنى
weak	ضعيف	unhealthy	strong	قوى

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية		
Prefix & Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	runner عذاء player لاعب
- an	تكون الجنسية من اسم البلد	Italian إيطالي الجنسية
- y	تكون الصفة من الاسم	funny مضحك



### Exercise

### on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Muhammed Salah is a famous sports star. The synonym of the word "famous" is .  
a. abnormal      b. normal      c. unknown      d. well known
- To get the adjective of the word "Italy", we add the suffix " ".  
a. -ment      b. -ive      c. -er      d. -ian
- The antonym of the word "blond" is .  
a. light      b. dark      c. heavy      d. straight
- The word " " has the same meaning of "quick".  
a. straight      b. fast      c. slow      d. poor
- The word "curly" is a / an .  
a. verb      b. adverb      c. adjective      d. noun





## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 tall / long

\* **tall** (adj) طويل [تستخدم للأطوال الرأسية «مباني / أشخاص / أشجار»]

**ex. :-** - My brother is **tall**. (✓)

- My brother is **long**. (X)

*Listening on lesson 2 SB page 25*

\* **long** (adj)

طويل [تستخدم للأطوال الأفقية / المسافات]

**ex. :-** - My hair is **long**. (✓)

- My hair is **tall**. (X)

*Reading on lesson 1 WB page 86*

### 2 Adjectives

▶ - He is a **fast** runner.

• لاحظ أن الصفات تستخدم في وصف الأسماء وسبقها

▶ - She is **beautiful**.

• الصفة أيضا يمكن أن تأتي بعد (verb to be)

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 24*

### 3 sport / sports

\* **sport** (n)

رياضة

▶ Tennis is my favourite **sport**.

\* **sports** (adj) , (n)

▶ - Essam el Hadary is a famous **sports** star.

رياضي

- Hala is very good at many different **sports**.

رياضات

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 24*

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
look like	يشبه	pick up	يلتقط
score goals	بحرز أهداف	easy for .....	سهلاً لـ .....
jump high	يقفز لأعلى	know about	يعرف عن
of course	بالطبع	quite short for ..	قصير إلى حد ما لـ .....
take many holidays	يأخذ العديد من الإجازات	go at (70 km/h)	يسير بسرعة (٧٠ كيلو متر في الساعة)
give money	يعطي م ك	play	يلعب / يصارع / يقاتل





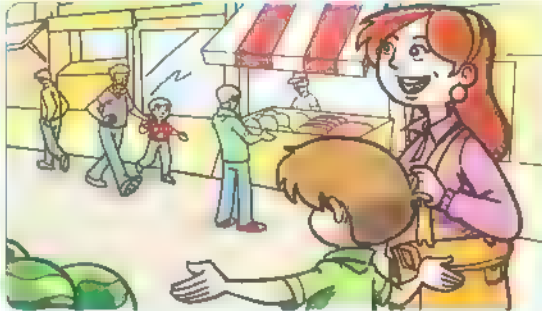
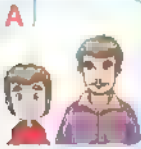
## Skills

### 1 Reading and Listening

#### Listening



• on Lesson 1 SB page 23



**Mazin** : There's my friend, Samir.

**Mum** : I don't know Samir. What does he **look like** <sup>(1)</sup> ?

**Mazin** : He's got short, **dark hair** <sup>(2)</sup>.

**Mum** : Oh, I think I can see him. Has he got glasses ?

**Mazin** : No, he hasn't. His dad's with him.

**Mum** : Has Samir's dad got a **beard** <sup>(3)</sup> ?

**Mazin** : Yes, he has.

**Mum** : Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.

(1) يشبه

(2) شعر داكن

(3) لحية / دق

• on Lesson 2 SB page 25



My favourite sports star is Doaa Elghobashy.

She plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 centimetres tall. She's strong and she's fast. She can jump very high ! She's friendly. She always has a big smile.





## Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 24

Mohamed Salah is my favourite **sports star**<sup>(1)</sup>. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He **plays for**<sup>(2)</sup> Egypt, too. He is very **good at**<sup>(3)</sup> scoring **goals**<sup>(4)</sup>. He is a **fast runner**<sup>(5)</sup>.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a **big smile**<sup>(6)</sup>. He is **quite short for**<sup>(7)</sup> a footballer.

He is 1.75 metres tall. In this photo, Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

He is a kind person. He **gives money to**<sup>(8)</sup> build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always **talks to**<sup>(9)</sup> his fans.

He has not got much **time for**<sup>(10)</sup> hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.



نجم رياضي

(2) يلعب لصالح

جيد في

(4) احرار الاهداف

عداء سريع

ابتسامة عريضة

قصير الى حد ما

يقدم مال

(9) يتحدث إلى

(10) وقت لـ

### - Critical thinking skill

### مهارة التفكير النقدي

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

#### Learn

1. How do you know that Mohamed Salah is very friendly ?

- He always talks to his fans.

#### Practise

2. Would you like to be like Mohamed Salah ? Why ?

on Lesson 1 WB page 86



The woman in the first picture has got long **straight hair**<sup>(1)</sup> and glasses. The man in the second picture has got short **curly dark hair**<sup>(2)</sup> and a **moustache**<sup>(3)</sup>.

The second woman has got short **blond hair**<sup>(4)</sup>. The second man has got short dark hair and a **beard**<sup>(5)</sup>.

(1) شعر مفرد (2) شعر مجعد اسود (3) شارب (4) شعر اشقر (5) لحية



- on Lesson 2 WB page 87

Mohamed Salah **can** score lots of goals and he **can** run very fast. He lives in England. He **can** speak English, of course. He lived in Italy for two years, so he **can** speak Italian, too! He is famous, so he **can't** have a normal life. If he goes outside, many people want to talk to him. He is very busy. He **can't** take many holidays.



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► Key vocabulary

1. He was the first ..... to finish the race.  
a. team                      b. fan                      c. runner                      d. footballer
2. She's wearing a ..... around her neck.  
a. sock                      b. scarf                      c. dress                      d. T-shirt
3. Famous people have a lot of ..... They encourage يشجع them.  
a. vans                      b. fins                      c. vets                      d. fans
4. Old people usually have white .....  
a. hair                      b. glasses                      c. fur                      d. bears

#### ► SB , WB & Previous exams

5. Mohamed Salah has a big ..... on his face. (Killer - October 2020)  
a. smell                      b. hair                      c. smile                      d. finger
6. Mohammed Salah is an Egyptian ..... star. He is very famous. (Samalout - Muna 2020)  
a. sport                      b. sporty                      c. sport's                      d. sports
7. (WB) A baby bird is very ..... It can't fly for many days. (Midjudisciplinary - Beni Suef 2021)  
a. weak                      b. poor                      c. ugly                      d. bad
8. (WB) Mohammed Salah is very famous, so he can't have a / an ..... life. (El Mouk - Cairo 2022)  
a. normal                      b. unusual                      c. strange                      d. busy





### ► El-Moasser Exercises

9. Tomorrow is a ..... I won't go to school.  
a. star                      b. holiday                      c. schoolday                      d. workday
10. People around the world have different ..... They don't look like each other.  
a. dreams                      b. features                      c. subjects                      d. balls
11. I can't see well without wearing my .....  
a. scarf                      b. bag                      c. goal                      d. glasses

### ► Definitions

12. The hair that grows on a man's cheeks **خدي** and chin **دفي** is called .....  
a. bread                      b. beard                      c. bird                      d. bride
13. The hair growing over the man's mouth is called .....  
a. feature                      b. mouse                      c. moustache                      d. beard
14. To ..... means to win points in a game.  
a. build                      b. score                      c. sell                      d. give

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. **A** : What does your brother ..... like ?    **B** : He's got short, curly hair.  
a. make                      b. take                      c. look                      d. give
16. Mohamed Salah is quite short ..... a footballer.  
a. on                      b. from                      c. for                      d. in

## 2. Speaking

### مهارة التحدث

#### ► Describing your favourite sports star :

وصف بحملك الرياضي المفضل :

- My favourite sports star is ..... (Messi) .....
- He / She plays ..... (football) .....
- He / She's quite / very ..... (fast) .....
- He / She can ..... (score goals) .....



## 3. Writing

## مهارة الكتابة

وصف الأشخاص *Description of people*

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. He / She is tall / short.               | هو / هي ... طويل / قصير.             |
| 2. He / She has got straight / curly hair. | لديه / لديها شعر مفرد / مجعد.        |
| 3. He / She has got glasses.               | يرتدي / ترتدي نظارة.                 |
| 4. He has got a beard.                     | لديه لحية.                           |
| 5. He / She has got ..... eyes.            | لديه / لديها أعين لونها .....        |
| 6. He / She has a big smile.               | يتسم بأن لديه / لديها ابتسامة عريضة. |
| 7. He / She is kind / funny / friendly.    | هو / هي ... طيب / مرح / ودود.        |
| 8. He / She can speak ..... .              | هو / هي يستطيع النحدث باللغة .....   |
| 9. He / She is very good at ..... .        | هو / هي جيد جدًا في .....            |

*"Your favourite sports star"*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Salah my favourite sports star.  | ١. صلاح هو بحمي الرياضي المفضل.                                     |
| 2. He plays football for a very good team in Europe and the Egyptian National team. | ٢. يلعب كرة قدم لصالح فريق جيد بلعانة في أوروبا وفريق القومى المصرى |
| 3. He is a fast runner.   | ٣. إنه عداء سريع.   |
| 4. He is very kind and gives money to the poor.                                     | ٤ هو عطوف جد ويعطى أموالاً للفقراء                                  |

**Time is enough**

مراجعة المنهج  
والتمكن منه فى اسبوع واحد فقط





Step 1 Vocabulary	Step 2 Speaking	Step 3 Writing
اختبر إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث	اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
<p><b>Read and complete :</b></p> <p>1. A. What does your friend ..... ? B. He has got short, dark hair.</p> <p>2. A. Has he got ..... ? B. No, he can see well.</p> <p>3. A. Has he got green ..... ? B. Yes, he has.</p>	<p><b>Complete the following dialogue :</b> Ziad tells Ayman about his friend, Samir.</p> <p>Ziad : This is my friend, Samir.</p> <p>Ayman : (1) ..... Ziad : Really ?</p> <p>Ayman : (2) ..... ? Ziad : He has got short, dark hair.</p> <p>Ayman : (3) ..... Ziad : No, he can see well.</p> <p>Ayman : Has he got green eyes ? Ziad : (4) ..... Can you see him now ?</p> <p>Adam : (5) .....</p>	<p><b>Write a paragraph on :</b> "A description of your friend"</p>
<p><b>"A description of your friend"</b></p> <p>1. A. What is your favourite ..... ? B. Mohamed Salah.</p> <p>2. A. What does he look like ? B. He is quite short and he has got, ..... hair and a beard.</p> <p>3. A. Does he ..... goals ? B. Yes, he scores a lot of goals.</p>	<p><b>Amir and Amr are talking about their favourite sports star.</b></p> <p>Amir : Good morning. How are you ? Amr : Good morning (1) .....</p> <p>Amir : (2) ..... ? Amr : Mohamed Salah.</p> <p>Amir : What sport does he play ? Amr : (3) ..... Amir : What does he look like ? Amr : (4) ..... Amir : (5) ..... ? Amr : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.</p>	<p><b>"Your favourite sports star"</b></p>

Minwa - Mallawi 2023

Faraskur De





## Language

## (A) have / has got

## Formation التكوين

1

## Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المسببةI / You / We / They → have got = ['ve got]  
اسم جمع /

ex. They have got blond hair.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → has got = ['s got]

ex. She has got dark hair.

2

## Negative statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفيةI / You / We / They → have not got = [haven't] got  
اسم جمع /

ex. We have not [haven't] got cars.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → has not got = [hasn't] got

ex. He has not [hasn't] got a beard.

3

## Interrogative

صفة  
الاستفهام

Has [he/she/it/اسم مفرد] → got .... ?

ex. - Has he got a car ?

- Yes, he has.

- No, he hasn't.

Have [I / we / you / they/اسم جمع] → got .... ?

ex. - Have you got glasses ?

- Yes, I have.

- No, I haven't.



- **لاحظ أن :** هناك أفعال أخرى تعطي معنى الملكية.

have / have got = own = possess

ex. I have/own/possess a car.

can / can't

## Formation التكوين

### Expressing ability and inability

التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة

Subject → can / cannot [can't] + inf.

فاعل

مصدر الفعل

ex. - Mohammed Salah can score many goals.

- I can't pick up that box. My arms are weak.

Yes / No questions السؤال بـ (هل)

Can + subject الفاعل + inf. ?

ex. Can you climb a tree ?

Yes, I can.

No, I can't.

### Asking about ability

السؤال عن القدرة

Wh-questions بكلمات الاستفهام

Question word + can + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل .. ?

ex. A : What can you do, Ahmed ?

B : I can lift heavy weights.

- **لاحظ أن :** هناك تعبيرات وتركيبات أخرى تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة.

can + inf. = (am / is / are) + able to + inf.

can't + inf. = (am / is / are) + not able to + inf.

ex. I can drive a car. = I am able to drive a car.



## Exercises

### on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. I ..... got short, curly hair.

a. 've

b. 'm

c. 's

d. 'll



2. I \_\_\_\_\_ visit my uncle today because I'm very busy. (A / B / C / D)
- a. can                      b. should                      c. can't                      d. have
3. Amira ..... got a car. She walks to work. (El Fashn-Bent Suet 2020)
- a. has                      b. haven't                      c. hasn't                      d. have
4. WB Mohammed Salah ..... score a lot of goals. He is very fast.
- a. can                      b. was                      c. mustn't                      d. has
5. SB She ..... got blond hair. (Multidisciplinary - Alexandria - Souhag 2021)
- a. have                      b. having                      c. has                      d. is having

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

6. .... you read this text, please ?
- a. Have                      b. Can                      c. Was                      d. Does
7. .... has got a new laptop.
- a. They                      b. I                      c. She                      d. We
8. We ..... any bikes.
- a. have got                      b. haven't got                      c. has got                      d. hasn't got
9. Has he got an umbrella ? - No, he ..... .
- a. haven't                      b. hasn't                      c. don't                      d. wasn't

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

► **SB , WB & Previous Exams**

1. No, they aren't got a car. (Aifib - Giza 2023) ( ..... )
2. SB We can gives money to help the poor. ( ..... )
3. SB Have Samir's dad got a beard ? ( ..... )
4. She've got curly hair. (West Mahalla - Gharbia 2020) ( ..... )

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

5. My sister hasn't get a pen. ( ..... )
6. She can't riding a bike. ( ..... )
7. I'm very busy today, so I can play squash. ( ..... )



# General Exercises



## LESSONS 1 & 2

● Understand ● Apply ● Create



### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى مملتك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Doaa Elghobashy is a ..... player.  
a. basketball      b. volleyball      c. football      d. handball
2. She's ..... centimetres tall.  
a. 180      b. 118      c. 80      d. 1800
3. Doaa always has a big .....  
a. smile      b. smell      c. climb      d. life
4. Doaa is .....  
a. strong and fast      b. short and fast  
c. short and slow      d. strong and slow

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is asking Omar about his favourite sports star.

Ali : Who is your favourite sports star ?

Omar : (1) .....

Ali : What sport does he play ?

Omar : (2) ....

Ali : (3) ..... ?

Omar : He has got dark, curly hair.

Ali : (4) ..... ?

Omar : I like him because he is my role model.

Ali : Do you want to be like him ?

Omar : (5) ..... (South Giza - Giza 2021)

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He is clever and can ..... many goals. (Helwan - Cairo 2021)  
a. ski      b. score      c. sell      d. miss
2. He plays football for a famous ..... in Africa.  
a. team      b. fan      c. member      d. score



3. Has Salma got a pen ? - No, she .....  
a. haven't                      b. has                      c. hasn't                      d. have
4. (5/2) Camels are very strong. They ..... carry 200 kilos of bags.  
a. can                      b. cannot                      c. shouldn't                      d. mustn't
5. (SB) I ..... got glasses, but my sister has got glasses.  
a. haven't                      b. have                      c. has                      d. hasn't
6. "....." is the opposite of "fast".  
a. Low                      b. Slow                      c. Quick                      d. Lucky
7. This man's photo is in all the newspaper. He's very  
a. unknown                      b. famous                      c. free                      d. lazy
8. He always has a big ..... on his face.  
a. site                      b. smell                      c. smile                      d. sight
9. A ..... is hair that grows above a man's top lip. (Dokki - Giza 2022)  
a. blond                      b. beard                      c. check                      d. moustache
10. My hair is ..... It isn't straight. (Dokki - Giza 2022)  
a. blond                      b. short                      c. curly                      d. long

#### 4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Have you get glasses ? (El Idwa - Minya 2023) ( ..... )
2. Have she got chips for dinner ? ( ..... )
3. He is able to running fast. (Abo Korkas - Minya 2022) ( ..... )
4. Do you play the drums ? - Yes, I can. ( ..... )

#### 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : **مجالس على كرة القدم**

##### "A famous sports star "

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

(Shorouk - Cairo 2023)



## Lessons

# 3 & 4

SB pages 26 : 28

WB pages 88 & 89



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

children's story	قصة أطفال	character (n)	شخصية
painting (n)	الرسم بالفرشاة / التلوين	angry (adj)	غاضب
scary (adj)	مرعب / مخيف	clever (adj)	ماهر / ذكي
brave (adj)	شجاع	boring (adj)	ممل
strange (adj)	غريب	frightened (adj)	خائف / مرعوب
blog post (n)	مستور مدونة	sensible (adj)	عقل / حكيم



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

danger - brave - frightened - sensible - strange

1. A ..... person is happy to do something dangerous.
2. A ..... person makes good decisions.
3. Ali is very ..... of dogs.
4. Wonderland was a ..... place, but it was interesting.

### Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27

WB page 88

learning (n)	تعلم	history (n)	تاريخ
regularly (adv)	بانتظام	website (n)	موقع على الأنترنت
online (adj) (adv)	متصل بالأنترنت	twice (adv)	مرتان

### Lesson 4

SB page 28

WB page 89

Wonderland (n)	أرض العجائب	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
hearts (n)	قلوب	shout (ed) (v)	يصرخ / يصيح
meaning (n)	معنى	true story (n)	قصة حقيقية
main (adj)	أساسي / رئيسي	decisions (n)	قرارات
queen (n)	ملكة	notebook (n)	دفتر / كراسة



Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
swim يسبح	swam	swum
begin يبدأ	began	begun
understand يفهم	understood	understood

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

angry	very cross	غاضب
brave	not easily frightened	شجاع
blog	is a website on which someone writes regularly. It is like an online diary	مدونة على الإنترنت
character	a person in a book or a film	شخصية (في فيلم أو كتاب)
clever	good at learning things	ماهر
late	arriving after the correct time	متأخر
scary	something that makes you feel frightened	مخيف
sensible	thinking carefully so that you do the right thing	عاقل / حكيم
twice	two times	مرتان

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/Opposite المضاد
brave شجاع	heroic / bold	cowardly / afraid جبان - خائف
able قادر	capable	unable / weak غير قادر - ضعيف
Interesting شيق	exciting	boring مممل
strange غريب	unusual	usual مألوف - عادي
clever ذكي	intelligent	stupid غبي
angry عاصب	cross	quiet - calm هادئ

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix & Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	frightened خائف
- ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	regularly بانتظام
- ing	تكون الاسم من الفعل	meaning معنى
- ible	تكون الصفة من الاسم	learning التعلم
		painting التلوين
		sensible حكيم - عاقل





## Exercise

### on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We add the suffix " " to change the noun "sense" into an adjective.  
a. -ist      b. -ible      c. -al      d. -ful
- The opposite of the word "strange" is ".....".  
a. unusual      b. difficult      c. busy      d. usual
- I watched an interesting film yesterday. The synonym of the word "interesting" is ".....".  
a. boring      b. exciting      c. frightening      d. friendly
- The word "learning" is a/an ".....".  
a. verb      b. adverb      c. noun      d. adjective
- We add the suffix " " to form the adjective of the word "frighten".  
a. -able      b. -ful      c. -ed      d. -y



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 interesting / interested

\* **interesting** (adj.)

شيق / رائع (وصف الأشياء والأشخاص)

- ▶ - She meets a lot of **interesting** characters. رائع
- She thinks that Wonderland is **interesting**. شيق / مثير

\* **Interested** (adj.) (noun / inf. + ing) [مهتم بـ] ويتبعها حرف الجر in متبوعاً بـ

- ▶ - She is **interested** in history.
- She is **interested** in reading novels.

Reading on lesson 3 SB page 25

### 2 help + مفعول به + مصدر

inf. مصدر

to + inf. المصدر

- ▶ - We **help** poor people **live** / **to live** a happy life.

Reading on lesson 3 SB page 25



# Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
play > a sport      يمارس رياضة	frightened of + (inf. + ing/n)      يخاف من
do maths      يحل مسائل ارياضيات	write in order      يكتب بالترتيب
make good decisions      يتخذ قرارات جيدة	learn about      يتعلم عن
feel hungry      يشعر بالجوع	shout at      يصيح في
feel happy      يشعر بالسعادة	at the end of      في نهاية
do art      يقوم بالرسم	queen of      ملكة على
has no time      ليس لديه وقت	know a lot about      يعرف الكثير عن
get angry      يغضب	



## Skills

### Reading and Listening

#### Reading

- on Lesson 3 SB page 26

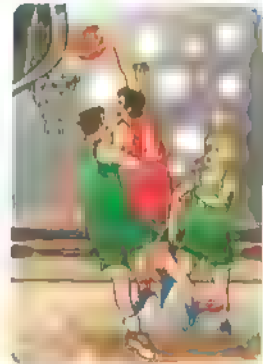
### All about me

Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark curly hair<sup>(1)</sup>. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers.

My favourite school subject is history. I love learning about the past. I like maths and science, too. I do not like art<sup>(2)</sup> because I am not very good at drawing or painting.

I often play sport after school. My favourite sport is basketball. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming, too. I go swimming twice a week.

At home, I like reading and playing video games<sup>(3)</sup>. I do not like watching TV. I think it is boring<sup>(4)</sup>.



(1) شعر مجعد

(2) الرسم

(3) ألعاب فيديو

(4) ملل



## Listening

- on Lesson 3 SB page 27

**Girl 1** : Let's play a game. I'm looking at a girl. Who is it ?

**Girl 2** : Does she like watching TV ?

**Girl 1** : No, she doesn't.

**Girl 2** : Does she like swimming ?

**Girl 1** : Yes, she does.

**Girl 2** : It's Noha.

**Girl 1** : Good ! OK. Number two. Who is it ?

**Girl 2** : Does she like swimming ?

**Girl 1** : Yes, she does. She loves swimming !

**Girl 2** : Does she like playing basketball ?

**Girl 1** : No, she doesn't.

**Girl 2** : It's Dina.

**Girl 1** : Well done ! Three. Who is this ?

**Girl 2** : Does she like watching TV ?

**Girl 1** : Yes, she does.

**Girl 2** : It's Eman.

**Girl 1** : No, it isn't !

**Girl 2** : Does she like basketball ?

**Girl 1** : Yes, she does.

**Girl 2** : It's Maya.

**Girl 1** : Yes !

**Girl 2** : OK, so the last one loves painting, she likes watching TV and she doesn't like playing basketball. It's Eman.

**Girl 1** : Yes again !



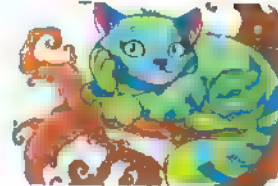


## Reading

On Lesson 4 SB page 28

### Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

By Lewis Carroll



Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a **famous**<sup>(1)</sup> children's story. Alice's **adventure**<sup>(2)</sup> begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is **interesting**<sup>(3)</sup>, but it is a strange place. She is a **sensible**<sup>(4)</sup> girl, but she does not understand Wonderland.

Alice is also **brave**<sup>(5)</sup> and clever. She meets a lot of interesting **characters**<sup>(6)</sup>.

Alice often sees the White Rabbit. The White Rabbit is very busy – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.

The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters.

The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a **scary**<sup>(7)</sup> person. She is always **angry**<sup>(8)</sup> and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not **frightened**<sup>(9)</sup> of her.

At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.



- (1) مشهور
- (2) مغامرة
- (3) شيق
- (4) عاقل / حكيم
- (5) شجاع
- (6) شخصيات
- (7) مخيف
- (8) غاضب
- (9) خائف

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

- Giving the main idea.

**Learn** 1. Give a suitable title for this passage.  
*Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.*

Critical thinking skill

**Practise** 2. Do you think Wonderland is an exciting place ? Why ?

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

ممارسة التفكير النقدي



- on Lesson 3 WB page 88

### What is your favourite subject ?

- My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is Science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.



### Which sport do you like ?

- I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at it.

### What do you do in the evening ?

- I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too.



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► Key vocabulary

1. He is a ... person who can make good decisions.  
a. scared                      b. sensible                      c. strange                      d. fast
2. He likes ... with water colours.  
a. doing                      b. learning                      c. reading                      d. painting
3. He was wearing a ... hat. Everyone was looking at him.  
a. clear                      b. scared                      c. strange                      d. normal
4. Our teacher gets ... when we don't do our homework.  
a. happy                      b. angry                      c. frightened                      d. cold

#### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

5. ... stories are exciting and dangerous. *(Kufi Al Zayyat - Gharbia 2022)*  
a. Comedy                      b. Romantic                      c. Adventure                      d. Funny
6. Something scary makes you feel ... *(Al Wadi - Cairn 2023)*  
a. hungry                      b. bad                      c. funny                      d. frightened
7. WB I love learning about how things work, so I love ...  
a. history                      b. Arabic                      c. science                      d. English

#### ► El-Moasser Exercises

8. My little brother is very funny, he always makes me ...  
a. think                      b. cry                      c. angry                      d. laugh



9. Omar is a busy person. This means he is .....  
 a. talking                                      b. walking  
 c. laughing                                     d. doing something
10. A brave person is happy to do something .....  
 a. fun    b. strange                                    c. dangerous                                d. bad

### ► Definitions

11. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a person in a book or a film.  
a. character      b. driver      c. doctor      d. farmer
12. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a website on which someone writes regularly. It's like an online diary.  
a. dairy      b. newspaper      c. book      d. blog
13. \_\_\_\_\_ means to be good at learning things.  
a. Brave      b. Clever      c. Scary      d. Angry

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

14. Are you frightened ..... the dog ?  
a. for                                      b. of                                      c. by                                      d. with
15. She likes ..... art. It's her favourite hobby.  
a. doing                                      b. making                                      c. giving                                      d. having
16. My parents always help me ..... my problems.  
a. solved                                      b. solving                                      c. to solve                                      d. solves

## 2. Speaking

## مهاراة التحدث

► **Describing a character from a story :**

**عند وصف الشخصية من قصة :**

Questions	Answers
• What's the character's name ? ما اسم الشخصية ؟	- Her name is Alice. اسمها أليس.
• Which book or film is he/she from ? ما الكتاب / الفيلم المأخوذة منه ؟	- She is from Alice's Adventures in Wonderland. هي شخصية من قصة «مغامرات أليس في بلاد العجائب».
• What do you think of him/her ? ما رأيك في هذه الشخصية ؟	- Alice is a sensible girl. She meets a lot of interesting characters in Wonderland. هي بنت حكيمة. تقابل الكثير من الشخصيات الشيقة في بلاد العجائب.



## Step 1

### Vocabulary

اختبر إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

## Step 2

### Speaking

اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث

## Step 3

### writing

اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Read and complete :

1. A. Can I ask you some questions ?

B. نعم بالطبع .

2. A. Where do you ?

تعيش

B. I live in Alexandria.

3. A. What's your favourite

رياضة ?

B. I like basketball.

Complete the following dialogue :

Riham asks Dalia some questions about herself.

Riham : Hello Dalia. Can I ask you some questions ?

Dalia : Hello Riham.

Riham : I live in Alexandria with my family.

Riham : Are you a student ?

Dalia : (3) .

Riham : What's your favourite subject ?

Dalia : (4) . I love learning about the past.

Riham : (5) .

Dalia : I like basketball.

(Fak - Sharkia 2023)

(Bawaba - Ghazal 2022)

1. A. What's your favourite hobby?

B. I love reading stories.

مغامرات

2. A. What do you

of Alice ?

يعتقد

B. I think she is a sensible girl.

3. A. What does "sensible" mean ?

نعني

B. Sensible means that she

can think carefully . . .

Soha and Sara are talking about children's story.

Soha : What's your favourite hobby, Sara ?

Sara : (1) .

Soha : Did you read "Alice's Adventures in Wonderland" ?

Sara : (2) . It's a nice children's story.

Soha : (3) .

Sara : Alice is the main character.

Soha : What do you think of Alice ?

Sara : +

Soha : Sensible ! (5) .

Sara : Sensible means that she can think carefully.

(Harun - Giza 2023)

"Describe a character in a book"

(Kafk - Al Zawrat - Ghazbia 2022)



## Language

هناك بعض الأفعال التي يمكن أن يتبعها (inf. + ing) أو اسم (noun)

like / love /  
enjoy / prefer  
/ don't like /  
hate / dislike → (inf. + ing / noun)

- ex. - I like swimming. - She loves learning about the past.  
- They don't like watching TV. - She doesn't like painting.

في صيغة الاستفهام (يسأل يبدأ بفعل مساعد) باستخدام هذه الأفعال يكون السؤال كالآتي :

**Interrogative**  
صيغة الاستفهام → Do / Does + {subject} + like / love .... ?  
فاعل

- ex. Do you like playing tennis ? - Yes, I do. - No, I don't.  
ex. Does she like playing tennis ? - Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

هناك بعض الصفات تتبعها حروف جر ثم (inf. + ing) أو اسم (noun) :

good at /  
interested in  
/ bad at → (inf. + ing / noun)

- ex. - Ahmed is good at English.  
- Huda is interested in reading adventure stories.

لاحظ أن هذه الأفعال (like / love / prefer) إذا سبقها (would) يتبعها (to + inf.).

Subj + would ['d] + like / love / prefer + to + inf.

- ex. He'd like to drive a small car.





## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. He'd like ..... football. (Dairut - Assiut 2023)  
 a. playing      b. to play      c. play      d. was playing
2. Ahmed likes history because he loves ..... about the past. (Kom Ombo - Assiut 2020)  
 a. learns      b. learnt      c. to learning      d. learning
3. **WB** I don't like ..... computer games. (Mars Matruh - Quesna 2021)  
 a. play      b. playing      c. plays      d. played
4. **SB** Noha ..... like swimming. (Riad El Farag - Cairo 2022)  
 a. don't      b. isn't      c. aren't      d. doesn't
5. **SB** ..... she like watching TV ? - Yes, she does.  
 a. Do      b. Does      c. Doing      d. Don't

#### ► El-Moasser Exercises

6. Sama isn't interested in ..... pictures.  
 a. drew      b. draw      c. drawing      d. to draw
7. He prefers ..... maths.  
 a. do      b. did      c. doing      d. does
8. Hoda doesn't enjoy ..... action films.  
 a. watching      b. watch      c. to watch      d. watches
9. Do they like ..... computer games ?  
 a. play      b. to playing      c. plays      d. playing
10. Amir is good at ..... the computer.  
 a. use      b. to use      c. uses      d. using

### 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

#### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. Huda is bad at swim. (Agouza - Giza 2023) ( .. )
2. Ali is good for art. (Simmuris - Fayoum 2023) ( .. )
3. Emad likes watch football matches on TV. (El Fushn - Beni Suef 2022) ( .. )
4. I am interested about art. (El Fushn - Beni Suef 2022) ( .. )



5. **WB** Does your father like **travel** to work ?

( Mataria - Cairo 2022 , Talkha - Dakahla 2023 , ( ..... ) )

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

6. Would you prefer ride bikes ? ( ..... )

7. Baleigh is interested in **listens** to music. ( ..... )

8. I hate **walk** in the sun in summer. ( ..... )

9. What do you like **do** in the afternoon ? ( ..... )

10. **A** : Have you like swimming ? - **B** : Yes, I do. ( ..... )

## El-Moasser

### Homework Interactive

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي
- يمكنك من إتقان المفردات اللغوية ( التسميم )
- والقواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على الوحدات





# General Exercises

LESSONS

3 & 4

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

## 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Alaa about his favourite sport.

Ahmed : What's your favourite sport ?

Alaa : (1) .....

Ahmed : Why are you good at it ?

Alaa : (2) .....

Ahmed : (3) ..... ?

Alaa : I play basketball in the club.

Ahmed : (4) ..... ?

Alaa : I play basketball twice a week.

Ahmed : Can I play with you ?

Alaa : (5) .....

## 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous children's story. Alice has a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She meets a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland is strange but interesting place for Alice. Alice is a sensible, brave and clever girl. **She** meets the White Rabbit that is usually late and runs fast. The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal which helps Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts is a scary person and she **shouts** at people but Alice is not frightened of her. At the end of the story, all the characters helps Alice so she can go home again.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The worst character is .....

a. Alice

b. Cheshire Cat

c. the Queen of Hearts

d. the King

2. The underlined word "**shouts**" means talks .....

a. slowly

b. happily

c. calmly

d. loudly

3. The underlined pronoun "**She**" refers to .....

a. the Queen of Hearts

b. Alice

c. the Cheshire Cat

d. the White Rabbit

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What does this passage talk about ?



5. How does the Cheshire Cat help Alice ?

6. Why do you think Alice is brave ?

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. I would like ..... this café. (Rosetta - Beheira 2023)  
 a. visiting                      b. to visit                      c. visited                      d. visits
2. **WB** A ..... person makes good decisions. قرارات (Taha - Sohag 2023 - Kufr El Dawwar - Beheira 2023)  
 a. sensitive                      b. lazy                      c. sensible                      d. busy
3. .... means arriving after the correct time.  
 a. Early                      b. Quickly                      c. Late                      d. Scary
4. I don't like ..... because I'm not good at painting. (Mount - Matruh 2023)  
 a. art                      b. history                      c. science                      d. maths
5. They love ..... about science.  
 a. learn                      b. learning                      c. learned                      d. learns
6. .... teaches us many things about the past.  
 a. Geography                      b. Maths                      c. Algebra                      d. History
7. You can write some information in your ..... post.  
 a. book                      b. office                      c. blog                      d. notebook
8. Does Toka ..... playing tennis ?  
 a. likes                      b. to like                      c. liked                      d. like
9. When Ahmed is angry, he ..... at people.  
 a. smiles                      b. shouts                      c. goes                      d. runs
10. **FB** Yunis doesn't like watching TV because he thinks it is .....  
 a. interesting                      b. boring                      c. beautiful                      d. exciting

**4 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Does he like read stories ? (Fayoum 2023) ( ..... )
2. You are very good of playing tennis. ( ..... )
3. I am not very good at draw. ( ..... )
4. He'd like going to the park. ( ..... )

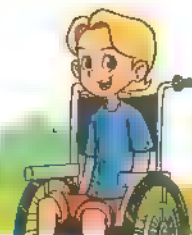
**5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاوب عنه في نهاية الكتاب**

**"A famous children's story "**



# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 29 & 30  
WB pages 90 & 91



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

best friend (n)	أفضل صديق	storm (n)	عاصفة
classroom (n)	حجرة الدراسة	personality (n)	شخصية
secret (n)	سر	appearance (n)	مظهر / هيئة
wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك	review (n)	مقال نقدي



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

storm - secret - wheelchair - best - appearance

1. People who can't walk use a ..... to move.
2. You should look after your ..... well.
3. Don't tell people about your personal information. It's a .....
4. Hisham is my ..... friend. He is very friendly.

### Lesson 5

SB page 29 WB page 90

call (ed) (v)	يُسمى / يدعى	island (n)	جزيرة
treasure (n)	كنز	together (adv)	معا / سويا

### Lesson 6

SB page 30 WB page 91

pool (n)	حمام سباحة	connect (ed) (v)	يربط / يتصل
----------	------------	------------------	-------------

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken



Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>together</b>	with one or more people	معا
<b>wheelchair</b>	a chair with wheels, for people who cannot walk	كرسي متحرك
<b>appearance</b>	what the person looks like	مظهر
<b>personality</b>	what the person is like	شخصية
<b>hobbies</b>	what the person likes doing	هوايات

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym Opposite المصاح
connect يربط	link	disconnect - separate يفصل

Prefixes & suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix & Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ity	تكون الاسم من الصفة	personality شخصية
-ance	تكون الاسم من الفعل	appearance مظهر
-er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	writer كاتب



Exercise

on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- To get the noun of the adjective "personal", we add the suffix ".....".  
a. -ment      b. -ity      c. -ness      d. -tion
- The word "connect" is the synonym of the word ".....".  
a. correct      b. appear      c. link      d. separate
- To get the noun of the verb "appear", we add the suffix ".....".  
a. -ant      b. -er      c. -ance      d. -ment





## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 Using linking words to connect ideas. استخدام كلمات الربط لربط الأفكار.

and / because / but

• تستخدم (and) للعطف والإضافة

► - He goes to all of his lessons **and** we have lunch together.

• تستخدم (but) لربط الأفكار المتناقضة.

► - Basel cannot run, **but** he is fast in his wheelchair !

• تستخدم (because) لربط السبب بالنتيجة.

► - I like Basel **because** he is a lot of fun.

*Reading on lesson 6 SB page 30*

### 2 It's + صفة + (for + صمير مفعول + to + inf. المصدر

► - **SB** It is not easy (for Basel) **to** travel around the city.

- It is important (for Hala) **to** study hard.

*Reading on lesson 6 SB page 30*

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
make sure	يتأكد	in a wheelchair	في كرسي متحرك
get things	يحصل على الأشياء	different from	مختلف عن
do things	يقوم بأداء أشياء	work on a boat	يعمل على مركب
make a poster	يصنع ملصقًا إعلانيًا	difficult for ...	صعب على ...
make notes	يدون ملاحظات	written by	كتب بواسطة
travel around	سجول في [مكان ما]	a book by [اسم شخص]	كتاب تم تأليفه عن طريق [اسم شخص]
He is a lot of fun	هو شخص مرح.	on the island	على الجزيرة
		far from	بعيدًا عن





## Skills



## Reading and Listening



## Reading



- on Lesson 6 SB page 30

## Who's your best friend ?

My **best friend**<sup>(1)</sup> is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing video games. Those are my favourite hobbies, too !



Basel has got a wheelchair because he cannot walk. It is not **easy for** Basel to **travel around** school. I open doors for Basel and I help him to get things in the classroom.

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a problem. We do a lot of things **together**<sup>(4)</sup>. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football **in the playground**. Basel cannot run, but he is fast **in his wheelchair**<sup>(5)</sup>!

I like Basel because he is **a lot of fun**<sup>(6)</sup>. I am very happy that he is my friend.

Fady, 12

- 1 أفضل صديق
- 2 سهل
- 3 يتجول في
- 4 معًا
- 5 في اللعب
- 6 على الكرسي المتحرك
- 7 مرح

- on Lesson 7 SB page 31

Magda **has got** a lot of hobbies. She **likes reading** and sport. She **likes playing** basketball and she **likes playing** tennis, but her favourite sport is swimming. She **loves swimming**! Magda **doesn't like playing** video games and she also **doesn't like playing** chess.





## Listening

on Lesson 5 WB page 90

My favourite book is **Treasure Island**. It is by **Robert Louis Stevenson**. It is about a brave boy called Jim. He travels in a big boat to an island. It is very far from his home. The boat has got many scary men on it and they all want to find some money on the island. It is very exciting.



My favourite book is **Anne of Green Gables** by **Lucy Maud Montgomery**. It is about an orphan girl called Anne. She goes to live with a brother and sister in the country. Life is not easy for her and she has many adventures, but Anne is a sensible girl. It is a good book.



My favourite book is called **Gulliver's Travels** by **Jonathan Swift**. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of them are very friendly, but some of them are scary. I like the book very much.



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

#### ► Key vocabulary

- People who can't walk can use a ..... to travel around.  
a. chair                      b. wheel                      c. wheelchair                      d. ship
- You shouldn't tell people about your personal information. It is a .....  
a. book                      b. house                      c. dress                      d. secret
- There was a strong ..... so all the boat trips were cancelled yesterday.  
a. journey                      b. storm                      c. plan                      d. site
- Our teacher has an attractive ..... All students like him.  
a. time                      b. secret                      c. personality                      d. review



► SB , WB & Previous Exams

5. **WB** My favourite book is ..... "Treasure Island". (Wasat Alex 2020)  
 a. called                      b. played                      c. opened                      d. travelled
6. **SB** I like Basel because he is a lot of ..... (Amr Shams - Cairo 2022)  
 a. fun                      b. fans                      c. fins                      d. falls
7. **WB** Write a ..... of your favourite book.  
 a. pool                      b. review                      c. secret                      d. storm

► El-Moasser Exercises

8. The new bridge ..... the village with the city.  
 a. joins                      b. calls                      c. connects                      d. closes
9. .... short stories helps young children improve their language  
 a. Speaking                      b. Walking                      c. Reading                      d. Calling
10. After the ship sank, he swam to a nearby ..... surrounded by water.  
 a. beach                      b. storm                      c. island                      d. desert

► Definitions

11. "....." is what the persons looks like.  
 a. Personality                      b. Happiness                      c. Appearance                      d. Age
12. "....." are what the person likes doing.  
 a. Plans                      b. Hobbies                      c. Issues                      d. Secrets
13. "....." means with one or more people.  
 a. Too                      b. Both                      c. Together                      d. Alone

► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. This is an exciting book. It was written ..... Naguib Mahfouz.  
 a. in                      b. on                      c. by                      d. from
15. Travelling ..... Cairo in the rush hour ساعة الذروة is not easy.  
 a. about                      b. around                      c. above                      d. under
16. Children who can't walk can ..... a lot of things using a wheelchair.  
 a. sail                      b. give                      c. do                      d. wake

**2. Speaking**

مهارة التحدث

► Discussing your favourite book :

مناقشة كتابك المفضل .

I like reading ..... (historical books, adventure books, science books)

- I love reading books by .....



- My favourite book is اسم الكتاب.
- It's about a girl / a boy called اسم الشخصية الرئيسية.
- I like اسم الشخصية الرئيسية because he/she السبب.



## Pop Quiz

## on Speaking

1) Complete the following dialogue :

Arrej is asking Maya about her favourite story.

Arrej : Do you like reading stories, Maya ?

Maya : (1) .....

Arrej : (2) ..... ?

Maya : My favourite story is "Treasure Island".

Arrej : (3) ..... ?

Maya : Yes, it's very exciting.

Arrej : Can I borrow it from you ?

Maya : (4) .....

Arrej : Thank you.

Maya : (5) .....

(Last Mansoura - Dakahlia 2023)



## Writing

## مهارة الكتابة

• Use these questions to help you write a review of your favourite book.

استخدم هذه الأسئلة لتساعدك على كتابة مقال نقدي عن كتابك المفضل :

• Who is it by ?

من الكاتب ؟

- It is by اسم الكاتب.

• Who is the main characters ?

من هي الشخصية الرئيسية ؟

- It is اسم الشخصية الرئيسية.

• Who are the other characters ?

من هم الشخصيات الفرعية ؟

- They are اسماء الشخصيات الفرعية.

• What can we learn from this book ?

ما الدروس المستفادة من الكتاب ؟

- We learn الدروس المستفادة من الكتاب.



# General Exercises



## LESSONS 5 & 6

● Understand

● Apply

● Create



### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. What is your best friend called ?  
a. Omar                      b. Yasser                      c. Basel                      d. Tarek
2. He has got ..... hair and brown eyes.  
a. curly                      b. blond                      c. long                      d. straight
3. Basel is .....  
a. unfriendly                      b. cowardly                      c. kind                      d. unkind
4. What does he like doing ? - He likes .....  
a. reading                      b. playing video games  
c. drawing                      d. a & b

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Zainab is asking Mera about her favourite book.

Zainab: What's your favourite book ?

Mera : (1) .....

Zainab: (2) ..... ?

Mera : Anne of Green Gables is a book by Lucy Maud Montgomery.

Zainab: Who is the main character in the book ?

Mera : (3) ..... ?

Zainab: Anne! Why do you like this book ?

Mera : (4) .....

Zainab: A lot of adventures ! (5) ..... ?

Mera : We can learn how to be a sensible child like Anne.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 1. You should keep your password ..... (Aga - Dakuhlia 2021)  
a. easy                      b. famous                      c. known                      d. secret
- 2. My grandfather is ..... Shalaby. (Al-Maragha - Sohag 2022)  
a. cold                      b. killed                      c. called                      d. call
- 3. I learn swimming in a big .....  
a. park                      b. pool                      c. court                      d. match



4. **SB** Basel has got a ..... because he can't walk. (El Mustakhal - Cairo 2023 / Dakahlia 2023)
- a. table                      b. ladder                      c. wheelchair                      d. pool
5. My ..... friend is Abdel Rahman. He always helps me a lot.
- a. worst                      b. bad                      c. busy                      d. best
6. My father is very busy, ..... he does sports every day.
- a. too                      b. but                      c. so                      d. and
7. He is kind ..... friendly.
- a. and                      b. because                      c. but                      d. so
8. **SB** It is important to be ..... like Alice.
- a. cowardly                      b. weak                      c. brave                      d. sad
9. It's important ..... sport regularly.
- a. do                      b. doing                      c. done                      d. to do
10. We got a prize as the best ..... in the school.
- a. party                      b. island                      c. club                      d. classroom

**4 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. **He** Nevine loves play tennis. ( ..... )
2. Has your father gets glasses ? ( ..... )
3. **He** Rami loves basketball and he doesn't like volleyball. ( ..... )
4. He'd like drinking orange juice. ( ..... )

**5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : **مراجعة على كتابك المفضل****

**"A review on your favourite book"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....





Page 3 of 3

160

Vocabulary		Language	
<b>Lessons 1 &amp; 2</b>		have / has got	لديك / لدي
blond hair (n)	شعر أشقر	<b>Affirmative :</b>	
curly hair (n)	شعر مجعد	I / We / You / They / اسم جمع → have got + اسم	
dark hair (n)	شعر داكن	He / She / It / اسم مفرد → has got + اسم	
straight hair (n)	شعر غير مجعد	<b>Negative :</b>	
team (n)	فريق	Subject → haven't / hasn't , got + اسم	
running (n)	الجري	<b>ex. -</b> She hasn't got dark hair.	
fans (n)	مشجعين / معجدين	<b>Interrogative :</b>	
runner (n)	عداء / مسير	Have / Has subject + got + اسم ?	
beard (n)	حبة	<b>ex. Have you got a moustache ?</b>	
moustache (n)	شارب / شارب	- Yes, I have. - No, I haven't.	
scarf (n)	وشاح / إسرب	<b>ex. Has she got straight hair ?</b>	
sports star (n)	فنان رياضي	- Yes, she has. - No, she hasn't.	
grey (n)	رمادي / أسود	<b>like / love / enjoy / prefer / hate / dislike + (noun), (inf + ing)</b>	
feature (n)	سمة / ميزة	<b>good at / Interested in / bad at + (noun), (inf + ing)</b>	
poor people (n)	فقراء	<b>would love / prefer / like + to + inf</b>	
score (n)	نقاط / دوائر		
<b>Lessons 3 &amp; 4</b>			
character (n)	شخصية		
guess (ed) (v)	يخمن		
wonderland (n)	أرض العجائب		
paint (ed) (v), (n)	يدهن / ملون - طلاء		
frightened (adj)	خائف / مرعوب		
sensible (adj)	عاقِل / حكيم		
children's story	قصة أطفال		
painting (n)	الرسم بالفرشاة / اللوح		
scary (adj)	مرعب / مخيف		
brave (adj)	شجاع		
strange (adj)	غريب / غريب		
blog post (n)	مسيو مدونة		
website (n)	موقع على الإنترنت		
regularly (adv)	بانتظام		
meaning (n)	معنى		
main (n)	مهم / أساسي		
laugh (ed) (v)	ضحك / ضحك		
<b>Lessons 5 &amp; 6</b>			
best friend (n)	أفضل صديق		
classroom (n)	فصل / غرفة		
secret (n)	سِر		
wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك		
storm (n)	عاصفة		
personality (n)	شخصية		
appearance (n)	مظهر / هيئة		



# Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

## Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

نحسّر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

المحدي قد تجد صعوبة في تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تحاول تخمين معنى الكلمة من السياق.

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

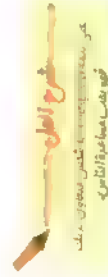
### Step 1

Read and learn how to answer:

My best friend is called Hassan. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and helpful. He has a lot of hobbies

The word "helpful" means that he likes to people.

- a. draw
- b. dislike
- c. help
- d. leave



Read and answer the questions :

"Alice in Wonderland" is a famous children's story. It is an adventure story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was strange, but it was an interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, **brave** and clever girl. She met the White Rabbit that was usually late and ran fast.

The underlined word "**brave**" means not easily

- a. slow
- b. bored
- c. lazy
- d. frightened



## 2

## Speaking

## Famous Sports Stars

يخبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

أريد [السؤال] وصف شخصاً وبحث صعوبة في تكوّن أسئلة والرد عليها.

أريد [السؤال] بحث عليك معرفه قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وس المحاور

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to ask and answer

الحوار يكون بين محور وسخص آخر عن شخصه رياضيه مشهوره.

السؤال Question	الإجابة Answer	الاستخدام Usage
What is your favourite sports star ?	Mohamed Salah.	
Which sport does Mohamed Salah play ?	He plays football.	حوار عن "محمد صلاح"
Why do you admire him ?	Because he helps people	
Which team does he play for ?	He plays for a very good team in Europe.	
What's your English teacher's name ?	He is Mr Mohamed.	حوار عن وصف شخصية
What does he look like ?	He has got short, straight hair.	

اقرأ واقرأ بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى

▶ Complete the following dialogue

Ali : Good morning. How are you, Ahmed ?

Ahmed : Good morning. (1) ...

Ali : (2) ... ?

Ali : Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star.

Ali : What sport does he play ?

Ali : What does he look like ?

Ali : (5) ... ?

Ahmed : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.





محتسب سؤال كتابه الفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph) مهارتك في التعبير عن موضوع ما



محتسب يريد كتابة موضوع عن أفضلى تشفى عديدا و ربحتم ربحي. و يجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.



محتسب يحب يكتب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المعردات اللغوية و كيفية استعمالها في تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب

### Topic

#### Step 1 Review your vocabulary

Write the meaning :

يسمى

شعر

عداء

كرة السلة

نظارة

لاعب كرة قدم

Best friend

#### Step 2 Sentences

Fill in using vocabulary

1. He has got short black .....
2. He wants to be a .....
3. My best friend is ..... Omar.
4. He likes playing football and .....
5. He is a good .....

#### Step 3 Paragraph

Write a paragraph on  
"Your best friend"

مصري

نجم رياضى

قوى

ايتسامة

مشجعين

جيد

Favourite Sports Star

Write an email about  
"Your favourite sports star"

تدريب تلقائي على مهارة الكتابة



## Questions collected from previous exams

سؤال من امتحانات المحافظات على الوحدة

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Doing exercise makes us ....  
a. weak    b. strange    c. strong    d. fat  
*(Al-Ahram - Monafia 2023)*
2. ... your uncle got a beard?  
a. Does    b. Can    c. Has    d. Have  
*(Saidat - Monafia 2023)*
3. ... Mona drive a car?    *(Al-Qanary - Qalyubia 2023)*  
a. Do    b. Has    c. Can    d. Is
4. Mohamed likes ... chess online.  
a. play    b. playing    c. plays    d. played  
*(Kafir El-Shekh 2023)*
5. A/An ... person makes good decisions.  
a. safe    b. sensible    c. strange    d. exciting  
*(Manset El-Naser - Dakahlia 2023)*
6. Mazen always talks nicely to people.  
He's very ...  
a. friendly    b. unkind    c. unfriendly    d. bad  
*(Montaza - Alexandria 2023)*
7. We can give money to help ... people.  
a. fast    b. poor    c. slow    d. rich  
*(Qna - Qena 2023)*
8. A ... is a woman who rules a country.  
a. king    b. queen    c. prince    d. daughter  
*(Aqouza - Giza 2023)*
9. Mohamed Salah is very good at ... goals.  
a. kicking    b. diving    c. hitting    d. scoring  
*(Haram - Giza 2023)*

### 10. Mona has ... hair, it's not straight.

- a. blond    b. short    c. long    d. curly  
*(El-Shorouk - Cairo 2023)*

### 2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. We would like watching TV.    *(... ..)*  
*(El-Masara - Cairo 2023)*
2. Ali is interested in listened to music.    *(... ..)*  
*(Mousha et El-Kanater - Giza 2023)*
3. Do you run fast? - Yes, I can.    *(... ..)*  
*(Qalyub - Qalyubia 2023)*
4. Have he got dark hair?    *(... ..)*  
*(East Zagazig - Shoubra 2023)*
5. What has they got for dinner?    *(... ..)*  
*(Tahia - Sohag 2023)*
6. Ahmed and I has got curly hair.    *(... ..)*  
*(Biba - Beni-Suef 2023)*
7. He can giving money to poor people.    *(... ..)*  
*(Naser - Beni-Suef 2023)*
8. Has your friend get straight hair?    *(... ..)*  
*(Kany Hamada - Beni-Suef 2023)*
9. You are good at play tennis.    *(... ..)*  
*(Abu Toq - Assiut 2023)*
10. Has you got a mobile phone?    *(... ..)*  
*(Basyoun - Gharbia 2023)*



### A. Listening

**1** Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)



1. Yunis has got short, ... curly hair.  
a. dark                      b. brown                      c. grey                      d. blue
2. Yunis's favourite subject is .  
a. art                      b. science                      c. maths                      d. history
3. He doesn't like .  
a. science                      b. history                      c. art                      d. geography
4. He is not good at ... or painting.  
a. singing                      b. eating                      c. drawing                      d. cooking

### B. Language Functions

**2** Complete the following dialogue :

Tarek is telling Tamer about his best friend.

Tamer : What is your best friend's name ?

Tarek : (1) . . . . .

Tamer : (2) . . . . . ?

Tarek : He has got curly hair and green eyes.

Tamer : (3) . . . . . ?

Tarek : He likes reading and playing video games.

Tamer : What is he good at ?

Tarek : (4) . . . . .

Tamer : Wonderful ! Do you think he'll be a football player ?

Tarek : (5) . . . . . I think he will be a great footballer.

### C. Reading Comprehension

**3** Read the following, then answer the questions :

I have got many friends, but Akram is my best friend. He has got snort, dark straight hair. He lives in Qalyoubia Governorate with his mum,



dad and two sisters. His favourite subject is history because he loves learning about the past. He also likes maths and science. He doesn't like art because he isn't good at drawing or painting. His favourite sport is swimming. He goes swimming **twice** a week.

He is a big fan of Liverpool Sports Club and Mohamed Salah. He always watches football matches on TV and sometimes goes to the stadium. In the stadium, he watches matches of our national team.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. Mohammed Salah                      b. Akram  
 c. Akram's father                          d. Akram's friend
2. The underlined word "twice" means \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. three times    b. two times              c. four times              d. one time
3. Akram has got short, .... straight hair.  
 a. dark              b. blond                      c. red                      d. brown

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.
5. Why do you think Akram sometimes goes to the stadium ?
6. How often does Akram go swimming ?

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- 1. She didn't want to go into the cave because she was \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. frightened    b. dark                      c. clever                      d. brave  
(Hsa - Fayoum 2023)
- 2. Leen likes ..... to her father.  
 a. talk                      b. talks                      c. talking                      d. talked  
(Musa - 2023)
- 3. The first ..... on Monday morning is science.  
 a. glass                      b. bottle                      c. classroom                      d. lesson



- 4. Ayman has ..... a smartphone.  
a. gets                      b. got                      c. getting                      d. get
- 5. People who like something or admire someone are called .....  
(Fast Zagazig - Ierkaia 2023)  
a. pans                      b. vans                      c. hats                      d. fans
- 6. He wasn't scared ..... he is a brave boy.  
a. and                      b. but                      c. because                      d. although
- 7. My friend told me a ..... that no one else knows.  
(Savada Zannah - Cairo 2022)  
a. storm                      b. call                      c. advert                      d. secret
- 8. I always help my sister ..... things at home.  
a. do                      b. ride                      c. eat                      d. drive
- 9. The little puppy couldn't get out of the ..... itself as he can't swim.  
a. pool                      b. park                      c. view                      d. playground
- 10. Dr Magdi Yacoub has an attractive ..... Everyone loves him.  
a. person                      b. personality                      c. personal                      d. personally

### 5 Read and correct the underlined words :

- 1. Can you helping me, please ? (Zefta - Gharbia 2023) ( ..... )
- 2. Have he got a mobile ? (Assuan 2023) ( ..... )
- 3. I like English but maths. ( ..... )
- 4. SB Does he like play basketball ? ( ..... )

## E. Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

**"Your best friend"**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



# Stop here !

## Mini-Test on unit 3 for Al-Azhar students

اختبر مقرر لطلاب الازهر الشريف

### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :

A. Yasser : .. .. ?

Omar : My hobbies are reading and drawing.

B. Ali : Who is your favourite sports star ?

Sam : .. ..

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The ..... is the hair that grows above the man's top lip.

- a. beard                      b. chin                      c. moustache                      d. board

2. He ..... got short, black hair.

- a. having                      b. has                      c. have to                      d. has to

3. Alice is the main ..... in the story.

- a. character                      b. event                      c. blog                      d. paint

4. The ..... man saved a lot of people from fire.

- a. scary                      b. brave                      c. frightened                      d. strange

5. I dislike ..... video games. I prefer reading adventure stories.

- a. play                      b. to playing                      c. plays                      d. playing

6. Hady is good at .....

- a. painted                      b. painting                      c. to paint                      d. paints

### 3 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

**"Your favourite sports star"**



1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:

Omar is asking Karim about his favourite sports star

Omar : Good morning. How are you ?

Karim : Good morning. I'm fine, thanks.

Omar : (1) ..... ?

- a. Who is your English teacher
- b. What's your favourite sport
- c. Who is your favourite sports star
- d. Who is your uncle

Karim : Mohamed Salah.

Omar : What sport does he play ?

- Karim : (2) .....
- a. He plays the guitar
  - b. He plays football
  - c. He likes English
  - d. He plays for Egypt

Omar : What does he look like ?

- Karim : (3) .....
- a. He has got curly hair
  - b. He is sensible
  - c. He is fast
  - d. He scores goals

Omar : (4) ..... ?

- a. Is he kind
- b. Does he like video games
- c. Does he score goals
- d. Does he live in England

Karim : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.

Omar : How does he help poor people ?

- Karim : (5) .....
- a. He gives them money
  - b. He plays with them
  - c. He travels a lot
  - d. He has a big smile

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

6. He is a/an ..... person. He always helps poor people.

- a. afraid
- b. ugly
- c. kind
- d. scary

7. She ..... got long, curly hair.

- a. haven't
- b. hasn't
- c. isn't
- d. doesn't

8. My father is ..... He thinks before taking any decision.

- a. brave
- b. sensible
- c. frightened
- d. slow

9. Do you like ..... English ?

- a. learn
- b. learns
- c. learning
- d. learnt

10. I can ..... but I can't ride a horse.

- a. swimming
- b. swims
- c. swim
- d. swam

11. Mona is interested ..... making clothes.

- a. on
- b. at
- c. for
- d. in

12. They use ..... because they can't walk.

- a. wheelchairs
- b. boxes
- c. pools
- d. boards

13. I can't tell you, it is a ..... .

- a. post
- b. secret
- c. story
- d. map

14. .... are what the person likes doing.

- a. Features
- b. Fans
- c. Hobbies
- d. Pools

15. Famous people have a lot of ..... who like them.

- a. pans
- b. pins
- c. vans
- d. fans



# Review A

SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 93 & 94



## Reading

- on Lesson 1 SB page 32

### My family By Lina

1 B

This is my aunt. Her name's Amal. She's my mum's sister. She's got long, dark curly<sup>(1)</sup> hair and she's got glasses. Aunt Amal is very kind.



2 D

This is my uncle. His name's Nader and he's got short, dark hair. Uncle Nader is very tall ! He's a teacher<sup>(2)</sup> and he's very clever.



3 A

Aunt Amal and Uncle Nader have got two children - a son<sup>(3)</sup> and a daughter<sup>(4)</sup>. They're my cousins. Their names are Fares and Malak. This is Fares. He's five. He's got short, curly hair and he's very friendly<sup>(5)</sup>.



4 C

Malak is two. She's got short, straight<sup>(6)</sup> hair. She likes playing with her toys<sup>(7)</sup>. She usually has a big smile . I think she's very funny .



(1) مَجْعَد (غير مستقيم) (2) مدرس (3) ابن (4) ابنة (5) ودود  
(6) مستقيم (7) ألعاب أطفال (8) ابتسامة (9) مضحك



## Listening

- on Lesson 2 SB page 33



**Woman :** **What time do you get up, Shady ?**

**Shady :** I usually get up at a **quarter** to seven on a school day.

**Woman :** **How do you travel to school ?**

**Shady :** I always **walk** to school with my brother. We never go by car.

**Woman :** **Do you like school ?**

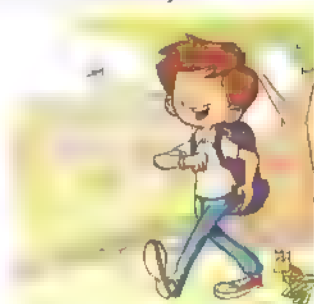
**Shady :** Yes, I do! My lessons are **interesting**<sup>1)</sup> and I see my friends. I always sit next to my best friend, Hassan, in lessons.

**Woman :** **And what do you do after school ?**

**Shady :** I sometimes play **sport**<sup>2)</sup>. On Mondays, I play football, and on Wednesdays, I go swimming.

**Woman :** **Do you have any other hobbies**<sup>3)</sup> ? **Do you play chess** ?

**Shady :** No! I never play chess. I don't like it. But I often listen to **music** or watch TV.



• (1) ربح (2) يمشي (3) شيق (4) رياضة (5) هوايات (6) لعبة الشطرنج (7) الموسيقى

- WB page 93



**Aya :** Hi, my name's Aya. My friends have got long, **straight** hair but I've got short, curly hair. We go to a girls' school in Cairo. My favourite school **subject**<sup>1)</sup> is art. I love **drawing**<sup>2)</sup>. I'm not very good at it, but I want to be ! We have art at quarter to eleven, after maths and before English. I've got one brother and one sister. My brother is very friendly and my sister is very **clever**<sup>3)</sup>.



• (1) مادة دراسية (2) الرسم (3) ذكي / ماهر



## Reading

- WB page 93

(a) twins



(b) Huda



(c) Amal



(d) Lina



**Teacher** : OK children. It's time to go home. I've got four school bags here.

**Magda** : Huda's bag has got flowers on it. That's her bag there.

**Maya** : That's Amal's bag. It has got birds on it.

**Nevine** : Lina's bag is red. It hasn't got any pictures on it.

**Teacher** : Good, but I've now got one bag with tennis balls on it. Is it your bag, Magda ?

**Magda** : No, it isn't my bag. I think it's one of the twins' bags.

**Teacher** : Yes, but which twin, Azza or Dalia ?

## Listening

- WB page 94

**Narrator 1**

**Boy 1** : I often go to the cinema with my uncle.

**Narrator 2**

**Girl 1** : Do you like playing chess ?

**Narrator 3**

**Girl 1** : I have got a long, white coat <sup>1</sup>.

**Narrator 4**

**Boy 1** : After break, we go to the hall <sup>2</sup>.

**Narrator 5**

**Girl 1** : My uncle has got glasses <sup>(3)</sup> and a beard <sup>(4)</sup>.

• 1) بالظن / مخطط 2) صالة 3) نظارة 4) لحية





# GENERAL Exercises

عامة على الوحدات 1 و 2 و 3

Based on Units 1, 2 & 3

► If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بملء يديك بنفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى

● ممتاز  
● جيد جداً  
● غير جيد

B. Salma and Mervat are talking about the new timetable.

Salma : Do you have the new timetable, Mervat ?

Mervat : (1) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Salma : (2) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Mervat : My favourite day is Sunday.

Salma : (3) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Mervat : Because we have English and science on Sunday.

Salma : When do we have music ?

Mervat : (4) \_\_\_\_\_

Salma : What else do we have on Tuesday ?

Mervat : (5) \_\_\_\_\_

السؤال الثالث في الورقة الامتحانية :

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Every morning, children from a far village cycle to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time. It is also hard for children who live next to the lake in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they don't walk to school. They go on a canoe. It takes them to school and home again every day. In winter, there is a lot of snow in the USA, so the children travel to school in a snowmobile!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined word "cycle" means to go

- a. on foot
- b. by bike
- c. in a canoe
- d. by boat

السؤال الأول في الورقة الامتحانية :

1. Listen and choose the correct answer

from a, b, c or d :

1. Helmi's favourite subject is \_\_\_\_\_

- a. maths
- b. English
- c. history
- d. Arabic

2. Helmi isn't good at \_\_\_\_\_

- a. reading
- b. studying
- c. running
- d. drawing

3. Helmi likes \_\_\_\_\_

- a. swimming
- b. cycling
- c. football
- d. volleyball

4. Helmi goes swimming twice \_\_\_\_\_

- a. a year
- b. a week
- c. a day
- d. a month

السؤال الثاني في الورقة الامتحانية :

2. Complete the following dialogue :

A. Saif and Ezzat are talking about their hobbies.

Saif : Hello, Ezzat. What's your favourite hobby ?

Ezzat : (1) \_\_\_\_\_

Saif : (2) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Ezzat : I usually play chess. Do you like chess ?

Saif : (3) \_\_\_\_\_

Ezzat : What sport do you like ?

Saif : (4) \_\_\_\_\_

Ezzat : I like swimming, too ! (5) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Saif : I go swimming at the club.

Ezzat : Great. Let's go to the club together next week.



2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the  
 a. canoe      b. village  
 c. school      d. snowmobile
3. Children go to school in a snowmobile in the ....  
 a. Egypt      b. Uganda  
 c. France      d. USA
- b. Answer the following questions :**
4. Give a suitable title for the passage.
5. Do you think it is useful to go to school on a bike ? Why / Why not ?
6. Why do children in the USA use a snowmobile in winter ?

السؤال الرابع في الورقة الامتحانية :

**4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- A. 1. .... is an interesting sport.  
 a. Mathematics      b. Physics  
 c. Gymnastics      d. Painting
2. It's healthy and cheap to ..... to school.  
 a. cycle      b. recycle      c. reread      d. reuse
3. Something scary makes you feel .....  
 a. sad      b. bad      c. funny      d. frightened
4. Tarek plays the violin in a famous .....  
 a. bank      b. library      c. hospital      d. band
5. A ..... is used for travelling when there is snow.  
 a. snowmobile      b. car  
 c. bus      d. bike

6. The Egyptian people are friendly. "Friendly" is a/an .....  
 a. verb      b. noun      c. adverb      d. adjective
7. A big ..... on your face can make people happy.  
 a. smell      b. smile      c. snack      d. silk
8. I love ..... art at school.  
 a. do      b. does      c. did      d. doing
9. It is her phone. .... always uses it.  
 a. She      b. Her      c. Hers      d. Herself
10. In Egypt, students ..... go to school on Fridays.  
 a. always      b. never  
 c. sometimes      d. usually
- B. 1. A canoe is a long, narrow .....  
 a. box      b. boat      c. ball      d. bell
2. .... is my mother's sister.  
 a. Aunt      b. Daughter      c. Uncle      d. Son
3. On a ..... holiday, I always go to the beach.  
 a. kind      b. typical      c. bad      d. silly
4. The hair that grows on a man's face or chin is called .....  
 a. shoulder      b. moustache  
 c. beard      d. chin
5. Mohammed Salah has a lot of .....  
 a. fans      b. fins      c. fats      d. pans
6. The ..... rings when the lesson starts or finishes.  
 a. pull      b. bell      c. bull      d. bill





السؤال السادس في الورقة الامتحانية :

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

A. "Your favourite sports star"

B. "Your family"

7. A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is a room at the top of a house.

a. attic      b. cinema      c. park      d. garden

8. I \_\_\_\_\_ in Aswan with my family.

a. live      b. lives      c. living      d. is lived

9. Do you want to join the \_\_\_\_\_ this week ?

a. book's club      b. books' club

c. book club      d. book club's

10. He is very busy. He \_\_\_\_\_ take any holidays.

a. can      b. can't      c. don't      d. could

السؤال الخامس في الورقة الامتحانية :

5. Read and correct the underlined words:

A.

1. Sama don't like swimming. ( ..... )

2. What is good at tennis ? - Yassin. ( ..... )

3. Has you got dark hair ? ( ..... )

4. It is not my mobile. My is new. ( ..... )

B.

1. What's he name ? - Ali. ( ..... )

2. My sister goes to a girl's school. ( ..... )

3. This man is strong; he can't carry this box. ( ..... )

4. Nada never is late. ( ..... )





# Unit 4

## We're using technology!

SB pages 34 : 43 / WB pages 10 : 11

### Objectives :

#### • Reading :

Identifying the main idea and supporting details in a text about hobbies

#### • Writing :

Writing a short paragraph about safety

#### • Listening :

Understanding the main idea and supporting details in a text about a phone call

#### • Speaking :

Describing the technology in your life  
Giving instructions

#### • Language :

Using the past tense to describe a past event

#### • Life Skills :

Problem solving; resilience



## Lessons

# 1 & 2

SB page 34 & 35  
WB pages 95 & 96



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

laptop computer (n)	كمبيوتر محمول	3D printers	الطابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد
tablet (n)	كمبيوتر لوحي	whiteboard (n)	سبورة بيضاء
mobile phone (n)	تليفون محمول	classmate (n)	زميل فصل
selfie (n)	صوره فوتوغرافية بالكاميرا الأمامية لتليفون	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
mouse (n)	فأرة	phone charger (n)	شاحن الهاتف
printer (n)	الطابعة	MP3 player (n)	مشغل الأغاني



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

classmate - email - selfie - player - laptop

1. A ..... is a photo you take of yourself.
2. Salma has got a new MP3 .....
3. I'll send you a/an. .... online.
4. A ..... small, light computer that you can carry easily.

### Lesson 1

SB pages 34 & 35

WB page 95

print (ed) (v)

طبع (و ق)

charge (d) (v)

شحن (كهرباء)

### Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37

WB page 96

text message (n)

رسالة نصية

great (adj)

رائع / عظيم

paper (n), (adj)

ورق - ورقي

video call (n)

مكالمة مرئية بالفيديو

plastic model (n)

نموذج بلاستيكي

icon (n)

أيقونة / رمز

design (ed) (v)

صمم - يرسم تصميم

click (ed) - tap (ped) (v)

نقر - ضغط



Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
know يعرف	knew	known
send يرسل	sent	sent

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>charge</b>	increase the power of a battery	(يشحن كهربيًا)
<b>click</b>	press a mouse or icon to make something happen on a computer	ينقر / يضغط
<b>email</b>	a letter or message you send on a computer	رسالة بريد إلكتروني
<b>icon</b>	a small picture on a computer screen	أيقونة / رمز
<b>laptop computer</b>	a small, light computer that you can carry easily	كمبيوتر محمول
<b>mobile phone</b>	a small phone that you can carry with you	تليفون محمول
<b>mouse</b>	an object you move so that you can read and write on a computer screen	فأرة
<b>MP3 player</b>	a machine that can play music	مشغل موسيقى
<b>online</b>	using the internet	متصل بالإنترنت
<b>phone charger</b>	you use a phone charger to increase the battery power of a mobile phone	[شاحن تليفون محمول]
<b>printer</b>	a machine that can print documents from a computer	صاحه
<b>selfie</b>	a photo you take of yourself	صورة فوتوغرافية بالكاميرا الأمامية للتليفون
<b>tap</b>	touch quickly with your finger	ينقر / يضغط
<b>text message</b>	sentences you write on a mobile phone	رسالة نصية
<b>tablet</b>	a flat, mobile computer that is smaller than a laptop computer	كمبيوتر لوحي
<b>video call</b>	a way to talk to and see people online	مكالمة بالفيديو
<b>website</b>	an internet page with information about something	موقع على الإنترنت
<b>whiteboard</b>	a classroom board that is sometimes connected to a computer	سبورة بيضاء
<b>3D printer</b>	a machine that can print documents in 3D from a computer	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد





### Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات		
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/opposite المضاد
new	modern	old
online	connected	offline
necessary	essential	unnecessary
send	—	receive

Prefix & Suffix مقاطع بادئة وناهية		
Prefix & Suffix	function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- er	تكون الأسم من الفعل	charger شاحن printer طابعة

### Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- He is looking at websites online. The opposite of "online" is .....  
a. modern      b. necessary      c. offline      d. line
- The antonym of the word "old" is .....  
a. ancient      b. new      c. different      d. small
- We use the prefix ..... to form the opposite of the word "necessary".  
a. il -      b. ir -      c. un -      d. dis -
- The suffix ..... forms the noun of the verb "charge".  
a. - er      b. - ment      c. - ness      d. - ly
- The word "....." has the same meaning of the word "necessary".  
a. new      b. essential      c. modern      d. normal
- The opposite of the word "send" is .....  
a. charge      b. receive      c. give      d. bring
- To form the noun from the word "print" we add the suffix ".....".  
a. -er      b. -ment      c. - or      d. -ness
- The word "....." has the same meaning of the word "new".  
a. online      b. modern      c. necessary      d. far





## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 tap / click

#### \* tap

يلمس برفق على سطح شاشة محدثًا صوت أحيانًا [ينقر باللمس]

- ▶ - Leen **tapped** on her mobile screen to make a call.

#### \* click

يضغط على زر في فأرة أو لوحة مفاتيح.

- ▶ - He **clicked** on the file icon to open it.

SB page 36 / WB page 96

### 2 the same / similar

#### \* the same

نفس الشيء «دون اختلاف كبير»

- ▶ - He has the **same** features of his father.

#### \* similar (to)

متشابه في بعض الصفات

- ▶ - Amr is **similar** to Ali in some points.

SB page 36

### 3 Online

متصل بالإنترنت

- ▶ - There are many **online** shops on the internet. سنستخدم كصفحة قبل الاسم

- ▶ - Grandfather is playing chess **online**. سنستخدم كطرف بعد الفعل

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 36

### 4 look

#### \* look at

ينظر إلى - يتفحص

- ▶ - I'm **looking at** websites for information about 3D printers.

#### \* look for

يبحث عن

- ▶ - She is **looking for** a new pair of shoes.

#### \* look after

يعتني بـ

- ▶ - I **look after** my baby sister while mother is out.

Reading on lesson 2 SB page 36

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

عبارات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
play ... online      يلعب ... متصلاً بالإنترنت	charge ... <b>with</b> يشحن ... باستخدام
easy to use      سهل الاستخدام	<b>at</b> the moment      في هذه اللحظة
take a selfie      يلتقط صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية	design an icon <b>for</b> يصمم أيقونة لـ
send a text message      يرسل رسالة نصية	a picture <b>of</b> صورة لـ
do computer studies homework      يؤدي واجب مادة الحاسب الآلي	click <b>on</b> an icon      ينقر على أيقونة





## Skills



## Reading and Listening



## Reading

- on Lesson 1 SB page 34

I am Ziad and this is a picture of my classroom. We often use tablets in school. There are two **laptop computers** in the classroom, too. One

laptop has got a **mouse** . I don't know why it's called a mouse. Do you know ?

And there's a **printer** <sup>1</sup>, too. My friend, Omar, is printing his homework. I have got a **mobile phone** <sup>1</sup> but it's in my bag - we don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got a phone on his desk.

He's **charging** <sup>2</sup> his phone with a phone **charger** <sup>3</sup>. And he's got a new **MP3 player** <sup>4</sup>, it's small and blue. Can you see it ?



- 1. أجهزة الحاسوب
- 2. المدمول
- 3. مارة الكمبيوتر
- 4. طابعة
- 5. تليفون مدمول
- 6. بشق
- 7. شاق
- 8. مشغل أغانى

## Answer

the following questions :

- Giving the main idea.

## Learn

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

- Using technology at classroom.

- Extracting information.

## Practise

2 Who 's printing his homework ?

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

استخراج المعلومات

## Listening

- on Lesson 1 SB page 35



There's a laptop computer on the table. Under the table, there's a printer. There isn't an MP3 player but there are two mobile phones near the laptop. The laptop has got a mouse.

## Listening skill

⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

• There is a printer . . . . the table.

a. on

b. in

c. next to

d. under



## Reading

- on Lesson 2 SB page 36

**Adam** : Hi, Granddad. It's Adam. What are you doing ?  
**Granddad** : I'm playing chess **online**<sup>(1)</sup>. I'm winning at the moment !  
**Adam** : Are you using your new laptop ?  
**Granddad** : Yes, it's quite **easy to use**<sup>(2)</sup>. What are you doing ?  
**Adam** : I'm **doing my computer studies homework**<sup>(3)</sup>. I'm looking at **websites**<sup>(4)</sup> for **information**<sup>(5)</sup> about **3D printers**<sup>(6)</sup>.  
**Granddad** : What are your mum and Alia doing ?  
**Adam** : They're **taking selfies**<sup>(7)</sup>. I'm sending you one of their photos now.  
**Granddad** : Oh yes ! That's a great photo.



مواقع على الإنترنت | يُوَدَى واجب مادة الحاسب إلى | سهل الاستخدام | متصل بالإنترنت  
 | (6) طباعة ثلاثية الأبعاد | (7) يلتقط صور بالكاميرا الذاتية | معلومات

## Exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

### ► Key vocabulary

- A machine that can play music is called a / an .....  
 a. MP3 player      b. printer      c. watch      d. clock
- My mobile battery is empty, can you lend me your ..... ?  
 a. marker      b. printer      c. charger      d. mouse
- I need a/an ..... and some paper to print these photos.  
 a. charger      b. MP3 player      c. printer      d. scanner
- You can use the ..... to click on different icons on the computer.  
 a. mouse      b. printer      c. charger      d. tablet

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

- Computers and mobile phones are examples of .....  
 a. subjects      b. nature      c. farming      d. technology
- A/An ..... is a kind of computers. (El Sahellawm-Dakahlia 2021)  
 a. whiteboard      b. charger      c. MP3 player      d. laptop
- Click ..... on the icon on your laptop. (El Fashn-Bent Suez 2020)  
 a. Click      b. Write      c. Give      d. Turn
- I'd like to ..... a selfie in front of the river. (Sinnaris - Fayoum 2022)  
 a. make      b. give      c. pick      d. take





9. She's ..... you a photo now.

- a. writing      b. sending      c. doing      d. making

(Multidisciplinary-Beni Suef 2021)

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

10. He was my ..... in El-Eman Language School.

- a. printer      b. writer      c. classmate      d. flatmate

11. When the battery of the mobile is low, you can ..... it.

- a. play      b. break      c. charge      d. drive

12. When you want to send someone a message on a computer, send  
a / an .....

- a. letter      b. email      c. paragraph      d. story

► **Definitions**

13. Tap ..... means to touch quickly with your finger.

- a. Click      b. Send      c. Tap      d. Select

14. A ..... is an internet page with information about something.

- a. view      b. diary      c. website      d. site

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. I'm looking at websites ..... information about 3D printers.

- a. at      b. about      c. for      d. with

16. I'm ..... my computer studies homework now.

- a. making      b. giving      c. doing      d. taking

**2. Speaking**

مهارة الحديث

► **A description of technology in a classroom :**

وصف التكنولوجيا الموجودة في حجرة الدراسة :

**A :** What's in your classroom ?

- ما الموجود داخل فصلك الدراسي ؟

**B :** There are some laptops. There aren't any tablets.

- يوجد بعض أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمولة. ولا يوجد أى أجهزة لوحية.

**Writing**

مهارة الكتابة

**Your classroom** فصلك الدراسي

1. My classroom is big and clean. ١ حجرة لدراسة الخاصة بي ذات حجم كبير وهي نظيفة

2. The walls are green and the door is white. ٢ الجوانب به حصراء و باب أسود اللون

3. We study English, Arabic, maths, social studies at the classroom.

٣. ندرس مادة اللغة الانجليزية والعربية والرياضيات والدراسات الاجتماعية داخل الفصل الدراسي.

4. There is a big white board in the classroom. ٤ يوجد سنورة بيضاء في الفصل الدراسي

5. Our classroom is on the second floor at school.

٥. يوجد فصل الدراسي في الطابق الثاني في مبنى المدرسة.

6. There are two computers.

٦. يوجد جهازين حاسب آلي في الفصل الدراسي .



## Step 1

## Vocabulary

اختبر انتفاذك للمعردات اللغوية

## Step 2

## Speaking

اختبر مدى انتفاذك لمهارة التحدث

## Step 3

## writing

اختبر مدى انتفاذك لمهارة الكتابة

## "Using technology in your classroom" "A description of your classroom"

## Read and complete :

1. A How is your classroom ?

B It's very big and

صيف

2. A What do you do there ?

B We study and  
the school subjects.all  
نقسم

3. A Where's your classroom ?

B It's on the second  
at school.at  
طابق

1. A Are there any

أجهزة حاسوب لوحية

B Yes, there are five tablets.

2. A Which subject do you use  
tablets in ?

B In all

المواد الدراسية

3. A Do you use

classroom ?

الهواتف المحمولة

B No, we don't use them in class.

Complete the following dialogue  
Asmaa is asking Henda about her classroom.

Asmaa Hi, Henda Can you tell me about

your classroom ?

Henda : Hi, Asmaa

Asmaa : ?

Henda : It's very big and clean.

Asmaa : What do you do there ?

Henda : ...

Asmaa : (4) ... ?

Henda : It's on the second floor at school.

Asmaa : Is there a whiteboard ?

Adam : (5) ... It is in front of the  
teacher's desk.Samir and Hany are talking about using  
technology in a classroom.Samir : Do you use technology in your  
classroom ?

Hany : (1) ... ?

Samir : (2) ... ?

Hany : Yes, there are five tablets.

Samir : Which subject do you use tablets  
in ?

Hany : (3) ... ?

Samir : (4) ... ?

Hany : Yes, my class has a smartboard

Do you use mobile phones at

classroom ?

Hany : (5) ... They are not allowed.

(Naharath - Dakahlia 2023)





## Language

**There is** [يوجد (المفرد)] / **There are** [يوجد (الجمع)]





Note the following :

لاحظ أن :

تستخدم في الجمل الخبرية المثبتة some + اسم لا بعد / اسم جمع  
بعض

There is some milk in the bottle.

There are some pencils in my pencil case.

تستخدم أيضًا some عند التعبير عن العرض والطلب

- Would you like some coffee ? (عرض)

- Can I have some tea ? (طلب)

تستخدم في الجمل الخبرية المنفية وصيغة الاستفهام بمعنى أي isn't + اسم لا بعد / اسم جمع  
لي

There isn't any ink in my pen.

There aren't any cakes in the fridge.

Is there any ink in your pen ?

Are there any cakes in the fridge ?

تستخدم (an) قبل كلمة MP3 player وليس (a) لأنها تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

Is there an MP3 player ?

(SB page 35)



## Exercises

### on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. Is there ..... MP3 player ?

a. a

b. an

c. some

d. any

(El Bagout - Monufia 2021)

2. There ..... any tablets.

a. is

b. are

c. aren't

d. isn't

3. ... there any water in the fridge ?

a. Are

b. Does

c. Aren't

d. Is

(El Fakhm - Beni Suef 2021)

4. Are there ..... printers ?

a. some

b. any

c. an

d. a

(Multidisciplinary - Sharkia 2021)

5. There ..... a lot of interesting books in the library.

a. is

b. are

c. isn't

d. wasn't

(Moua El Qouth - Sharkia 2022)

► El-Moasser Exercises

1. .... there any pens with you, Mona ?

a. Is

b. Are

c. Do

d. Was

2. Do we have ..... food for breakfast ?

a. some

b. a

c. any

d. an





8. Is there an umbrella for me ? - No, there .....  
 a. aren't                      b. is                      c. are                      d. isn't
9. There are ..... books in my bag.  
 a. any                      b. an                      c. some                      d. a
10. There ..... more women than men in the office.  
 a. is                      b. isn't                      c. are                      d. am

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

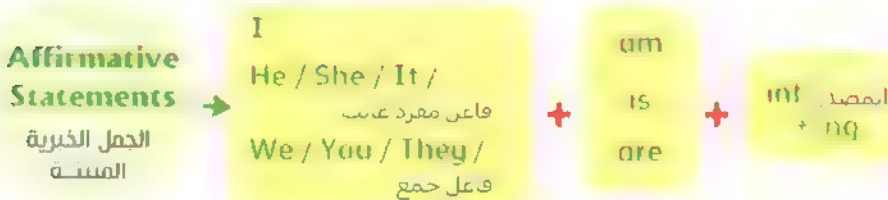
1. There is some books over there. (El Salam-Cairo 2023) ( ..... )
2. There are any books on the shelf. (Hedia-Sharkia 2020) ( ..... )
3. WB There aren't some computers. (Wasat Alexandria 2020) ( ..... )
4. Would you like any water ? (Damanhour 2021) ( ..... )
5. (.....) There aren't a charger. (.....) ( ..... )

### ► El-Moasser Exercises

6. Are there enough sugar in your coffee ? ( ..... )
7. Is there any computers in the classroom ? ( ..... )
8. Are their any mobile phones ? ( ..... )

## The Present Continuous Tense هو الحاضر المستمر

### Formation التكوين



ex. - I'm watching TV now.

- Look ! They are playing tennis.

- He's studying for his exams at the moment.



## Usage الاستخدام

◀ يعبر هذا الزمن عن حدث يقع أثناء التحدث [لحظة الكلام].

**ex.** - They are designing a new library now.

- He is reading a book at present.

◀ يستخدم هذا الزمن أيضاً لوصف أحداث مخطط لها في المستقبل.

**ex.** - We are going to Aswan tomorrow.

- They are having a party tonight.

## ملاحظات على إضافة [ing] للفعل

◀ عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف الـ [e] غير مطوق [قبله حرف ساكن] تحذف [e] قبل إضافة [ing] أما إذا كان حرف [e] منطوقاً لا تحذف ويضاف (ing).

write → writing

practise → practising

◀ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرف متحرك تصاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة [ing] (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد)

swim → swimming      sit → sitting

◀ لاحظ أنه لا تصاعف الحرف الأخير إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرفين متحركين.

feed → feeding      wait → waiting

◀ إذا انتهى الفعل بـ [ie] تحول إلى [y] قبل إضافة [ing].

lie → lying      die → dying

◀ كلمات دالة (Key words) : غالباً تأتي مع الزمن :

now	Take care !	at the moment
Look !	still	at present
Listen !	tonight	Look out ! / Watch out !

**ex.** - Listen! She's singing.

- He is working now.



## Remember تذكّر

### Prepositions of place

### حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



next to  
بجانب



behind  
خلف



in front of  
أمام



under  
تحت



near  
بالقرب من

## Exercises تمارين on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. There is a mouse ... to the laptop on the teacher's desk.

(Hadya - Sharkia 2023)

- a. there                      b. next                      c. between                      d. far

2. Watch out ! A car ...

(Santamond - El Gharbia 2022 - East Matrouh - Dakahlia 2023)

- a. comes                      b. coming                      c. came                      d. is coming

3. Ali ..... his English book now.

(Quesna - Menofia 2020 - El Idku - Minya 2023 - East Cairo - Cairo 2023)

- a. reads                      b. read                      c. is reading                      d. reading

4. Mum and my sister .... a cake.

- a. making                      b. are making                      c. is making                      d. makes

5. I'm playing chess online. I'm ..... at the moment.

(Multidisciplinary - Giza 2024)

- a. win                      b. wins                      c. winning                      d. won

6. My friend and I ..... chess now.

(Rasheed - Beheira 2020)

- a. are playing                      b. am playing                      c. played                      d. plays

#### ► El-Moasser Exercises

7. The dog is ... the tree. I can't see its head.

- a. next                      b. near                      c. behind                      d. front of

8. Look ! Youssef is ... the ball.

- a. kicking                      b. kicks                      c. kick                      d. kicked



9. I'm ..... ready for the show at the moment.

- a. gets                      b. get                      c. got                      d. getting

10. There is a new restaurant in ..... of my school.

- a. next                      b. front                      c. back                      d. behind

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. I do my homework now. (Edfu - Aswan 2023) ( )

2. ~~He~~ He is charged his phone with a phone charger. ( )

3. The baby sleeps at the moment. (North Giza 2020) ( ..... )

4. ~~There~~ There is an MP3 player behind to the laptop. ( ..... )

### ► El-Moasser Exercises

5. The park is in front to my school. ( ..... )

6. He is hiding under the tree. ( )

7. They is making chess pieces. ( )

8. The whiteboard is next up the students' desks. ( )



## Quick Look

An hour before the exam

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه في ساعة

واحدة فقط في نهاية ملحق

A Week is enough



# General Exercises

LESSONS

1 & 2

● Understand

● Apply

● Create

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى ماعلمك واحتر الإجابة الصحيحة (بصوت الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Where is Ziad ? - He is in his ... .  
a. playground    b. classroom    c. car    d. home
2. How many laptops are there in the classroom ?  
a. 3    b. 4    c. 2    d. 5
3. There is one ..... in the classroom .  
a. laptop    b. MP3 player    c. tablet    d. printer
4. Who is printing his homework ?  
a. Omar    b. Ziad    c. Tarek    d. Ali

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is busy using his mobile.

Marwa : I see you are busy.

Ali : (1) ... .

Marwa : (2) ... ?

Ali : I am sending an email.

Marwa : Who are you sending your email to ?

Ali : (3) ...

Marwa : Is your mobile new ?

Ali : (4) ...

Marwa : (5) ... ?

Ali : Yes, I can take amazing photos. I'll send you one.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. They used a/an ..... to make a plastic model.  
a. coin    b. mobile phone    c. charger    d. 3D printer
2. ...., there any humans in the kitchen ?  
a. Are    b. Is    c. Does    d. Did  
(Dokki - Giza 2023)
3. A/ An ..... is a small picture on a computer screen.  
a. icon    b. item    c. bit    d. mouse



- 4. A/An \_\_\_\_\_ message is a message which someone writes on a phone.  
a. video                      b. text                      c. audio                      d. life
- 5. Can I use your \_\_\_\_\_ to make a call? (El Hamool - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)  
a. printer                      b. charger                      c. phone                      d. mouse
- 6. They \_\_\_\_\_ writing a new story at the moment.  
a. are                      b. is                      c. isn't                      d. have
- 7. If you want to leave a game on the computer, \_\_\_\_\_ twice on the mouse.  
a. trick                      b. click                      c. lick                      d. hit
- 8. A : Is Nader \_\_\_\_\_ his homework at the moment?  
a. printing                      b. charging                      c. using                      d. talking
- 9. (M) There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ pencil cases with him.  
a. some                      b. any                      c. no                      d. nobody
- 10. I use my tablet to do a research \_\_\_\_\_ .  
a. line                      b. online                      c. in line                      d. at line

**4 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. He working in the bank now. (El Zaiqa - Damietta 2023) ( ..... )
2. Is there any tablets? ( ..... )
3. Do you have some useful information about 3D printers?  
(Aho El Nourov - Giza 2022) ( ..... )
4. I'm look at websites on the internet. ( ..... )

**5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

**"Technology"**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---





## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

insects (n)	حشرات	wave (d) (v)	بلوح بيده
action (n)	عمل / فعل	nature (n)	الطبيعة
mime (d) (v)	يقلد / يومي	eagle (n)	نسر



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي بهدف إتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

insects - mimes - action - nature - eagle

1. There is a/an ..... on the Egyptian flag.
2. Some ..... are very useful like honey bees.
3. He doesn't use words, he ..... to say what he wants.
4. You should take ..... to solve the problem.



SB pages 38 & 39

WB page 97

programme (n)	برنامج	sunny (adj)	شمس
puzzle (n)	لعز	dancer (n)	راقصة



SB page 40

WB page 98

spelling (n)	الهجاء	advice (n)	نصيحة
lunchtime (n)	وقت الغداء	kind (n)	نوع
around (prep)	حول	grammar mistakes (n)	أخطاء القواعد للغة

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
spend ينفق / ينفق	spent	spent
bring يحضر	brought	brought

### Study from definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

eagle	a large bird that can fly high and see very well	نسر
nature	the plants, animals, land, sea, etc. around us	الطبيعة



### Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات		
الكلمة	المترادف	المضاد
similar (to)	أشبهه لـ	different from/unlike [عن] مختلف
hot	ساخن / حار	cold بارد
	alike	
	warm	

Prefix & Suffix مقاطع بادئة ونهاية		
المقطع	الوظيفة	أمثلة
- tion	يكون الاسم من الفعل	action عمل - فعل
- er	يكون الاسم من الفعل	dancer راقصة



### on Vocabulary Study

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Twins are alike. The word \_\_\_\_\_ has the same meaning of "alike".  
a. difficult      b. different      c. similar      d. traditional
- The opposite of the word "hot" is . . . . .  
a. sunny      b. cold      c. warm      d. far
- We form the noun from the verb "act" by adding the suffix . . . . .  
a. - er      b. - ion      c. - ment      d. - less
- The suffix . . . . . forms the noun from the verb "dance".  
a. - ed      b. - tion      c. - er      d. - ness
- The antonym of the word "similar" is . . . . .  
a. faraway      b. modern      c. ancient      d. different



### General Notes on Reading & Listening

#### 1 What do you think of .... ?

- - What do you think of Wael and Mazin ?

تستخدم للسؤال عن الرأي

SB page 40

#### 2 There / Their

\* There is/are ...

يوجد

- - There is a girl in the playground.

\* there

هناك

- - Who is over there ?

\* their

صفة ملكية من الضمير

- - Their father is a gymnast.

Listening on lesson 4 WB page 47





## Important Expressions and Prepositions

تعابير وأحرف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
make questions	يكون أسئلة	write .... with	يكتب ... باستخدام
have to + inf.	يُضطر إلى	put my hand up	أرفع يدي
fly a kite	يطير طائرة ورقية	take photos of ....	يلقط صور لـ ...
aged 13	عمره ١٣ عام	sit under the tree	يجلس تحت الشجرة
		my laptop	على الكمبيوتر
do a hobby	يمارس هواية	on <	المحمول (الخاص بي)
		my mobile phone	على هاتفي
take notes	يُدون ملاحظات	smile at	يبتسم لـ



## Skills

### Reading and Listening

### Listening

- on Lesson 3 SB page 38

Listen to the conversation between two sisters. What is Randa doing ?

Randa : Hi, Sherifa, it's Randa.

Sherifa : Oh, hello Randa. Where are you ?  
Are you at home ?

Randa : Yes, and Uncle Yasser's here with our  
cousins Ola, Reem and Samira.

Sherifa : What's Mum doing ?

Randa : She's looking at a website .  
She wants to make a cake ' .

Yum! Mum makes the best cakes. Is she using the tablet ?

Randa : No, she isn't. She's using the laptop.  
Uncle Yasser's using the tablet. He's writing an email.

Sherifa : Is grandmother watching TV ?

Randa : Yes, she is. It's her favourite programme on<sup>1</sup> now.

Sherifa : Of course. What are Ola and Samira doing ?

Randa : They're taking selfies in the garden.

Sherifa : Again ? They're always taking selfies<sup>4</sup> !

I know Reem isn't taking a selfie; she's listening to music on  
her MP3 player.

She's a good dancer<sup>3</sup> ! What are you doing, Randa ?

Randa : I'm talking to<sup>2</sup> you !

Sherifa : Oh yes !



موقع على الإنترنت ١، يصنع كعكة / تورتة ٢، يتحدث ٣، راقصة ٤، يأخذ صور بالكاميرا الألمانية الهاتف ٥، يتحدث إلى ..



## Reading

### • on Lesson 3 SB page 39

Soha is not **making a video call** but she is talking to her friend. Amira is not using any **technology**<sup>(2)</sup>. Fatma has got long, **curly hair**<sup>(3)</sup>. She is writing. Hala is using her **mobile phone**<sup>(4)</sup> to send a text message. Leila is not using a mobile phone. She is using a tablet. Mona is smiling at her phone! She is taking a selfie.



(1) يجري مكالمة فيديو (2) تكنولوجيا (3) شعر مجعد (4) هاتف محمول

### • on Lesson 4 SB page 40

I love **technology**<sup>(1)</sup>! **My** favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my **laptop**, but sometimes I play **them** on my mobile phone.

Can you **guess**<sup>(3)</sup> my **favourite**<sup>(4)</sup> lesson at school? Yes, it is computer studies! At break and **lunchtime** I stay in the classroom and I look at **video game**<sup>(6)</sup> websites on my phone.

Wael, age 12



**Answer**  
the following  
questions.

- **Understanding reference.** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

**Learn**

1. What does the word "**My**" refer to?

- It refers to Wael.

**Practice**

2. What does the word "**them**" refer to?

- (1) تكنولوجيا
- (2) كمبيوتر محمول
- (3) يجمع
- (4) مشغل
- (5) وقت الفناء
- (6) لعبة فيديو

### • on Lesson 4 SB page 40

I love **nature**<sup>(1)</sup>. I like walking and watching the trees, **animals**, flowers and **insects** all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the **garden**<sup>(4)</sup> and looking at the sky. At school, I always go **outside** at break. I go when it's very hot or cold!



- (1) طبيعة
- (2) حيوانات
- (3) حشرات
- (4) حديقة
- (5) بهارج





I've got a mobile phone. I don't send text messages or make video calls on my phone, but I take photos of flowers.

Mazin, age 13

**Answer**  
the following  
questions

- Critical thinking skill

مهارة التفكير النقدي

**Learn**

1. What do you think of Mazin's hobby?

- *I think it's interesting because I love nature, too.*

**Practice**

2. How do you know that Mazin loves nature?

### • on Lesson 4 WB page 98

In this picture, there is a big park. There are lots of flowers and insects and there is a big tree. A girl is **sitting** under the tree. Her mother is **taking** a photo of her. Her father is **not sitting** under the tree. He is **flying** a kite! The girl's brothers are **playing** tennis.



### ▶ Listening

### • on Lesson 3 WB page 97

Judy : Hi, Leila. Where are you ?

Leila : Hi, Judy. I'm in the park with my family.

Judy : What are you doing there ?

Leila : I'm sitting under a tree. It's very sunny.

Judy : Are your brothers sitting, too ?

Leila : No, they aren't. They're playing football.

Judy : Is your dad playing football with them ?

Leila : No, he isn't. He's not here. He's working today. But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!

Judy : What's your mother doing ?

Leila : Er, wait ... here she is. She's bringing me a drink of water.  
Thanks, Mum!



### Listening skill

⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

• Uncle Hassan is in the . . . . .

a. zoo

b. cinema

c. museum

d. park





## Exercises

### on Vocabulary

☉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► Key vocabulary

- Flies and bees are kinds of .....  
a. plants                      b. insects                      c. fish                      d. birds
- Monkeys are smart animals, they can ..... people's actions.  
a. place                      b. guess                      c. mime                      d. decide
- My little brother learnt to ..... goodbye to me.  
a. see                      b. wave                      c. wear                      d. eat

#### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

- Is it good to have a hobby you ..... all the time ?  
a. make                      b. do                      c. give                      d. take
- We bought a house with a large .....  
a. ball                      b. castle                      c. garden                      d. ruin  
*(East Mansoura - Dakahlia 2021)*
- He's ..... under the tree.  
a. flying                      b. sitting                      c. taking                      d. making  
*(Al Wasta - Beni Suef 2022)*
- Soha isn't making a ..... , but she is talking to her friend.  
a. project                      b. video call                      c. selfie                      d. message  
*(Matruhdisciplinary - Chahaba 2021)*

#### ► El-Moasser Exercises

- Can you give me some ..... to help me study better ?  
a. diaries                      b. recipes                      c. charger                      d. advice
- My mother likes watching ..... about cooking on TV.  
a. newspapers                      b. diaries                      c. blogs                      d. programmes
- What ..... of stories do you like ?  
a. age                      b. height                      c. width                      d. kind
- Life in the city is ..... from life in the country.  
a. similar                      b. different                      c. easy                      d. important

#### ► Definitions

- A/ An ..... is a large bird that can fly high and see very well.  
a. canary                      b. duck                      c. eagle                      d. hen
- ..... means the plants, animals, land, sea, etc. around us.  
a. Nature                      b. Space                      c. Information                      d. Weather

#### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- It's polite to ..... your hands up first when you want to ask a question.  
a. make                      b. give                      c. put                      d. take



15. The teacher taught us how to ..... questions.

- a. take                      b. do                      c. make                      d. have

16. Soha is talking .. her phone at the moment.

- a. at                      b. on                      c. from                      d. in

## 2. Writing

مهارات الكتابة

### ► Writing tips :

نصائح للكتابة :

### ► Review your paragraph for spelling and grammar mistakes :

قم بمراجعة الفقرة الإنشائية للتحقق من الهجاء والأخطاء اللغوية :

## Nature الطبيعة

1. I love nature so much. أنا أحب الطبيعة جدا.
2. I like watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects. أنا أحب مشاهدة الأشجار والحيوانات والزهور والحشرات.
3. I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. أنا أحب البقاء في الحديقة والنظر للسماء.
4. I like taking photos of flowers so much. أنا أحب إسقاط صور للزهور جدا.

## III Language

### The Present Continuous

### • Formation التكوين

1

#### Negative Statements

الادلة النكرية  
المنفية

I  
He / She / It / فاعل مفرد غائب + am  
We / You / They / فاعل جمع + is  
are + not + [inf. المصدر + ing]

ex. She is not teaching at the moment.

- They are not studying now.



## 2

## Interrogative

صيغة  
الاستفهام

(a) Yes/No questions : السؤال بـ "هل" :

Am I  
Is + he / she / it / فاعل مفرد غائب + (inf. المصدر + ing)...?  
Are we / you / they / فاعل جمع

ex. Is she hearing sick people at present ?

- Yes, she is.

- No, she isn't.

ex. Are they growing potatoes now ?

- Yes, they are.

- No, they aren't.

(b) Wh-questions : السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word + am is are + subject + (inf. المصدر + ing)...?  
كلمة الاستفهام الفاعل

ex. Where are you working now ?

- I'm working in Cairo.

ex. What is she studying at the moment ?

- She is studying maths.



## on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. Is she ..... with a pen or a pencil ? (Moadt - Cairo 2023)

a. write

b. writes

c. writing

d. to write

2. Where ..... Hani looking for information about 3D printers ?

a. am

b. is

c. are

d. were

3. (77) She isn't, ..... at the hospital today. (Saban El Kom Monafia 2022)

a. work

b. working

c. works

d. worked

4. (77) What ..... you doing ? (Moadt - plenary - Meina 2021) (Bellux - Shadia 2020)

a. is

b. are

c. do

d. was

5. (77) Are you watching TV, Ahmed ? - Yes,

a. he is

b. we are

c. I am

d. she is





### ► El-Moasser Exercises

6. Mera ... .. studying English now.  
a. doesn't      b. don't      c. aren't      d. isn't
7. What are your mum and Alia ... .. at the moment ?  
a. do      b. does      c. did      d. doing
8. .... Ali doing his homework ?  
a. Are      b. Is      c. Does      d. Do
9. .... Hany and his brother walking to school ?  
a. Are      b. Is      c. Do      d. Isn't
10. Is Maged ... .. the same as his twin Magdy ?  
a. wear      b. to wear      c. wears      d. wearing

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. Who is called Ali on the phone ? (11 / Zaqqa - Damietta 2021) ( ... .. )
2. What are Omar and Ali do now ? ( ... .. )
3. Are Ali's mother cooking lunch ? ( ... .. )
4. She wearing a beautiful dress. (Garga Sahag 2022) ( ... .. )
5. Ahmed can't talk to you now because he does his homework. (Al-Amria - Alexandria 2020) ( ... .. )

### ► El Moasser Exercises

6. He doesn't sleeping now. ( ... .. )
7. Why are you run quickly ? ( ... .. )
8. She is still use her old mobile phone. ( ... .. )
9. Mona's father are reading a book. ( ... .. )



## A week is enough

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه في اسبوع واحد فقط





# General Exercises



LESSONS

3 & 4

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

## 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ashraf is telling Ayman about his favourite place.

**Ayman :** What's your favourite place ?

Ashraf : (1) .....

**Ayman :** What can you do in this park ?

Ashraf : (2) .....

**Ayman :** (3) ..... ?

Ashraf : My favourite bird is the eagle.

**Ayman :** What else do you do there ?

Ashraf : (4) .....

**Ayman :** A kite ! (5) ..... ?

Ashraf : Yes, of course. I enjoy my time there.

## 2 Read the following then answer the questions :

Rokaya loves nature. She likes walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around her. She doesn't like staying at home, but she loves being in the garden. Her favourite place is the park near her house. She can see lots of different kinds of birds **there**. She has got a mobile phone. She takes lots of photos of flowers and birds, but she doesn't send text messages or make video calls. She **doesn't like** playing video games. Rokaya loves writing articles about nature.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Rokaya doesn't make ..... calls.

a. audio      b. video      c. earphone      d. message

2. The underlined word "**there**" refers to the .....

a. zoo      b. home      c. school      d. park

3. The underlined verb "**doesn't like**" means .....

a. enjoys      b. hates      c. loves      d. prefers

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

5. What does Rokaya use her mobile phone for ?

6. How do you know that Rokaya loves nature ?



**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- 1. What are you ..... now ?  
a. do                      b. doing                      c. does                      d. did
- 2. I'd like to ..... all day playing video games.  
a. send                      b. spend                      c. put                      d. see
- 3. I used to ..... notes when I read a book. (Qena - Qena 2022)  
a. has                      b. do                      c. take                      d. put
- 4. Is he ..... football ? - No, he isn't. (East Janta - Gharbia 2023)  
a. plays                      b. play                      c. played                      d. playing
- 5. Animal World is my favourite ..... on TV.  
a. sport                      b. subject                      c. language                      d. programme
- 6. Are you ..... a selfie with your mobile now ?  
a. to take                      b. take                      c. taking                      d. took
- 7. What ..... can you give to your friends ?  
a. advice                      b. nature                      c. lunchtime                      d. mistake
- 8. .... are good hunters. They are very fast.  
a. Parrots                      b. Pigeons                      c. Ostriches                      d. Eagles
- 9. **A :** What do you ..... of this book ? - **B :** It's wonderful.  
a. sink                      b. think                      c. give                      d. bring
- 10. Ants are a kind of .....  
a. plants                      b. insects                      c. birds                      d. whales

**4 Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1. Who do Adam sending a message to ? ( ..... )
- 2. Does she flying the kite ? ( ..... )
- 3. Listen! She is play the piano. (Mandi - Cairo 2022) ( ..... )
- 4. Are you listen to music ? ( ..... )

**5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : "Which do you like more, nature or technology ?"**

---



---



---



---



---





## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

drink (n), (v)	مشروب - يشرب	boil (ed) (v)	يغلي
world (n)	العالم	drop (ped) (v)	يسقط
popular (adj)	شائع / مشهور	kettle (n)	غلاية [كهربائية]
instructions (n)	تعليمات	SEND icon (n)	أيقونة إرسال
heading (n)	عنوان رئيسي	password (n)	كلمة السر
poster (n)	مصق	safe (adj)	آمن



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

boil - world - password - popular

1. Keep your ..... secret.
2. There are seven continents قارات in the ..... .
3. When you ..... water, it turns into vapour بخار.

### Lesson 11

SB page 41

WB page 99

sugar (n)	سكر	message icon (n)	أيقونة رسائل
imperative (n)	صعته لأمر	without (prep)	بدون

### Lesson 12

SB page 42

WB page 100

secret (adj), (n)	سري / سر	tea bag (n)	كيس شاي
personal (adj)	شخصي	worried (adj)	قلق

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
send يرسل	sent	sent
keep يحافظ	kept	kept



### Part 1: Reading Comprehension

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>boil</b>	if you boil water, it is very hot and bubbles	يغلي
<b>kettle</b>	a machine in the kitchen that makes water hot	عائده [كهرتبه]
<b>turn on</b>	start a machine	يشغل [جها] أو آلة
<b>secret</b>	something that only you or a few people know	سر
<b>technology</b>	computers and mobile phones are examples of this	تكنولوجيا
<b>password</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a special word or letters that you write before you can use a computer or website</li> <li>A word or numbers you use to go onto a website</li> </ul>	كلمة سر

### Vocabulary Study

#### Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

الكلمة	المترادف	المضاد
popular	famous - known	unpopular - unknown
turn on	switch on	turn off - switch off
safe	protected	unsafe - dangerous

#### Prefix & Suffix مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

المقطع	الوظيفة	أمثلة
un -	تعطي عكس المعنى	unpopular
- er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	poster
- al	تكون الصفة من الاسم	personal
- tion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	instructions



### Exercises

#### on Vocabulary study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The prefix **un -** forms the opposite of the word "popular".  
a. il -      b. dis -      c. un -      d. ir -
- We use the suffix **- tion** to form the noun from the verb "post".  
a. - ed      b. - er      c. - ness      d. - ment
- The word "famous" has the same meaning of ".....".  
a. unknown      b. popular      c. ancient      d. strong



4. The opposite of "turn off" is . . . . .  
 a. turn up      b. turn down      c. turn on      d. turn
5. We add the suffix . . . . . to form the noun of the verb instruct.  
 a. - ion      b. - less      c. - ment      d. - er



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### ► safe / save

\* safe (adj)

أمن

- - To stay **safe online**, keep your password secret.

\* save (d) (v)

ينقذ - يوفر / يدخر

- - The man **saved** the child from drowning (الغرق).

- He **saves** a lot of money to buy a bike. *Reading on lesson 6 SB page 42*



تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
stay safe	يبقى آمناً	think about	بفكر في [موضوع]
keep ... password secret	يحافظ على سرية كلمة السر	the rest of	الباقي من
look interesting	يبدو رائع / شيق	agree with	يتفق مع
answer a phone call from ....	يرد على مكالمة تليفونية من ....	friends with	بكون صداقات مع
give instructions	يُعطى تعليمات	worried about	قلق بشأن
tap the send icon	انقر على أيقونه الإرسال	take out	يخرج
Say hello!	قل مرحباً!	a cup of tea	كوب من الشاي
go online	يتصل بالإنترنت	ask for help	يطلب مساعدة
easy to read	سهل القراءة	go onto a website	يدخل على موقع إلكتروني



## II Skills

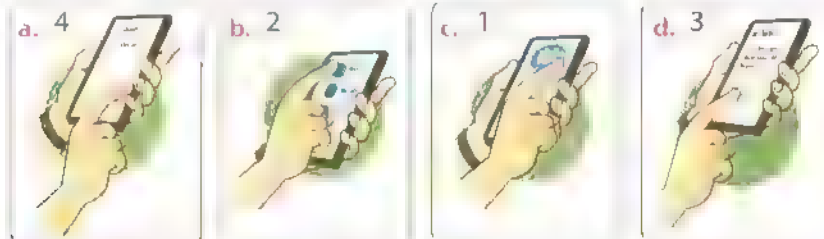
### Reading and Listening

#### Reading

- on Lesson 5 SB page 41

#### 1. How to send a text message<sup>(1)</sup> :

First, **tap** the messages icon. Tap the name of the **person** . Write your text message. Then tap the **SEND icon**<sup>(4)</sup>



(1) رسالة نصية (2) يفتح (3) شخص (4) أيقونة إرسال

#### 2. How to make a video call :

- Turn your tablet on<sup>(5)</sup>.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Say Hello!



#### 3. How to make a cup of tea :

- First, put some water in a **kettle**<sup>(6)</sup>. **Boil** / the water. Put the hot water in a cup with a tea bag. Take out the tea bag. Then, drink the tea.



(5) يشغل جهاز (6) غلاية كهربائية (7) يغلي



- on Lesson 6 SB page 42

### Stay safe when you use technology

- Keep your **password**<sup>(1)</sup> **secret**<sup>(2)</sup>.
- Don't make friends with people you don't know **online**<sup>(3)</sup>.
- Don't tell people your **personal information**<sup>(4)</sup> (e.g. telephone number).
- Don't send photos to people you don't know.
- Ask for help from a **parent**<sup>(5)</sup> or teacher.
- Don't answer a phone call or **video call** from someone you don't know.
- Tell a parent or teacher if you are **worried about** something.



Do (✓)	Don't (X)
• Keep your password secret.	• Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

كلمة السر

(2) سر

(3) متصل بالإنترنت

(4) معلومات شخصية

أحد الوالدين

(6) مكالمة فيديو

(7) قلق بشأن

- on Lesson 5 WB page 99

- Mum : **Come** here, please Ali.  
 Ali : Yes, Mum. What is it ?  
 Mum : Stop playing on your phone and listen to me.  
 I need you to do something.  
 Ali : Yes, OK. What do you want me to do ?  
 Mum : Please **go** to the shop, **buy** some sugar, **take** it to your grandmother's house, **help** her make a cake and then **send** me a text message when you want to come home.



### on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► Key vocabulary

1. It's important to keep your ..... secret on the internet.  
 a. passport      b. dress      c. password      d. school
2. You should follow your teacher's ..... inside the classroom.  
 a. rooms      b. instructions      c. shops      d. meals



3. Football is the most ..... sport in Egypt.  
a. popular      b. strange      c. colourful      d. slow
4. Good students shouldn't ..... litter in the school playground.  
a. stir      b. drop      c. let      d. answer
5. I used the electric ..... to make a cup of tea.  
a. cattle      b. kettle      c. battle      d. beetle

► **SB , WB & Previous Exams**

6. .... safe online is very important. *(Moasser - Ben Snief 2020)*  
a. Staying      b. Doing      c. Making      d. Saying
7. .... Don't tell people you don't know your telephone number or your information. *(Multidisciplinary - North Sinai 2021)*  
a. personal      b. sunny      c. worried      d. colourful
8. .... Tell your parents or a teacher if you are ..... about something on the internet.  
a. scary      b. far      c. popular      d. worried
9. .... Don't ..... a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. *(Husshala - The Red Sea 2022)*  
a. take      b. answer      c. ask      d. write

► **El-Moasser Exercises** **تدريبات كتاب المعاصر**

10. Our teacher ..... us instructions on how to use the tablet.  
a. gave      b. played      c. asked      d. followed
11. You shouldn't ..... friends with bad people.  
a. do      b. make      c. deal      d. give
12. It's dangerous to ..... photos to people you don't know.  
a. search      b. make      c. send      d. draw

► **Definitions**

13. A/An ..... is something that only you or a few people know.  
a. icon      b. secret      c. font      d. poster
14. To ..... means to start a machine.  
a. turn up      b. turn off      c. turn down      d. turn on

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. If you have a problem, you can ..... your parents or teachers for help.  
a. ask      b. answer      c. boil      d. read
16. How can you ..... your poster easy to read ?  
a. take      b. make      c. break      d. give



## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### ► Giving instructions :

إعطاء التعليمات :

(!) يمكن استخدام [imperative] صيغة الأمر المثبت أو المنفى لإعطاء التعليمات.

1. Keep your password secret. احفظ بسريته كلمة المرور الخاصة بك.
2. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. لا تصادق / تصاحب أشخاص لا تعرفهم على الإنترنت.
3. Study your lessons. ذاكر دروسك.
4. Don't make noise. لا تسبب ضوضاء.



### Pop Quiz

on Speaking

#### • Complete the following dialogue :

*Farida is making a cake for her daughter's birthday.*

Randa : Hi, Farida. How are you today ?

Farida : Hi, Randa. (1) .....

Randa : (2) ..... ?

Farida : I am looking at a website.

Randa : (3) ..... ?

Farida : Because I want to make a cake.

Randa : A cake ! (4) ..... ?

Farida : For our daughter's birthday party.

Randa : (5) .....

Farida : Thank you.

## 3. Writing

كتابة الخطبة

### How you stay safe online كيف تبقى آمنا عبر الإنترنت

1. Technology has become very important in our daily life. لقد أصبحت التكنولوجيا مهمة جدا في حياتنا اليومية.
  2. We all need technology. نحتاج جميعا إلى التكنولوجيا.
  3. We need to stay safe when we use technology. نحتاج إلى أن يبقى بأمان عندما نستخدم التكنولوجيا.
  4. You should keep your password secret. يجب أن نحفظ نبي سرية كلمة مرور الخاصة بك.
- You shouldn't make friends with people you don't know online.  
لا يجب أن تكون صداقات عبر الإنترنت مع أشخاص لا تعرفهم.



6. You shouldn't tell people you don't know your personal information.  
لا يجب أن تخبر الأشخاص ،الذين لا يعرفهم عن معلوماتك الشخصية.
7. You shouldn't send photos to people you don't know.  
لا ينبغي إرسال صور لأشخاص الذين لا تعرفهم.
8. You shouldn't answer phone calls or video calls from anyone you don't know.  
لا ينبغي أن ترد على المكالمات الهاتفية أو الفيديو من أي شخص لا تعرفه
9. Tell a parent or teacher if you feel worried about something.  
خبر احد والديك او المعلم إذا شعرت بالقلق حيال امر ما
10. Use strong password.  
استخدم كلمة مرور قوية.

## Language

### Imperative

<p>الأمر بصيغته</p> <p>Inf + ... + ...</p> <p><b>ex.</b> - Keep your password secret. - Close the window. - Sit down.</p>	<p><b>Imperative</b></p> <p>صيغة الأمر</p>	<p>الأمر المنعني</p> <p>Don't + ... + inf.</p> <p><b>ex.</b> - Don't make noise. - Don't play in the street. - Don't go out.</p>
---	--	--

- لاحظ أن :

يمكن استخدام (Never) في صيغة الأمر المنعني بدلاً من (Don't) ويليهما أيضاً (المصدر inf.).

**ex.** Never leave your bag open.

## Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. .... make friends with people you don't know online.

a. Don't

b. Not

c. Always

d. Doesn't

Answer: 1. Never (Daskalika 2022)



2. To make a video call, ..... on your tablet. (Mubassir / Punjab - Bahetia 2021)  
a. tap                      b. taps                      c. tapping                      d. tapped
3. .... for help from a parent or a teacher. (Baltim / Kapt / J. Shresh 2020)  
a. Asking                      b. Asked                      c. Ask                      d. Asks
4. .... make noise in the library. (Badrushin / Guza 2022)  
a. Didn't                      b. Aren't                      c. Haven't                      d. Don't
5. Don't ..... photos to people you don't know.  
a. sent                      b. sending                      c. send                      d. sends

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

6. Don't go out now. .... here.  
a. Waiting                      b. Wait                      c. Waits                      d. Waited
7. Don't ... food that is unhealthy.  
a. eats                      b. eat                      c. eating                      d. ate
8. .... quiet when your father is asleep.  
a. Keep                      b. To keep                      c. Keeping                      d. Kept
9. Don't ... the road here. It's dangerous.  
a. crosses                      b. crossing                      c. cross                      d. to cross
10. .... your laptop to make a poster.  
a. Used                      b. Use                      c. Using                      d. Uses

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

► **SB , WB and Previous Exams**

1. I Keep your password secret. (Lisa / Iama - Ghannem 2020 - Ansh / Guza 2023 - Wafa / Zarg - e / Shresh 2020) ( ..... )
2. First, putting some water in a kettle. (Amr / Shams - Cairo 2020 - South / G. / Guza 2023 / Naser - Hene / Nae 2023) ( ..... )
3. Doesn't tell people your personal information. (Nasser / Hene / Nae 2020) ( ..... )
4. Didn't waste your time playing games. (Rafah - North / Sima 2020) ( ..... )

► **El-Moasser Exercises** تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Checking your answer after you write it. ( ..... )
6. I found a box. Guessed what was in it. ( ..... )
7. Always sleep late to get up early. ( ..... )
8. Don't forgot your school objects. ( ..... )



# General Exercises

LESSONS

5 & 6

● Understand

● Create



## 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali and Eman are talking about computers and laptops.

Ali : Hello, Eman. How are you ?

Eman : (1) .....

Ali : (2) ..... ?

Eman : The computer is bigger than the laptop.

Ali : (3) ..... ?

Eman : We can use the computer at schools, hospitals and banks.

Ali : Is it useful to use a computer ?

Eman : (4) .....

Ali : Do you like playing computer games ?

Eman : (5) .....

(East Mansoura - Dakahlia 2023)

## 2 Read the following, then answer the following :

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use **it** every day. We can send messages, do search and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g. telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a **parent** or a teacher.

### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You should keep your ..... secret.

a. text

b. email

c. postcard

d. password

2. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to .....

a. telephone

b. information

c. call

d. technology

3. The underlined word "**parent**" means , ..... ,

a. mum or dad

b. uncle

c. teacher

d. mum's sister

### b. Answer the following questions :

4. What should you do when you are in trouble ?

5. What is the main idea of the passage ?

6. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online ?



**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- 1. A ..... is something you don't want to tell people about.  
a. truth                      b. lie                      c. story                      d. secret  
*(East Mansoura – Dakahlia 2023)*
- 2. Your ..... is a word or numbers you use to go onto a website.  
a. passport                      b. book                      c. bag                      d. password  
*(Nag Hammadi – Qena 2023 – Kona Ombu – Aswan 2023)*
- 3. To send a text message, first tap the ..... icon.  
a. videos                      b. online                      c. websites                      d. messages
- 4. ..... on a machine means to start it.  
a. Turning                      b. Turn                      c. Turns                      d. Turned
- 5. Never ..... your brother's tools without asking.  
a. takes                      b. taking                      c. took                      d. take
- 6. ..... tell people online your telephone number.  
a. Didn't                      b. Doesn't                      c. Don't                      d. Does
- 7. The brave man ..... the boy from the fire. *(Rafah – North Sinai 2022)*  
a. sent                      b. saved                      c. sailed                      d. said
- 8. To make tea, first ..... water well.  
a. taste                      b. boil                      c. give                      d. dry
- 9. It is important to stay ..... online.  
a. safe                      b. save                      c. weak                      d. hot
- 10. I don't agree ..... you. Let's try fix the car.  
a. with                      b. for                      c. on                      d. at

**4 Read and correct the underlined words**

- 1. Don't forgot doing your homework. ( ..... )
- 2. Didn't be rude with new students. *(Mostakbal – Cairo 2023)* ( ..... )
- 3. Helping your parents with housework. ( ..... )
- 4. Turns your tablet on. ( ..... )

**5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) on "Your favourite place"**





# Review

مراجعة

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

## Vocabulary

### Lessons 1 & 2

laptop computer (n) كمبيوتر محمول  
tablet (n) كمبيوتر لوحي  
mobile phone (n) هاتف محمول  
selfie (n) صورة فونوغرافية بالكاميرا الأمامية للتعليق

mouse (n) فأرة  
printer (n) الطابعة  
3D printers الطابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد

whiteboard (n) سبورة بيضاء  
classmate (n) زميل فصل  
email (n) رسالة بريد إلكتروني

technology (n) تكنولوجيا  
phone charger (n) شاحن الهاتف  
MP3 player (n) مشغل الأغاني

website (n) موقع إلكتروني  
click (ed) (v) انقر  
tap (ped) (v) يضغط

icon (n) أيقونة - رمز  
model (n) نموذج

insects (n) حشرات  
put up (phrv) يرفع  
action (n) عمل / فعل

mime (d) (v) يلد يومياً

### Lessons 3 & 4

safe (adj) حصار  
message icon (n) أيقونة الإرسال  
secret (adj) (n) سري - سر

personal (adj) شخصي

wave (d) (v)

nature (n)

eagle (n)

advice (n)

programme (n)

lunch time (n)

sunny (adj)

Lessons 5 & 6

drink (n), (v)

world (n)

popular (adj)

instructions (n)

heading (n)

boil (ed) (v)

drop (ped) (v)

kettle (n)

SEND icon (n)

password (n)

safe (adj)

message icon (n)

secret (adj) (n)

personal (adj)

## Language

### 1. There is / There are

يوجد  
طبيعة  
سر  
صبغة  
برناج

يوجد (اسم غير معدود) / اسم مفرد + اسم جمع  
There are + اسم جمع

There is + اسم مفرد  
There are + اسم جمع

- There is a book on the table.  
- There isn't any sugar.  
- There are some pens.  
- There aren't any books.

وقت الغداء  
شمس  
مشروب - ينرب  
العالم  
شائع / مشهور  
تعليمات  
عنوان رئيسي

يغلي  
يسقط  
غلاية إلكترونية  
عوه يسال  
شمة اسبر

He / She / It am  
اسم مفرد + is  
We / You / They are  
اسم جمع + ing

I'm playing football now.

- She isn't sitting next to her friend.  
- Is Hala making a video call?  
- Yes, she is. - No, she isn't.

أص  
أعوبة الإرسال  
سري - سر  
شخصي



# Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

## Extracting information



حسب أسئلة قطعة ألهم مهاره الفراءه ومدى انفاك لمهاره الفراءه.



النحدي قد تجد صعوبة في استخراج معلومه.



نفسح حسب عند قراءه الفقره نجد أن الإحاجه مسه على ما ورد في القطعه.



اقرأ وقم بالإحاجه متبقا الحطوه الأولى.

### ► Read and answer the questions :

Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher. Everyone should follow these tips to stay safe online.

- What should you do when you have a problem online ?

or

- What is the best thing to do if you have a problem online ?

اقرأ وتعلم كيفيه الإحاجه.

### ► Read and learn how to answer:

Wael loves technology! His favourite hobby is playing video games. He usually plays them on his laptop, but sometimes he plays them on his mobile phone. His favourite lesson at school is computer studies.

- What does Wael do on his mobile phone ?

or

- What does Wael use his mobile phone for ?

or

- What can Wael do with his mobile phone ?

- **He plays video games on his mobile phone.**



مذكرة

تم ذكر في النص أن الهobby المفضل هو اللعب  
بألعاب الفيديو في الحامه



## Technology

بمختار سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها

تريد

أقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

أقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

الحوار بينك وبين زميلك في الفصل.

السؤال	الإجابة	الاستخدام	وصف
What is in your classroom ?	There are two laptops.		
Do you use tablets at school ?	Yes, we often use them.		
What are you doing now ?	I'm using my mobile phone.		التكنولوجيا
Why do you need a mobile phone in your daily life ?	To communicate with other people.		في حجرة الدراسة
Can you take a selfie ?	Yes I'll send you one of my photos		

Aya asks Nora about her phone.

Aya Have you got a mobile phone, Nora ?

Nora : 1

Aya : 2

I bought it two months ago.

Aya Do you think technology is important in our life ?

Aya : 4

Because it helps us do many things in our daily life.

Aya : Why do you need a mobile in your daily life ?

Nora : 5



3

## Writing



حضر سؤال كتابة المقرة الإنشائية في معرفتك للتعبير عن موضوع ما.



نحسب تريد كتابة موضوع عن شمسك و شمسك وتجد صعوبة في كتابه عدة جمل عنها.



شرح احب يحب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية وكيفية استخدامها في تكوين حمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب

## Topic

## Review your vocabulary

## Write the meaning.

الطبيعة

الفسحة

مبنى

حديقة عامة

المشيته

لنطق صوتا

يستخدم

معلومات شخصية

كلمة سر

مفيد

نصائح

يرسل

## Nature

1. I like ..... and watching the trees, animals, flowers.
2. I enjoy my time when I am at a ..... or garden.
3. I love ..... I like being in the garden.
4. At school, I always go outside at .....
5. I don't like being in a .....

Write an email about :  
"Using the internet"

1. Keep your ..... secret.
2. Using the internet is very .....
3. Don't ..... your photos to people you don't know.
4. Never tell your ..... to others.
5. There are many ..... , we should follow to be safe.

لترتيب ملفاتي على جهازه اكتروني



اختبار من اختبارات المحافظة على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- My mother of tea. some water to make a cup  
a. pee-ed b. boiled c. built d. froze  
a password b. icon c. secret d. mouse
- I forgot my mobile . I can't use it.
- My teacher taught me how to avoid grammar
- a. mistakes b. names c. recipes d. sports
- ... come late again. Didn't a. Not b. Doesn't c. Didn't d. Don't
- any printers? a. There is b. Is there c. Are there d. There are
- Listen! The baby ... . Let's see him.  
a. cry b. cries c. is crying d. cried
- An email is a simple internet. sent through the  
a. subject b. blog c. message d. past
- Can you this puzzle alone?  
a. take b. have c. give d. do
- Tom is writing about his weekend in his online
- a. 3D printer b. diary c. mouse d. laptop

- To stay safe, don't people you don't know.  
a. do b. make c. give d. take
- Read and correct the underlined words :  
1. Maha ate lunch now. ( )  
2. There aren't some cheese in the fridge. ( )  
3. She is sitting next too her friend. ( )  
4. Keeping quiet in the class ( )  
5. Is there any nuts in the cupboard ? ( )  
6. Heba and Dalia watch TV now. ( )  
7. There isn't any tables. ( )  
8. Don't drank water from the canal. ( )  
9. I was listening to music now. ( )  
10. Is there some milk in the fridge ? ( )



### A. Listening

**1** Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



(اسمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة. بطوح الاستماع من بهانه إجابات)

1. Soha loves .....  
a. video games    b. break    c. nature    d. phone
2. She likes ... the trees and animals.  
a. looking    b. watching    c. walking    d. being
3. She ..... being in the garden.  
a. likes    b. plays    c. doesn't like    d. works
4. She likes looking at the ...  
a. garden    b. house    c. sky    d. zoo

### B. Language Functions

**2** Complete the following dialogue :

**Eyad is asking Emad about technology in his classroom.**

**Eyad :** What is in your classroom ?

**Emad :** (1) .....

**Eyad :** Do you use tablets in your classroom ?

**Emad :** (2) .....

**Eyad :** (3) ..... ?

**Emad :** I'm looking for information on the internet.

**Eyad :** About what ?

**Emad :** (4) ...

**Eyad :** (5) ?

**Emad :** No, mobiles are not allowed in class.

### C. Reading Comprehension

**3** Read the following, then answer the questions :

My family members love technology. My brother Youssef is playing chess online. He is winning at the moment. I am doing my computer studies homework. I'm looking at websites for information about 3D



printers. My mum and sister, Sama are taking selfies. **They**'re sending one of their photos to my grandmother on her mobile phone. My dad is **sending** an email to my uncle in the USA. My uncle lives in New York. He is an electrical engineer in a company. He has got two daughters and a son called Tamer. Tamer is a student in the Faculty of Medicine.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**sending**" is .....  
 a. going      b. receiving      c. making      d. doing
2. My uncle lives in the .....  
 a. UAE      b. ARE      c. USA      d. KSA
3. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to .....  
 a. Youssef and Sama      b. Sama and her mum  
 c. Tamer and Youssef      d. Tamer and Sama

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What does the passage talk about ?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. Is Youssef a winner or a loser ?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
6. Do you think the internet is useful for the writer ? Why ?  
 \_\_\_\_\_

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The mobile and the internet are forms of .....  
 a. archaeology      b. snacks      c. technology      d. meal
2. To send a text message, \_\_\_\_\_ the send icon.  
 a. tap      b. say      c. take      d. put
3. Write ..... for how to make a cup of tea.  
 a. jobs      b. messages      c. icons      d. instructions
4. .... for help if you are in trouble.  
 a. Do      b. Ask      c. Take      d. Make
5. When you meet someone, ...., ...., "Hello!"  
 a. give      b. click      c. say      d. tap

(Armani - Uncor 2022)



- 6. ... to the front, please Dina.  
a. Coming      b. Comes      c. Came      d. Come
- 7. ... there any money with you ?  
a. Are      b. Is      c. Aren't      d. Am
- 8. At the moment, Ali ... to music.  
a. listen      b. is listening      c. listening      d. listens
- 9. He is good at ... friends with others easily.  
a. making      b. giving      c. doing      d. having
- 10. ... Are you ... a dictionary ?—Yes, of course.  
a. doing      b. using      c. sitting      d. running

**5** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. There is any cheese is the fridge ? (Nayer - Beni Suef 2023) ( ... )
2. She is watches a nice programme now. (El Senbellweh - Dakahlia 2023) ( ... )
3. Doesn't eat fast food; it is unhealthy. (Hinghadi - Red Sea 2022) ( ... )
4. Who do Adam sending a message to ? ( ... )

**E. Writing**

**6** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

**"How to stay safe online"**

Qalsab - Qalsabia 2023 - Al-Awsat - Cairo 2022 - Dar El Salam - Sohag 2023 - Samir - Fayoum 2022



# Stop here !

## Mini-Test on unit 1 for Al-Azhar students

Page 1 of 1

**1** Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues .

A. Ayman : Is there a laptop in your classroom ?

Ashraf : \_\_\_\_\_ .

B. Abdo \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Helmy : I am reading an adventure story.

**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Do you have ..... friends ?

a. a                      b. some                      c. an                      d. any

2. Listen ! He ..... the guitar.

a. plays                      b. is playing                      c. played                      d. play

3. Some ..... are useful like bees. They make honey !

a. technology                      b. hobbies                      c. insects                      d. devices

4. Don't ..... messages to people you don't know.

a. send                      b. sending                      c. sends                      d. sent

5. You have to keep your ..... secret.

a. colour                      b. password                      c. newspaper                      d. instructions

6. I took a/an ..... with a famous footballer with my father's mobile phone.

a. advice                      b. icon                      c. email                      d. selfie

**3** Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

***"Using technology at school"***

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Faies and Alaa are talking about technology.

Faies : What do you think about technology ?

Alaa : (1) .....

- a It is very old
- b It's very useful
- c I am very fast
- d You're right

Faies : (2) .....

- a Do you have a mobile phone
- b Is it far
- c Do you prefer swimming
- d Have you got a tablet

Alaa : Yes. I have a new mobile phone.

Faies : (3) .....

- a Why do you need a mobile phone
- b When do you study
- c Why are you late
- d How often do you use your mobile phone

Alaa : I use it to do research and take pictures.

Faies : How much time do you spend on your mobile phone ?

Alaa : (4) .....

- a About 100 cm
- b About 30 km/h
- c About two hours
- d About 30 m

Faies : How can you stay safe online ?

Alaa : (5) .....

- a Do sport every day
- b Eat healthy food
- c Never make noise
- d Keep my password secret

2. Choose the correct form of the underlined word(s) from a, b, c or d :

6. Are there any sugar ?

- a Do
- b Did
- c Is
- d Have

7. They work at the moment.

- a works
- b worked
- c working
- d. are working

8. Didn't tell anyone your password.

- a Don't
- b Aren't
- c Haven't
- d Doesn't

9. There is a cat next of our door.

- a behind
- b. in front
- c across
- d under



## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Who is your favourite sports star ?
 

a. Mohamed Salah	b. Shikaballa
c. Abuo Trika	d. Messi
2. What is he good at ?
 

a. Drawing	b. Singing
c. Scoring goals	d. Reading
3. How tall is he ? - He is ..... metres tall.
 

a. 1.75	b. 1.57	c. 2.75	d. 1.00
---------	---------	---------	---------
4. Who does he like to talk to ?
 

a. His enemies	b. His fans
c. His friends	d. His players

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Alaa about his favourite sport.

Ahmed : What's your favourite sport ?

Alaa : (1) .....

Ahmed : (2) ..... are you good at it ?

Alaa : Because my hands are (3) ..

Ahmed : Where do you practise handball ?

Alaa : I play it in the club.

Ahmed : How (4) ..... do you practise it ?

Alaa : Twice a week.

Ahmed : Can I play with you ?

Alaa : Yes, of (5) .....



### C. Reading Comprehension

**3** Read the following then answer the questions :

The person I admire in my family is my grandfather. He was born in 1940. He worked as a doctor. He worked in a big hospital. All people there liked him because he was kind and helpful. I admire him because he did voluntary work and helped people for no money. I like him because he gave me many presents and helped me a lot. He used to help the poor and give them money. He always advised me to help people all the times. When he died last year, people were all sad. He left all his money for poor people and asked us to build a hospital for them.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- The underlined word "admire" means .....  
 a. dislike                      b. hate                      c. kill                      d. love
- My grandfather asked us to build a ..... for the poor.  
 a. hospital                      b. club                      c. school                      d. home
- I like my grandfather because he gave me many .....  
 a. money                      b. presents                      c. flowers                      d. cards

**b. Answer the following questions :**

- Give a suitable title for the passage.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you think the writer's grandfather is helpful ? How ?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- What does the underlined word "him" refer to ?  
 \_\_\_\_\_

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d

- He has got long ..... hair.  
 a. stress                      b. straight                      c. street                      d. stressed
- She has got a ..... on her face.  
 a. smell                      b. fan                      c. smile                      d. star
- They ..... got a new car this week.  
 a. were                      b. have                      c. are                      d. has





4. A dolphin is a friendly ..... animal.  
a. wild                      b. land                      c. sea                      d. plant
5. Camels are very ..... They can carry 200 kilos of bags !  
a. tall                      b. short                      c. weak                      d. strong
6. Don't ..... noise in the library.  
a. do                      b. look                      c. take                      d. make
7. He isn't ..... his lessons.  
a. studied                      b. studies                      c. study                      d. studying
8. That old man has got a ..... because he can't walk.  
a. stair                      b. ladder                      c. wheelchair                      d. sticks
9. You shouldn't tell people your ..... information.  
a. personality                      b. personal                      c. personally                      d. public
10. Basant is watching the film .....  
a. now                      b. yesterday                      c. ago                      d. last week

**5** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. She is called Mona on the phone. (       )
2. They eat lunch at the moment. (       )
3. There are a printer on the desk. (       )
4. Is there any books over there ? (       )

**6** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

***"Forms of technology"***

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---





# 5

## Holidays

SB pages 44-53

WB page

### Objectives :

#### • Reading :

A description of a holiday;

#### • Writing :

An advertisement for a holiday; an email about a holiday;

#### • Listening :

about a day out;

#### • Speaking :

Describing a place; talking about a holiday; responding to RWE;

#### • Language :

The past simple

#### • Values :

Respect

#### • Issues :

Environmental awareness



# 1 & 2

SB pages 44 : 47  
WB pages 102 & 103



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

jungle (n)	أدغال / غابة كثيفة الأشجار	beach (n)	شاطئ
desert (n)	صحراء	sand (n)	رمل
activity (n)	نشاط	river (n)	نهر
tent (n)	خيمة	rock (n)	صخرة
cave (n)	كهف	sandcastle (n)	قلعة من الرمل
forest (n)	غابة	waterfall (n)	شلال



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

sandcastles - desert - cave - waterfalls

1. You can find a lot of camels in the .....
2. A large hole inside a mountain is called a .....
3. Children like to build ..... on the beach.

### Lesson 1

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 102

number (ed) (v), (n)	يرقم - رقم	lake (n)	بحيرة
map (n)	خريطة	turn (ed) (v), (n)	يدور - دور
echo (n)	صدى الصوت	bat (n)	حفاش

### Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 103

frightened (adj)	خائف / مرعوب	picnic (n)	برهة خلوية
weather (n)	طقس	fantastic (adj)	رائع
hotel (n)	فندق	warm (adj)	دافئ



### Activities

### أنشطة

climb a mountain	يتسلق جبلاً	play games	يلعب ألعاب
eat delicious food	يأكل طعاماً لذيذاً	ride a bike	يركب دراجة
go in / into a cave	يدخل كهفاً	ride on a camel	يركب على جمل
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة في الهواء الطلق	visit a family	يزور أسرة
make a sandcastle	يبنى قلعة من الرمال	swim in the lake	يسبح في البحيرة

### Famous places

### أماكن مشهورة

Sahara Desert	صحراء صحارى [الصحراء الكبرى]	Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر
Djara cave	كهف الجارة	Marrakesh (n)	مراكش [مدينة في دولة المغرب]
Siwa	واحة سيوة		

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

### تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
ride يركب	rode	ridden

### Study these definitions

### ادرس هذه التعريفات

beach	the area of sand or small stones in front of the sea	شاطئ
camel	a desert animal of Africa and Asia with a long neck	جمل
delicious	tasting very nice	لذيذ
desert	a very dry place where it does not often rain	صحراء
forest	a large area with lots of trees close together	غابة
game	an activity or competition that you play with one or more people	لعبة
lake	a large natural area of water, with land all around	بحيرة
mountain	a high area of land, higher than the land around it	جبل
jungle	a tropical forest with lots of plants and trees	أدغال
waterfall	the part of a river where the water falls down from a high place	شلال
cave	an opening in a large rock or mountain	كهف
picnic	a lunch that you prepare yourself to take on a trip and eat outside	نزهة [خلوية]
river	water that flows naturally from the mountains to the sea	نهر



<b>sand</b>	very small pieces of rock that you find next to a river or the sea	رمال
<b>sandcastle</b>	a building made of sand	قلعة من الرمال
<b>sea</b>	the salt water that covers a large part of the Earth	بحر
<b>tent</b>	something that you can sleep in when you go camping	خيمة

### Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات			
الكلمة	المترادف	المضاد	
near	قريب	close	بعيد
go into	يدخل	go in / enter	يخرج
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	فطير
		terrible	

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية		
المقطع	الوظيفة	أمثلة
ir -	تعطي عكس المعنى	irregular غير منظم



### on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The prefix "ir" can be used to get the opposite of "regular".  
a. un-      b. il-      c. in-      d. ir-
- The opposite of "close" is ".....".  
a. light      b. regular      c. far      d. near
- The synonym of "near" is ".....".  
a. fantastic      b. far      c. close      d. weak
- Mum makes delicious food. The antonym of "delicious" is ".....".  
a. terrible      b. tasty      c. noisy      d. heavy
- You go into the museum from its entrance. The synonym of "go into" is ".....".  
a. watch      b. go up      c. enter      d. visit





## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 beach - coast

- \* **beach** شاطئ / بلاج [يصلح للمصيف والسباحة وفضاء أوقات ممتعة]  
 ▶ - Hurghada has beautiful **beaches**.
- \* **coast** ساحل بجوار البحر [قد يكون غير مؤهل للسباحة]  
 ▶ - Alexandria lies on the north **coast** of Egypt.

### 2 Would ('d) you like to + inf.

يود أن

- ▶ A : Where **would you like to go** ?
- B : I **would ('d) like to go** to the beach.

### 3 journey - trip - picnic

- \* **journey** رحلة طويلة  
 ▶ - The **journey** from Cairo to Aswan takes a long time.
- \* **trip** رحلة قصيرة  
 ▶ - I went on a **trip** to Alexandria for two days.
- \* **picnic** نزهة خلوية في الهواء الطلق  
 ▶ - I had a **picnic** in Al-Azhar Park. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 4b*

### 4 desert / dessert

- \* **desert** صحراء  
 ▶ - There are a lot of camels in the **desert**.
- \* **dessert** الحلوى (بعد الوجبات)  
 ▶ - I like having ice cream for the **dessert**.

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
have a fantastic holiday يقضي أجازة رائعة	think of يفكر في
That's right ! هذا صحيح	a place with a lot of sand مكان به الكثير من الرمال
That's easy ! هذا سهل !	frightened of خائف من
My turn ! إنه دوري	on the beach على الشاطئ
	call out ينادي بصوت عال



## H

## Skills

## Reading and Listening

## Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 45

**Taha** : Guess<sup>(1)</sup> where I am, Sara. I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees.

**Sara** : Are there monkeys in the trees ?

**Taha** : No. It's very dark<sup>(2)</sup> and quiet.

**Sara** : Are you in a forest<sup>(3)</sup> ?

**Taha** : Yes, I am!

**Sara** : My turn! I'm in a place with a lot of sand<sup>(4)</sup>.

**Taha** : I know! You're in the desert<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Sara** : No, I'm not. There isn't any water in the desert. There's a lot of water in my place.

**Taha** : You're on the beach<sup>(6)</sup>!

**Sara** : That's right!

**Taha** : Now, I'm in a dark place. When I speak, I can hear my words again and again.

Listen. (calls out with echo<sup>(7)</sup>) Hello !  
(echo comes twice).

**Sara** : That's easy. You're in a cave ! Can you see any bats<sup>(8)</sup> ?

**Taha** : No, I can't. It's very dark in here !



- 1 يخمن / يتوقع
- 2 مظلم
- 3 غابة (3)
- 4 رمال (4)
- 5 صحراء (5)
- 6 شاطئ (6)
- 7 صدى الصوت
- 8 خفافيش

## Listening skill

⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

• Sara is on the .....

- a. forest      b. cave      c. boat      d. beach



## Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 46

### My holiday photos

1. Last summer<sup>(1)</sup>, when the weather<sup>2</sup> was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada. Mariam made this sandcastle<sup>3</sup>. There was a cave<sup>(4)</sup> in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was frightened<sup>(5)</sup>.



2. In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious<sup>6</sup> food. Then we played games and Ali rode his bike.
3. When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake<sup>7</sup>, and climbed the mountain<sup>8</sup>. We saw camels and slept in a tent in the desert. It was my favourite holiday<sup>9</sup>!

- (1) فصل الصيف  
الطقس  
قلعة من الرمال  
كهف  
(5) خائف  
لذيذ  
بحيرة  
جبل  
إجازة مفضلة

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

- Extracting information

**Learn** 1. What did Ali do ?

*He rode his bike.*

**Practice** 2. Why didn't Mariam go into the cave ?

استخراج المعلومات



- on Lesson 2 WB page 103

Hi Eman,

Last summer, my family **had** a fantastic holiday in Morocco. We **visited** a big beach and then we **slept** in a nice hotel. We **didn't swim** in the sea. It **wasn't** very warm ! But I rode on a camel. That **was** fun. We **visited** a city called Marrakesh, too, and we **went** to a museum. We also **ate** some delicious food.

Write soon.

Hana



## Exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### ► Key vocabulary

- Drawing is my favourite ..... in my free time.  
a. sign                      b. activity                      c. map                      d. quiz
- The weather in the ..... is very hot at midday.  
a. waterfall                      b. desert                      c. rock                      d. desert
- When the water of the river falls from a high place, it's called .....  
a. waterwheel                      b. waterfall                      c. lake                      d. sea
- A ..... is a tropical forest with lots of plants and trees.  
a. waterfall                      b. jungle                      c. cave                      d. castle

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

- A ..... is a place inside a mountain. *(Kendasa Giza 2021)*  
a. river                      b. view                      c. cave                      d. park
- " ..... " are large areas with a lot of trees and bushes.  
a. Deserts                      b. Rivers                      c. Waterfalls                      d. Forests
- My family and I went to the beach and I ..... a sandcastle. *(Nasser Beni Sufi 2020)*  
a. made                      b. had                      c. climbed                      d. camped
- ..... are very strong animals as they can carry 200 kilos of bags. *(Multidisciplinary - Uthmania 2021)*  
a. Camels                      b. Giraffes                      c. Birds                      d. Crocodiles



► **El-Moasser Exercise**

9. They bought a ..... to help them get to the island.  
a. tent                      b. box                      c. prize                      d. map
10. In a cave, we can see .....  
a. bats                      b. seats                      c. sweets                      d. mountains
11. The ..... Nile is the longest one in the world.  
a. River                      b. Lake                      c. Beach                      d. Sea
12. We sleep in a ..... when we camp in the desert.  
a. hotel                      b. tent                      c. rock                      d. boat

► **Definitions**

13. .... is very small pieces of rock that you find next to a river or the sea.  
a. Sand                      b. Snow                      c. Water                      d. Dust
14. A ..... is a large natural area of water, with land all around.  
a. island                      b. lake                      c. pond                      d. forest

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. We had a ..... in Al-Azhar Park in Cairo.  
a. desert                      b. tent                      c. picnic                      d. bike
16. The train ..... from Luxor to Cairo was tiring.  
a. journey                      b. picnic                      c. tour                      d. flight

**2 Speaking**

مهارة التحدث

► **Describing a place you would like to go to :** وصف مكان تود الذهاب إليه :

Speaker	A	Speaker	B
• Where would you like to go ? أين تود الذهاب ؟		► - I'd like to go to the beach. أود الذهاب إلى الشاطئ.	
• What can you do there ? ماذا تستطيع فعله هناك ؟		► - I can swim in the sea. أستطيع السباحة في البحر.	
• What can you see there ? ماذا نستطيع رؤيته هناك ؟		► - I can see the beautiful view of the sea. أستطيع رؤية المنظر الجميل للبحر.	



## 3 Writing

### مهارة الكتابة

What places would you like to visit ? ما الأماكن التي تريد أن تزورها ؟

#### The beach الشاطئ

1. I would like to go to the beach. أود الذهاب إلى الشاطئ.
2. I want to swim in the sea. أريد السباحة في البحر.
3. I can build sandcastles on the beach. أستطيع بناء قللاع من الرمال على الشاطئ.
4. I like going diving. أحب ممارسة رياضة الغطس.
5. My brother doesn't like surfing as he is frightened of it. أخي لا يحب رياضة ركوب الأمواج لأنه يخاف من ذلك.

#### The forest الغابة

6. I would like to go to the forest. أحب الذهاب إلى الغابة.
7. There are many trees there. يوجد العديد من الأشجار هناك.
8. You can see a lot of beautiful birds there. يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الطيور الجميلة هناك.
9. You can see a lot of animals, too. يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات أيضًا.
10. There is a cave in the forest. يوجد كهف في الغابة.

#### Siwa سيوة

11. I would like to go to Siwa with my family. أود الذهاب لواحة سيوة مع عائلتي.
12. Siwa is a beautiful place for holidays. سيوة مكان جميل لقضاء الأجازات.
13. You can swim in the lake. يمكنك السباحة في البحيرة.
14. I like climbing the mountains there. أحب تسلق الجبال هناك.
15. You can see many camels there. يمكنك رؤية العديد من الجمال هناك.
16. We sleep in a tent in the desert. ننام في خيمة في الصحراء.



## Step 1

## Vocabulary

اختر اتفاقك للمفردات اللغوية

## Read and complete :

1. A: Where would you like to go ?

B: I would like to go to .... ?

حديقة الارمر

2. A: What can you do there ?

B: I can play games and

اسفل دراجتي

3. A: What would you like to see there ?

B: I would like to see a lot of

طيور

## Step 2

## Speaking

اختر مدى اتفاقك لمهارة التحدث

## Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Ali about a place he would like to go to.

Ahmed : Where would you like to go ?

Ali : 1)

Ahmed : 2)

Ali : I can play games and ride my bike in Al Azhar Park.

Ahmed : What would you like to see there ?

Ali : 3)

Ahmed : 4)

Ali : I go there on Friday.

Ahmed : Do you enjoy your time there ?

Ali : 5)

## Step 3

## writing

اختر مدى اتفاقك لمهارة الكتابة

## Write a paragraph on :

"A place you would like to go to"

"A place you would like to go"

Autr Saad 2023

## "A visit to the beach"

Hoda is asking Laila about her visit to the beach.

Hoda : Hi, Laila. What was the weather like yesterday ?

Laila : Hi, Hoda 1)

Where did you go ?

Laila : 2)

Hoda : 3)

Laila : I swam in the sea.

Hoda : What else did you do there ?

Laila : 4)

Hoda : 5)

Laila : Yes, we ate some delicious food.

"A visit to the beach"

Ghada - El-Saifi 2012





## Language

## The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

## Formation التكوين

1

## Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المثبتة

## (a) Regular verbs :

(أ) الأفعال المنتظمة :

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

⚡ لاحظ قواعد إضافة [d/ ed/ ied] للفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

الفعل المنتهي بـ	يضاف له	Example مثال
e [بعض الأفعال]	+ d	invite → invited
y [حرف ساكن]	+ ied	carry → carried
y [حرف متحرك]	+ ed	stay → stayed
[حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك]	بضاعف الحرف الأخير + ed	stop → stopped
بعض الأفعال لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير بها	+ ed	visit → visited

## (b) Irregular verbs :

(ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة مثل :

الفعل	الماضي	الفعل	الماضي
cut	cut	put	put
eat	ate	drink	drank
swim	swam	go	went
sleep	slept	ride	rode



- لاحظ أن :

يتم استخدام (verb to be) في زمن الماضي كالآتي :

I / He / she / It  $\xrightarrow{\text{فاعل مفرد}}$  was / wasn't

We / They / You  $\xrightarrow{\text{فاعل جمع}}$  were / weren't

ex. - Mariam was frightened of the cave.

- There were not (weren't) any cars on the beach.

◀ في حالة النفي نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

## 2 Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية  
المنفية

Subject + فاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

ex. - Rana didn't study her lessons yesterday.

- I didn't send an email to my friend last week.

- She didn't go to the beach.

[a] Yes/No questions : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

◀ في حالة الإستفهام باستخدام «هل» :

Did + subject + inf. .... ?  
الفاعل المصدر

ex. - Did you clean the car ?

- Yes, I did.

- No, I didn't.

## 3 Interrogative

صيغة  
الاستفهام

[b] Wh-questions : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

◀ أما في حالة الإستفهام باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية

Question word + did + subject + inf. .... ?  
كلمة الاستفهام الفاعل المصدر

ex. - What did you study ?

- Where did she go ?



## Key words كلمات داله

in the past في الماضي

ago منذ

yesterday أمس

in + سنة ماضيه {2000}

last

→ year السنة الماضية

→ month الشهر الماضي

→ week الأسبوع الماضي

→ Tuesday الثلاثاء الماضي

## Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في زمن الماضي.

ex. - Maha helped her mother with her work **last night**.

- She went to school two hours **ago**.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### SB , WB & Previous Exams

- Where ..... you when I phoned you ? *(East Monsoor - Dakahlia 2024)*  
a. are                      b. was                      c. is                      d. were
- Yesterday, dad ..... in the garden and drank his coffee.  
a. sit                      b. sat                      c. sits                      d. sitting *(Minya El Qamh - Sharkia 2024)*
- I ..... the new film two days ago. *(Tamiya - Fayoum 2024)*  
a. watches                      b. watching                      c. watched                      d. watch
- When I went to school, I ..... good at English.  
a. didn't                      b. don't                      c. can't                      d. wasn't
- Where ..... you go on holiday last year ? *(Giza 2022)*  
a. do                      b. did                      c. does                      d. done
- When I ..... eight, we went to Siwa. *(October - Giza 2022)*  
a. am                      b. were                      c. is                      d. was
- What did you ..... for dinner last night ?  
a. eat                      b. ate                      c. eats                      d. eating
- ..... you have a good weekend last week ? *(Sherbin-Dakahlia 2022)*  
a. Does                      b. Do                      c. Did                      d. Were



► **El-Moasser Exercises**

9. Salma worked very hard and ..... very well in the exam.  
a. do                      b. does                      c. doing                      d. did
10. Last October, we ..... my uncle and cousins in Cairo.  
a. visit                      b. visits                      c. visited                      d. visiting
11. Yesterday, we didn't ..... our lessons.  
a. studied                      b. study                      c. studying                      d. studies
12. Mazen ..... play well yesterday.  
a. didn't                      b. don't                      c. doesn't                      d. isn't
13. .... your friends ready for the exam last week ?  
a. Was                      b. Do                      c. Were                      d. Did
14. Who did you ..... after school last Thursday ?  
a. see                      b. sees                      c. saw                      d. seeing

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

► **SB , WB & Previous Exams**

1. Where did you yesterday ? (Monafia - July 2023) ( ..... )
2. She didn't went to school yesterday. (Giza - Dokki 2023) ( ..... )
3. Yara play tennis a week ago. (West Cairo 2020) ( ..... )
4. ~~There~~ There wasn't any cars on the beach. ( ..... )
5. She didn't found her missing ring. (Cairo - Helwan 2022) ( ..... )
6. ~~They~~ They didn't travel by car. They walk. ( ..... )

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

7. Where did you spent your holiday ? ( ..... )
8. Yesterday, I gives Ibrahim a present. ( ..... )
9. Did you bought a new jacket ? ( ..... )
10. My sister has a baby girl called Sara yesterday. ( ..... )





# General Exercises



## LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create



### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. We had a picnic at ..... last week.  
a. the cinema      b. Al Azhar Park      c. the sea      d. the jungle
2. We ate ..... food.  
a. delicious      b. terrible      c. warm      d. hot
3. Ali rode on a .....  
a. camel      b. bike      c. bus      d. train
4. We played .....  
a. tennis      b. football      c. games      d. handball

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Hassan about his last holiday.

Ahmed : Where did you go on holiday ?

Hassan : (1) .....

Ahmed : (2) ..... ?

Hassan : I swam in the sea and made a sandcastle.

Ahmed : (3) ..... ?

Hassan : I came back on Friday.

Ahmed : Did you take any photos ?

Hassan : (4) .....

Ahmed : Can I come with you the next time ?

Hassan : (5) .....

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A ..... is a hole in the mountain. (Gharbia - Basyouni 2024)  
a. lake      b. cave      c. river      d. forest
2. Where did you ..... yesterday ? (Fawzi 2024)  
a. went      b. go      c. goes      d. going



3. There ..... an exciting film on TV yesterday.  
a. were                      b. is                      c. be                      d. was
4. She ..... make noise as she was in the library.  
a. do                      b. does                      c. didn't                      d. isn't
5. There are a lot of trees in the .....  
a. jug                      b. jungle                      c. lake                      d. cave  
*(South Sinai 2020)*
6. They use a ..... to reach the far island.  
a. tent                      b. map                      c. camera                      d. cave
7. We swam in the lake and ..... the mountain.  
a. climbed                      b. went                      c. rode                      d. made
8. You should ..... your answers in each question in the exam.  
a. make                      b. check                      c. do                      d. go  
*(Sindh - El Maragha 2020)*
9. When I go to Alexandria, I enjoy sitting on the .....  
a. beach                      b. cave                      c. field                      d. mountain
10. There were camels in the .....  
a. desert                      b. sea                      c. river                      d. lake

**4 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Was your friends at the park yesterday ? (       )
2. They doesn't go to the museum last weekend. (       )
3. SB I go into the cave last week. ( ..... )
4. What did you ate for dinner last night ? (       )

**5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :**

**"A picnic at Al Azhar Park"**



# 3 & 4

SB pages 48 & 50  
WB pages 104 & 105



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

view (n)	منظر طبيعي	course (n)	دورة تدريبية
dolphin (n)	درفيل	castle (n)	قلعة
camp (ed) (v), (n)	معسكر / معسكر	students (n)	طلاب
souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية	advertisement (n)	إعلان
market (n)	سوق تجاري	holiday flat (n)	شقة لقضاء الإجازة



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلفازي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

advertisement - view - souvenir - camp

1. To ..... is to sleep in a tent in the desert.
2. There's a beautiful ..... by the lake.
3. I saw a / an ..... for a job in a company.

### Lesson 3

SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 104

Jordan (n)	دولة الأردن	sea animals (n)	الحيوانات البحرية	flag (n)	علم
------------	-------------	-----------------	-------------------	----------	-----

### Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 105

wonderful (adj)	رائع	language school (n)	مدرسة لغات
exciting (adj)	مثير	safari rides (n)	رحلات سفاري
activity (n)	نشاط	really (adv)	حقًا
London Eye (n)	بجعة في الملاهي [بلندن]	Germany (n)	دولة ألمانيا

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
come يأتي	came	come



Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>camp</b>	sleep outside in a tent	يعسكر
<b>castle</b>	a large, old building with towers	قلعة
<b>dolphin</b>	a grey sea animal that is very clever and can jump high	دولفين
<b>flag</b>	the colours of a country on a piece of material	علم
<b>hotel</b>	a building where you can pay for a room to sleep in for a night or longer	فندق
<b>queen</b>	a woman who rules a country	ملكة
<b>tower</b>	a tall, narrow part of a building	برج
<b>souvenir</b>	something that you buy to remember a place or an event you went to	هدية تذكارية
<b>view</b>	the things you can see from a certain place	مناظر طبيعي
<b>holiday flat</b>	an apartment you can stay in for a holiday, usually near the sea	شقة لقضاء الإجازة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/Opposite المضاد
here هنا	at this place	there هناك
beautiful جميل	cute - pretty	ugly قبيح
interesting شيق	exciting	boring مممل

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية

Prefix & Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
re -	تعطى معنى تكرار مرة أخرى	reorder يعيد ترتيب
- ment	تكون الاسم من الفعل	advertisement إعلان
- ful	تكون الصفة من الفعل	wonderful رائع
	تكون الصفة من الاسم	beautiful جميل





## Exercise 1

### on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- We add the suffix " " to get the noun from the word "advertise".  
a. -ion                      b. -ment                      c. -able                      d. -y
- You can make an adjective from the noun "beauty", by adding " ".  
a. -al                      b. -ful                      c. -ous                      d. -able
- I had a wonderful time at the park yesterday. The synonym of the word "wonderful" is ".....".  
a. ugly                      b. terrible                      c. horrible                      d. fantastic
- The antonym of the word "interesting" is ".....".  
a. exciting                      b. boring                      c. wonderful                      d. cute
- We use the prefix " " to give the meaning "do again".  
a. un-                      b. re-                      c. im-                      d. il-



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 in + لغة

- I can talk to my friends **in Arabic**.
- Tourists usually speak to sellers **in English**.

### 2 for + مدة زمنية

- I was at a language school **for four years**.

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
do a project	ينفذ مشروع	go on a holiday	ينذهب في أجازة
find out	يكتشف	by the lake = next to the lake	بجوار البحيرة
have a great holiday	يقضي أجاره رائعة	at the top	من أعلى القمة
have a wonderful time	يقضي وقتاً ممتعاً	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
make a list	يعد قائمة	a view of	منظر لـ
climb up	يصعد	from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
		= from all over the world	



## Reading and Listening

## Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 48

**Hatem** : Hi, Yunis! How was your holiday ?

**Yunis** : Hi, Hatem! It was great, thanks !

**Hatem** : Where did you go ?

**Yunis** : I went to **Jordan** by plane.

**Hatem** : Wow! Did you visit your family there ?

**Yunis** : No, we stayed in a **holiday flat** by the beach. We had a wonderful **view** from the windows. Every morning, I saw dolphins in the sea.

**Hatem** : Did you swim in the sea ?

**Yunis** : Yes, we did. We swam every day ! We used a **map** and read a book about Jordan, and we visited a lot of famous places. We went to this old **castle** . Look, here's a picture of it on my phone.

**Hatem** : How did you get to the castle ?

**Yunis** : We climbed up the mountain!

**Hatem** : Did you buy any **souvenirs** ?

**Yunis** : Yes, I did. I bought this small souvenir for you.

**Hatem** : Oh, how interesting. Egypt's flag is also red, white and black.

Jordan's flag has another colour – green, too. Thanks, Yunis !

- (1) دولة الأردن  
شقة لقضاء الإجازة  
منظر طبيعي  
خريطة  
(5) قلعة  
هدايا تذكارية

• on Lesson 3 WB page 104

**Narrator 1**

**Man 1** : Where did you go on holiday last year ?

**Narrator 2**

**Man 1** : Where did you stay ?

**Narrator 3**

**Man 1** : How did you travel there ?

**Narrator 4**

**Man 1** : Did you climb a mountain ?

**Narrator 5**

**Man 1** : What did you eat ?



## Reading

- on Lesson 4 SB page 50

## Learn English in London !

- Our students come from all around the world to study and learn in this exciting city.
- Holiday courses are for one, two or three weeks.

I had a wonderful time<sup>(2)</sup> at the language school! I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries. My favourite place was Windsor Castle<sup>(3)</sup>. We went there by train. We walked all around the castle, but we did not see the Queen ! ☹

Mona, Egypt

I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time ! London's shops are fantastic. I bought a lot of souvenirs<sup>1</sup>. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye<sup>2</sup>, because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.

Laura, France

When I first came to the language school, I was not very good at English. But the teachers helped me a lot. The lessons were fun<sup>2</sup>, and for homework we did interesting projects<sup>3</sup>. I enjoyed speaking English !

Jurgen, Germany



- دورات تدريبية
- يقضي وقت رائع
- قلعة ويندسور
- في إنجلترا
- هدايا تذكارية
- نشاط
- رحلة لندون
- ممتع
- مشروعات

- on Lesson 4 WB page 105

Hi Ali

Last summer, I travelled to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I went to a language school in Cairo. I had a wonderful time.

I was there for two weeks. The people in Cairo were very friendly. Now I have many new friends.





When I first went to the language school, I **wasn't** very good at Arabic. But the teachers **helped** me, and the lessons **were** fun. Now I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are fantastic. I **bought** lots of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I **enjoyed** the view of the city from the top.

What did you do last summer ?

Write soon and tell me.

Andy, England.

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

- Critical thinking skill

مهارة التفكير النقدي

**Learn** 1. Why do you think Andy liked the Cairo Tower best ?

*Because he enjoyed the view of the city from the top of the Cairo Tower.*

**Practise** 2. Do you think Andy enjoyed his holiday in Egypt ? Why ?

## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

#### ► Key vocabulary

- He is bad at English, so he's going to have a/an ..... next summer.  
a. culture      b. advertisement      c. course      d. hotel
- She went to the ..... to buy fresh vegetables.  
a. castle      b. market      c. hotel      d. camp
- I saw a/an ..... for a new kind of juice on TV.  
a. flag      b. tower      c. advertisement      d. souvenir

#### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

- "....." is to sleep for a time in a tent. *cf. Exams - Alex - At A'gypt 2020/2021*  
a. Camp      b. Leave      c. Swim      d. Climb
- On the London Eye, there was a beautiful ..... from the top. *cf. Ex - South 2022*  
a. project      b. activity      c. souvenir      d. view





6.  Which holiday ..... can people do in Egypt ?

- a. weeks      b. views      c. activities      d. souvenirs

(Multidisciplinary - Beni Suef 2021)

7. .... are very friendly sea animals.

(South Giza 2020)

- a. Sharks      b. Dolphins      c. Snakes      d. Whales

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

8. There are thirty ..... in my classroom.

- a. teachers      b. adventures      c. students      d. rides

9. When we went on holiday, we ..... in a hotel.

- a. camped      b. stayed      c. rode      d. added

10. Some people like to send their children to ..... schools to learn foreign languages لغات أجنبية.

- a. sports      b. language      c. art      d. religious

► **Definitions**

11. A ..... is a building where you can pay for a room to sleep in for a night or longer.

- a. castle      b. camp      c. tower      d. hotel

12. A ..... is a tall, narrow part of a building.

- a. flat      b. tower      c. castle      d. camp

13. A ..... is something you buy to remember a holiday.

- a. view      b. project      c. souvenir      d. hotel

14. A ..... is a large, old building with towers.

- a. castle      b. skyscraper      c. hotel      d. house

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. Can you talk to your friends ..... English ?

- a. on      b. up      c. in      d. into

16. When you go shopping, you should ..... a list first.

- a. give      b. make      c. do      d. go



## ► Asking and answering questions about your last holiday :

نوجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن آخر أجازة قضيتها :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• Where did you spend your last holiday ? أين قضيت آخر أجازة لك ؟	- I spent it in <b>Hurghada</b> . لقد قضيتها في مدينة العردقة.
• How did you travel there ? كيف سافرت إلى هناك ؟	- I travelled by bus. سافرت بالأتوبيس.
• Where did you stay there ? أين أقمت هناك ؟	- I stayed in a holiday flat. أقمت في شقة لقضاء الإجازة.
• What did you see there ? ماذا رأيت هناك ؟	- I saw the dolphin show. لقد رأيت عرض الدولفين.

يمكنك التحدث عن إجازتك الماضية باستخدام الجمل التالية :

**Location** الموقع

1. I went to ..... last holiday. ذهبت إلى ..... الإجازة الماضية.
2. I spent my holiday in ..... قضيت إجازتي في .....
3. For my holiday, I travelled to ..... نقضاء الإجازة سافرت إلى ....

**Activities** الأنشطة

4. I climbed a mountain to see the sunrise. تسلق الجبل لرؤية شروق الشمس.
5. I visited my family in ..... قمت بزيارة عائلتي في (مدينة) .....
6. I learnt how to swim. تعلمت كيفية السباحة.

**Time** الوقت

7. I spent two weeks in ..... قضيت أسبوعين في .....
8. I went camping for ..... ذهبت لإقامة معسكر لمدة .....

**Food** الطعام

9. I had ..... for breakfast / lunch / dinner. تناولت ... على وجبة الفطار / العشاء / العشاء
10. We went to a restaurant to have ..... ذهبنا إلى المطعم لتناول (وجبة) ...
11. We ate new foods like ..... تناولنا أطعمة جديدة مثل ...



## Writing

مهارة الكتابة

### Learning languages تعلم اللغات

1. I like learning languages. أحب تعلم اللغات.
2. I think learning languages is an important skill. أعتقد تعلم اللغات مهارة مهمة.
3. Last year, I travelled to London to learn English. سافرت إلى مدينة لندن العام الماضي لتعلم اللغة الإنجليزية.
4. I went to a language school. ذهبت إلى مدرسة لغات.
5. There were students from all over the world. كان هناك تلاميذ من جميع أنحاء العالم.
6. I went to a shopping area to buy many souvenirs. ذهبت إلى منطقة التسوق لشراء العديد من الهدايا التذكارية.
7. I hope to visit many new places and learn more languages. أتمنى زيارة العديد من الأماكن الجديدة وتعلم لغات أكثر.



## Language

تم شرح زمن الماضي البسيط في الدرس الأول والثاني من الوحدة

- I **played** tennis last week. (Affirmative statement)
- I **didn't play** tennis last week. (Negative statement)
- **Did you play** tennis last week ? (Yes / No question)
- **When did you play** tennis ? (Wh-question)



## Quick Look

An hour before the exam

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه في ساعة

واحدة فقط في نهاية ملحق

A Week is enough



Step 1	Vocabulary	Step 2	Speaking	Step 3	Writing
	اختبر إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية		اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث		اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
<p><b>Read and complete :</b></p> <p>1. A Where did you go on last year ? B I went to Alexandria.</p> <p>2. A Where did you go ? B We stayed in my uncle's flat.</p> <p>3. A How did you go to Alexandria ? B By train.</p>					
<p><b>Complete the following dialogue :</b></p> <p>Sama is asking Sara about her last holiday.</p> <p>Sama : Where did you go on holiday last year ?</p> <p>Sara : 1 .....</p> <p>Sama : 2 .....</p> <p>Sara : I stayed in my uncle's flat.</p> <p>Sama : How did you travel to Alexandria.</p> <p>Sara : 3 .....</p> <p>Sama : Did you swim in the sea ?</p> <p>Sara : 4) .....</p> <p>Sama : 5) .....</p> <p>Sara : I ate many kinds of fish.</p>					
<p>1. A How was your visit to London ? B It was great.</p> <p>2. A Why did you go to London ? B To ..... English.</p> <p>3. A How long did you stay at the school ? B I stayed for two weeks.</p> <p>4. A What was your favourite souvenir ? B I rode on the London Eye.</p>					
<p><b>Yasser asks Ali about his visit to the beach.</b></p> <p>Yasser : Hi, Ali! How was your visit to London ?</p> <p>Ali : Hi, Yasser !</p> <p>Yasser : Great ! (2) .....</p> <p>Ali : To learn English.</p> <p>Yasser : (3) .....</p> <p>Ali : I stayed at the language school for two weeks.</p> <p>Yasser : What was your favourite activity ?</p> <p>Ali : (4) .....</p> <p>Yasser : Did you buy any souvenirs ?</p> <p>Ali : (5) .....</p>					
<p><b>"Last holiday"</b></p> <p>1. A How was your visit to London ? B It was great.</p> <p>2. A Why did you go to London ? B To ..... English.</p> <p>3. A How long did you stay at the school ? B I stayed for two weeks.</p> <p>4. A What was your favourite souvenir ? B I rode on the London Eye.</p>					
<p><b>"Learning English in London"</b></p> <p>Yasser asks Ali about his visit to the beach.</p> <p>Yasser : Hi, Ali! How was your visit to London ?</p> <p>Ali : Hi, Yasser !</p> <p>Yasser : Great ! (2) .....</p> <p>Ali : To learn English.</p> <p>Yasser : (3) .....</p> <p>Ali : I stayed at the language school for two weeks.</p> <p>Yasser : What was your favourite activity ?</p> <p>Ali : (4) .....</p> <p>Yasser : Did you buy any souvenirs ?</p> <p>Ali : (5) .....</p>					



# General Exercises



LESSONS

3 & 4

- Understand
- Apply
- Create

## 1 Complete the following dialogue .

**Nour is telling Hana about her holiday.**

**Hana :** Hi, Nour, How was your holiday ?

**Nour :** Hi, Hana. (1) .....

**Hana :** (2) ... ?

**Nour :** I went to France.

**Hana :** Did you visit the Eiffel Tower ?

**Nour :** (3) .....

**Hana :** (4) ... ?

**Nour :** Yes, I enjoyed my time there.

**Hana :** When did you come home ?

**Nour :** (5) ..... (Cairo - East Delta 2020 - Dakahlia - Iutkhia 2023)

## 2 Read the following then answer the questions .

My name is Mona. I live in Cairo. I work hard at school to be a doctor. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak English well to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too ! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was **fantastic** ! I cycled to summer school every day and I met students from different countries. Now, I have a friend from Uganda ! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it !

### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What did not Mona use to learn English ?

- a. Her teacher    b. Her phone    c. A laptop    d. A tablet

2. The underlined word "**fantastic**" means .....

- a. ugly    b. very good    c. very large    d. very bad

3. The underlined word "it" refers to the .....

- a. school    b. river    c. sea    d. computer

### b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?



5. Who did Mona go to London with ?

6. Do you think that Mona enjoyed her visit to London ? Why ?

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 1. A ..... is a big, strong building from the past. (Ismailia 2024 - Minya - Matay 2024)
  - a. souvenir
  - b. castle
  - c. desert
  - d. hotel
- 2. At the camp, we sleep in a ..... . (Cairo - El Shorouk 2023)
  - a. house
  - b. tent
  - c. flat
  - d. bed
- 3. I bought a lot of ..... from London's shops.
  - a. activities
  - b. souvenirs
  - c. deserts
  - d. castles
- 4. **WB** Where did Andy ..... last summer ?
  - a. went
  - b. go
  - c. goes
  - d. going
- 5. At school, we ..... a lot of exciting projects last year.
  - a. do
  - b. doing
  - c. did
  - d. to do
- 6. **WB** Last summer, my family ..... a fantastic holiday.
  - a. has
  - b. had
  - c. have
  - d. hasn't
- 7. Come on. It's not a ..... film, it's very interesting.
  - a. beautiful
  - b. boring
  - c. friendly
  - d. exciting
- 8. We stayed in a holiday ..... by the beach.
  - a. flag
  - b. flea
  - c. fly
  - d. flat
- 9. People do courses to study and ..... .
  - a. earn
  - b. learn
  - c. steal
  - d. lose
- 10. In Sharm El Sheikh, there is a "..... show" in the pool.
  - a. camel
  - b. shark
  - c. dolphin
  - d. rabbit

### 4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I have a wonderful time at the hotel last summer. (       )
2. When we went to Wadi El Ryan, we camp by the lake. (       )
3. There did a beautiful view from the high mountain. (Qalyoubia - Qaha 2022) (       )
4. **SB** What did Yunis see and did there ? (       )

### 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

**"A day on the beach"**

.....

(Ismailia 2024 - Giza - Dokki 2024)



## Lessons

# 5 & 6

SB pages 51 & 52

WB pages 106 & 107



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

postcard (n)	كارت بريدي	rule (n)	قاعدة
snail (n)	حيوان القوقع	theatre (n)	مسرح
sign (n)	لافتة / علامة	response (n)	رد



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

snails - sign - light - response

1. In Paris, I ate many new things like .....
2. What was your ..... when your mobile fell in the sea ?
3. The ..... says "Turn left".

### Lesson 51

SB page 51 WB page 106

emotion (n)	عاطفة / شعور	windy (adj)	عاصف
closed (adj)	مغلق	boat trip (n)	رحلة بالقارب
tourist (n)	سائح	sandals (n)	صندل [حذاء مفتوح]
sentence (n)	جملة	play (n)	مسرحية
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	pity (n)	عطف / شفقة
expression (n)	تعبير	bath time (n)	وقت الاستحمام
tickets (n)	تذاكر	tired (adj)	متعب

### Lesson 52

SB page 52 WB page 107

greeting (n)	تحية	Ramses Station (n)	محطة رمسيس
art (n)	الفن / الأعمال الفنية	café (n)	كافتيريا
header (n)	رأس الصفحة	closing (n)	خاتمة
pass (ed) (v)	يمر - يجتاز	sender (n)	الراسل
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	signature (n)	توقيع



**Famous places**

أماكن مشهورة

The Science Museum	متحف العلوم	The Louvre	متحف اللوفر
The River Seine	نهر السين	The Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك
Luxembourg Gardens	حدائق لوكسمبورج	the Eiffel Tower (n)	برج إيفر

**Conjugation of Irregular Verbs**

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
fall يقع / يسقط	fell	fallen

**Study these definitions**

ادرس هذه التعريفات

snail	a small, slow animal with a shell on its back	حيوان القواقع
-------	---	---------------

**Vocabulary Study**

**Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات**

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
many كثير / عديد	several	few قليل
win يفوز	gain / get	lose يخسر
closed مغلق	shut	open مفتوح
pass يمر - يجتاز	succeed	fail يرسب - يفشل
continue يستمر	go - on	stop - end يوقف - ينهي

**Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية**

Prefix بادئة	Suffix الوطيفة	Examples أمثلة
- ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	expression تعبير
- er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	sender إرسال
- y	تكون الصفة من الاسم	windy عاصف
- ing	تكون الاسم من الفعل	greeting تحية
		closing خاتمة



**Exercice**

**on Vocabulary Study**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Our school team won the match yesterday. The antonym of the word "won" is ".....".

- a. continued      b. stayed      c. lost      d. passed



2. To make the noun from the verb "send" we add the suffix "\_\_\_\_\_".  
 a. -ion                      b. -er                      c. -tion                      d. -ness
3. We passed the math test. It was easy. The synonym of the word "passed" is "\_\_\_\_\_".  
 a. lost                      b. failed                      c. succeeded                      d. won
4. The suffix "\_\_\_\_\_" forms the adjective from the noun "wind".  
 a. -y                      b. -ed                      c. -ion                      d. -ment
5. We add the suffix "ion" to get the "\_\_\_\_\_" from the word "express".  
 a. verb                      b. noun                      c. adverb                      d. adjective



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 back

#### \* back (n)

- ▶ - My **back** hurts me.

ظهر

#### \* (be) back (v) (adj)

- ▶ - I'm **back** from my holiday in Paris.

يعود / عائد

### 2 get on / get into / get out of / get off

#### \* get on

- ▶ - I **got on** the bus / the train ... etc.

يركب وسيلة مواصلات [بدخلها واقفاً]

#### \* get into

- ▶ - I **got into** the car / the taxi.

يركب وسيلة مواصلات [صغيرة]

#### \* get out of

- ▶ - I **got out of** the taxi / car quickly.

ينزل من وسيلة مواصلات [صغيرة]

#### \* get off

- ▶ - She **got off** the bus / train and went home.

ينزل من وسيلة مواصلات

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
have a view of the city	يطل على المدينة	on the river	في النهر
See you soon !	أراك قريباً !	go on a boat	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب
give examples	يعطي أمثلة	for example	على سبيل المثال
How exciting !	يا له من شيء رائع !	in bed	في الفراش [السري]
What a pity !	يا للحسرة !	for a holiday	لقضاء أجازة
That's interesting !	ذلك شيق !	on the top	على القمة





## Skills

### Reading and Listening

### Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 51

**Man** : What did you do yesterday, Mazin ?

**Mazin** : I went to the zoo.

**Man** : Oh, that's interesting! Did you enjoy the day ?

**Mazin** : No, I didn't.

**Man** : Oh, dear ! Why not ?

**Mazin** : Well, first, we went to see the monkeys. But they were all very tired. I think they were in bed .

**Man** : What a pity ! So you didn't see them ?

**Mazin** : No, we didn't. Then we went into a cave to see the bats. But it was dark, and I didn't see anything.

**Man** : What did you do next ?

**Mazin** : Then, we bought an ice cream and went to see the elephants. It was bath time for them.

**Man** : Wow ! How exciting !

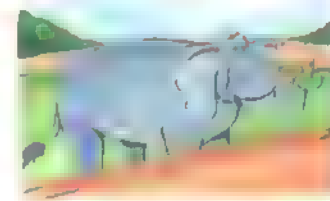
**Mazin** : Yes, I enjoyed that. But then something bad happened.

**Man** : Oh, no! What happened ?

**Mazin** : An elephant ate my ice cream!



(1) يا للهول  
في السرير (نام)  
يا للحسرة  
وقت الاستحمام  
يا له من شيء مثير



### Listening skill

• Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... ate Mazin's ice cream.

a. Hany

b. Monkeys

c. An elephant

d. Marwan





## Reading

- on Lesson 6 SB page 52

New message

From : Fatma

To : Azza

Subject : My holiday

Hi, Azza !

I am back from my **holiday**<sup>1</sup> in Paris. I had a **wonderful**<sup>2</sup> time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is **delicious**<sup>3</sup>. I ate a lot of new things, for example, **snails**<sup>4</sup>!

One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a **view**<sup>5</sup> of the city. We visited museums and had a **picnic**<sup>6</sup> in the Luxembourg Gardens.

We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity we did not have time to go to the **Science Museum**<sup>7</sup>. I also wanted to see the art at the **Louvre**<sup>8</sup>, but it was closed.

Near our hotel there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards. I also bought you a **souvenir**<sup>9</sup>. It is a very small Eiffel Tower!

You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top. See you soon!

Fatma



(1) إجازة

(2) رائع

لذيذ

قواقع

منظر ، رؤية

برهة في الهواء

الطلق

متحف العلوم

(8) متحف اللوفر

(9) هدية تذكارية

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

- Giving the main Idea

**Learn**

1. What's the main idea of the passage ?

**Learning English in London.**

Extracting Information

**Practise**

2. How long are the holiday courses in London ?

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

إستخراج المعلومات



• on Lesson 5 WB page 106

**Hanan** : I went to the beach last weekend.

**Lina** : Really ?

**Hanan** : When we arrived, it was very windy.

**Lina** : Oh dear!

**Hanan** : We didn't want to swim in the sea.

**Lina** : What a pity!

**Hanan** : Then the wind stopped and we went on a boat trip.

**Lina** : How exciting !

**Hanan** : We saw six big dolphins !

**Lina** : Wow!

**Hanan** : Then my brother's phone fell in the water.

**Lina** : Oh no!

**Hanan** : The phone was OK. Some new phones can go in water !

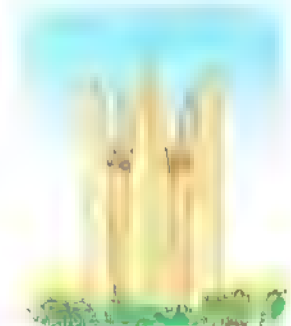
**Lina** : That's interesting!



• on Lesson 6 WB page 107

**Hi Fady,**

1. Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan.  
My father bought our tickets at Ramses Station, then we **got on the train**<sup>(1)</sup>. There were people from many countries on the train, **for example**<sup>2</sup>, England and Australia.
2. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we **passed**<sup>3</sup> Giza. I enjoyed the view from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.
3. We arrived at Luxor **at a quarter past six**<sup>4</sup>. Many tourists left the train here. They wanted to see the **Valley of the Kings**<sup>5</sup> !



يركب القطار  
(2) على سبيل المثال  
(3) مر على  
في الساعة السادسة وربع  
(5) وادع، الملوك



4. The train continued to <sup>6</sup> Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us ! It was a wonderful journey.

See you soon <sup>7</sup> !

Mazin

(6) يستمر إلى

(7) أراك قريباً

### Answer

the following questions :

- Giving the main idea

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

**Learn**

1. Give a suitable title to the passage

*A wonderful journey to Aswan.*

- Understanding reference

مهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

**Practice**

2. What does the pronoun "I" in the first paragraph refer to ?

## Exercise on Vocabulary

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### ► Key vocabulary

- I called Hana yesterday but there was no ....  
a. response      b. sign      c. rule      d. action
- What does this ..... mean ? - It means "No smoking".  
a. song      b. sign      c. email      d. snail
- You should follow the school .....  
a. objects      b. rides      c. rules      d. rulers

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

- My friend sent me a ..... from Paris. *(Dakahlia - Mayet 4-1 Naser 2012)*  
a. sign      b. postcard      c. post office      d. tourist
- The people in Egypt are very .....  
a. friends      b. friend      c. friendly      d. friendly way
- A place where we can watch plays is a ..... *(Gharbia - West Janta 2021)*  
a. zoo      b. theatre      c. cinema      d. circus
- My father bought our ..... at Ramsis Station.  
a. trains      b. tickets      c. presents      d. sports  
*(North Sinai - Multidisciplinary 2021)*
- Hamdi went to buy rice, but the shop was .....  
a. open      b. closed      c. clean      d. favourite



► **El-Moasser Exercises**

9. I have the book writer's ..... on my book.  
a. rule                      b. sign                      c. singnature                      d. trip
10. I prefer wearing ..... in summer. They are comfortable open shoes.  
a. dress                      b. shoes                      c. sandals                      d. socks
11. The Eiffel ..... is a famous place in Paris.  
a. River                      b. Museum                      c. Tower                      d. Garden

► **Definitions**

12. Can you tell us what ... .. after the accident ?  
a. happened                      b. travelled                      c. read                      d. put
13. I lost my kite yesterday it was very ... ..  
a. cool                      b. hot                      c. windy                      d. sunny
14. A/An ..... is a small, slow animal with a shell on its back.  
a. octopus                      b. crocodile                      c. shell                      d. snail

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. Where did you go . . . a holiday ? - I went to Dahab.  
a. at                      b. of                      c. for                      d. off
16. I saw many things from the .. of the tower.  
a. high                      b. above                      c. top                      d. long

**2. Speaking**

مهارة التحدث

► **Responding to news**

الاستجابة للأخبار

Situation	الموقف	Response	الرد
1. I have tickets to see the new play at the theatre.		- How interesting / exciting !	يا له من شيء رائع / مثير
2. Hamdi went to the shops to buy rice, but the shop was closed.		- Oh dear !	يا للهول !
3. There is a good film on TV this evening.		- Really ?	حقا ؟
4. My favourite football team won 5-0 !		- Wow !	يا لمروعة !
5. My favourite football team lost 0-5 !		- Oh no ! What a pity!	يا للحسرة !





### Pop Quiz on Speaking

⊙ Complete the following dialogue :

Mohsen did very well at the exam.

Fares : How was the exam ?

Mohsen : It was very easy.

Fares : (1) ..... ?

Mohsen : Yes. I got the result.

Fares : (2) ..... ! That's so fast.

Mohsen : (3) ..... ?

Fares : I got a hundred.

Mohsen : (4) ..... ! You're very clever.

Fares : But my friend couldn't pass the exam.

Mohsen : Oh no. (5) ..... !



### Writing

#### مهارة الكتابة

#### ► Writing tips

نصائح للكتابة :

The form of an email is :

شكل رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

Header المقدمة : from من / to إلى / subject الموضوع

Greeting التحية : Hi / Hello هلاً

Body الرسالة : the topic الموضوع

Closing لحامه : Best wishes مع أطيب التمنيات / Yours صديقك / See you soon أراك قريباً

Signature التوقيع : Sender's name اسم المرسل



# General Exercises



LESSONS

5 & 6

• Understand

• Applying

• Create



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واحتر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Last ....., Andy travelled to Egypt.

- a. winter                      b. summer                      c. spring                      d. autumn

2. Andy wanted to learn .....

- a. English                      b. maths                      c. science                      d. Arabic

3. Andy went to a ..... in Cairo.

- a. language school                      b. zoo                      c. park                      d. museum

4. Andy had a ..... time in Egypt.

- a. sad                      b. long                      c. short                      d. wonderful

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Hassan about his last holiday.

Ahmed : Hi, Hassan! How was your holiday ?

Hassan : Hi, Ahmed! (1) .....

Ahmed : (2) ..... ?

Hassan : I went to Jordan by plane.

Ahmed : Wow! (3) ..... ?

Hassan : No, we stayed in a holiday flat by the beach. We had wonderful view from the window.

Ahmed : Did you swim in the sea ?

Hassan : (4) .....

Ahmed : How did you get to the castle ?

Hassan : (5) .....

(Bent Suet 2023)

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Last week, I ..... a nice time in New York.

- a. took                      b. had                      c. gave                      d. bought

2. Judy ..... many things from the top of Cairo Tower yesterday.

- a. saw                      b. see                      c. sees                      d. seen

3. The wind stopped and we ..... on a boat trip.

- a. go                      b. went                      c. goes                      d. gone



- 4. They didn't ..... to swim in the sea.  
a. wants                      b. want                      c. wanted                      d. wanting
- 5. Photography, ballet, dancing and singing are kinds of .....  
a. games                      b. art                      c. tools                      d. drama
- 6. The ..... says "Don't walk on the grass". *(Kafé El-Shetkh - Desouk 2022)*  
a. signal                      b. list                      c. song                      d. sign
- 7. 📧 We usually ..... an email with "Hi" or "Dear".  
a. stop                      b. repeat                      c. finish                      d. start
- 8. A : I lost my new ring. B : What a ..... !  
a. mess                      b. poor                      c. pity                      d. exciting
- 9. On the Nile, there were a lot of .....  
a. boots                      b. nuts                      c. boats                      d. boxes
- 10. Many tourists visit the ..... of the Kings.  
a. Volley                      b. Village                      c. Valley                      d. Voice

#### 4 Read and correct the underlined words :

- 1. We eat a lot of things at the café yesterday. ( ..... )
- 2. 🗣️ Who did you talked to at the break ? ( ..... )
- 3. They didn't felt safe at the dark cave. ( ..... )
- 4. It is windy yesterday. ( ..... )

#### 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

**"A holiday in Paris"**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



## Vocabulary

Lessons 1 &amp; 2

picnic (n)

jungle (n)

desert (n)

activity (n)

tent (n)

cave (n)

forest (n)

beach (n)

sand (n)

river (n)

rock (n)

sandcastle (n)

waterfall (n)

frightened (adj)

Lessons 3 &amp; 4

course (n)

castle (n)

students (n)

advertisement (n)

view (n)

picnic | reorder (ed) (v)

camp (ed) (v), (n)

souvenir (n)

market (n)

language school (n)

safari rides

Wonderful (adj)

exciting (adj)

Lessons 5 &amp; 6

theatre (n)

the Eiffel Tower (n)

response (n)

signature (n)

postcard (n)

snail (n)

sign (n)

rule (n)

greeting (n)

إعلان

## Language

Past simple

1. Affirmative statements :

الجملة الخبرية الماثبة :

+

ex: He bought a new car.

2. Negative statements :

الجملة الخبرية المنفية

+ + + + +

ex: I didn't go out for a walk yesterday.

3. Interrogative :

صيغة الاستفهام :

+ + + + +

ex: Did you ... your lessons ?

Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

حيوان الموقع

لاوته / علامه

فاعد

ex: Where did you spend your last summer holiday ?

- I spent it in Alexandria.



# Skills

## 1 Reading Comprehension

## Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة القراءة ومدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

الحدى قد تجد صعوبة في تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في القطعة.

عند قراءة المقرة يمكنك تخمين المفردة اللغوية من خلال السياق.

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة منبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and learn how to answer

My sister, Mariam made a sandcastle. There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into it, because she was **frightened**!

Last October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food, then we played games and my cousin, Ali rode his bike..

The underlined word "**frightened**" means

- a. strong
- b. happy
- c. **afraid**
- d. angry

تذكر في النص انه كان هناك كهف ولكن مريم لم تريد الدخول وحاولت تخمين

Last year, Ramy had a holiday course in English in the **exciting** city of London. He had a wonderful time at the language school. He was there for two weeks. It was nice for him to meet students from different countries. His favourite place was Windsor Castle.

The underlined word "**exciting**" in the passage is the

- opposite of
- a wonderful
- b beautiful
- c boring
- d lovely



## 2 Speaking

### Describing a place / Talking about holidays

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

لحدى تريد (وصف مكان) من دجرج وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مصحح لحل يجب عليك معرفه قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بيبك وبين المتحدث.

#### Step 1

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

► Read and learn how to ask and answer

• وصف مكان والحدث عن الإجازة

السؤال Question	الإجابة Answer	Usage الاستخدام
Where would you like to go ?	I would like to go to the beach.	وصف المكان
What can you see or do there ?	I can see a lot of fish and swim in the sea.	
Where did you go on holiday ?	I went to Siwa.	
What activities did you do there ?	I swam in the lake.	استحدث عن الإجازة
Where did you stay ?	We stayed in a hotel.	
What food did you eat ?	We ate a lot of fish.	



اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

► Complete the following dialogue :

Nader and Tamer are talking about his visit to

Alexandria

Nader : Where did you go on holiday last year ?

Tamer : (1) .....

Nader : (2) .....

Tamer : I stayed in my uncle's flat.

Nader : (3) .....

Tamer : I travelled by train.

Nader : Did you swim in the sea ?

Tamer : (4) .....

Nader : What did you eat there ?

Tamer : (5) .....



؟  
حسّر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإيضائية (paragraph) معرفتك للتعبير عن موضوع ما.

فئة  
لحدي تريد كتابة موضوع عن (مدرسة مدرّس جديد) أو (تسفر بالقطار) وتجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

فئة  
مصحح الحسّر يحب عليك معرفة قدر كافٍ من المفردات اللغوية وكيفية استخدامها في تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

## Topic

## Step 1

Review your vocabulary

Write the meaning .

متحمس

يسبح

أنشطة

واحة

جبل

نشق

Visiting a new place

## Step 2

Sentences

Fill in using vocabulary

1. It's an ..... place to visit.
2. You can do many ..... there.
3. You can climb the .....
4. You can ..... in the lake.
5. Siwa is an ..... in Egypt.

## Step 3

Paragraph

Write a paragraph on

"Visiting a new place"

لطيف

يستغرق وقت

سافر

منظر

إجازة

يستقل [وسيلة نقل]

1. I enjoyed the ..... of the green fields from the window.
2. It ..... 18 hours to get there.
3. We had a nice ..... there.
4. Last winter, my family to Luxor on a train.
5. Luxor is a very ..... place.

Write an email about :  
"Travelling by train"

Travelling by train

مصحح الحسّر يحب عليك



### Questions related to the text

سؤالين متعلقين بالنص

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

#### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A ..... is something you buy to remember a holiday.  
 (Charbia El Sauti 2023)  
 a. souvenir b. medal c. view d. prize
2. She didn't ..... to the beach yesterday.  
 (Shadid M. Ahmed 2023) (Cairo Abu Al Yous 2022)  
 a. goes b. went c. gone d. go

#### 3. A : How long did you ..... in Cairo ?

B : For two weeks.

- (Moufida Ashmoun 2023)  
 a. stay b. visit c. meet d. say
4. Last month, we ..... our grandparents in Alexandria.  
 (El Sharka West Zagazig 2022)  
 a. visiting b. visited c. visit d. will visit
5. When the weather is hot, we go to the .....  
 (Cairo Mayo El Ucinia 2023)

- a. mountain b. sun c. desert d. beach
6. Ali ..... at the park yesterday. (Qena El Wagf 2022)  
 a. isn't b. didn't c. aren't d. wasn't
7. A dolphin is a friendly ..... animal.  
 (Sohag Johanna 2023)

- a. wild b. sea c. plant d. land
8. We went on a boat ..... last week.  
 (Behera Wadi El Natrun 2022)

- a. trip b. flight c. way d. place
9. Children like to build ..... on the beach.  
 (Beni Suof Nover 2023)

- a. sandcastles b. mountains  
 c. parks d. waterfalls
10. I'm ..... from my holiday in Paris.  
 (Naser City Cairo 2023)  
 a. pick b. back c. pack d. book

#### 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Did you in Tanta two months ago ?  
 (Sharkia Hiba 2023) (.....)
2. What do you do yesterday ?  
 (Gohubia Khanka 2023) (.....)
3. My uncle buy his house last summer.  
 (Cairo Al Nozha 2023) (.....)
4. Do Ali at the cinema yesterday ?  
 (Giza El-Hawamdeya 2023) (.....)
5. Where did Magdy spent the weekend ?  
 (Giza Badag 2023) (.....)
6. He didn't visiting his uncle last week.  
 (Beni Suof El-Fayoum 2023) (.....)
7. Ali swim with a dolphin in Hurghada last summer.  
 (Behera Abu El-Matar 2023) (.....)
8. The play was very interesting, so I enjoy it very much. (Dakahlia East Matruh 2023) (.....)
9. What did Yunis see and did there ?  
 (Damietta El Zarqa 2023) (.....)
10. We went to the theatre next week.  
 (Fayoum Ilsa 2023) (.....)



### A. Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى معلّمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (لصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did they go ?  
a. To Cairo      b. To Siwa      c. To Alexandria      d. To Luxor
2. They ..... in the lake.  
a. sailed      b. fished      c. swam      d. ate
3. They saw ..... and slept in a tent.  
a. cats      b. dogs      c. cows      d. camels
4. It was his ..... holiday.  
a. favourite      b. bad      c. happy      d. sad

(Bent Suef - El Fashn 2020)

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sara is talking to a tourist from London.

Ann : Hi, where are you from ?

Sara : (1) ..... And you ?

Ann : (2) .....

Sara : Oh. (3) ..... ?

Ann : By plane. I am here with my family.

Sara : What's your father's job ?

Ann : (4) ..... He takes care of people's teeth.

Sara : (5) ..... ?

Ann : My mother is a teacher.

Sara : Like my mother, she is a teacher, too.

(Sharkia - Helwa 2020)

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I will never forget this year's holiday. At first, I thought this holiday would be boring because I was going to the sea with my family for the first time.



The beginning was quite **boring**. We stayed for 3 weeks there ! We stayed at a nice hotel but **it** was quite expensive hotel. The hotel was near the sea. It was really comfortable. During the holiday, I met a lot of kind and interesting people. They became my friends. We built sandcastles, swam and visited many places. The weather was great. I enjoyed my holiday.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**boring**" is ..... .  
 a. careful      b. interested      c. interesting      d. bad
2. The hotel wasn't ..... the sea.  
 a. far from      b. near      c. behind      d. next to
3. The writer stayed for ..... days in the hotel.  
 a. 21      b. 3      c. 14      d. 31

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. Why did the writer think the holiday was boring ?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?  
 \_\_\_\_\_

(Sharkut - About Hamad 2020)

## D. Vocabulary & Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ says "Don't walk on the grass".  
 a. signal      b. list      c. ticket      d. sign
2. What did Mona \_\_\_\_\_ in her office yesterday ?  
 a. find      b. found      c. finding      d. finds
3. We slept in a \_\_\_\_\_ in the desert.  
 a. bed      b. hat      c. box      d. tent



4. How ..... your trip to Luxor? (Damietta - Ezhel El Borg 2022)  
 a. was                      b. be                      c. were                      d. are
5. She ..... visit the museum yesterday. She went to the beach.  
 a. doesn't                      b. don't                      c. didn't                      d. wasn't
6. I'd like to go to the ..... as I like swimming.  
 a. mountain                      b. rock                      c. sand                      d. beach
7. My favourite ..... was Al-Azhar Park.  
 a. time                      b. place                      c. team                      d. food
8. He didn't go into the cave because he was .....  
 a. frightened                      b. kind                      c. short                      d. brave
9. My little sister likes ..... sandcastles from sand.  
 a. baking                      b. taking                      c. making                      d. boiling
10. In Paris, we enjoyed going on a ..... trip on the River Seine.  
 a. shop                      b. boat                      c. bike                      d. car

**5** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Amal wash the dishes yesterday. (Qalyubia - Khuxux 2021) ( ..... )
2. Marwa bought her car three weeks last. ( ..... )
3. How do you get to the cinema yesterday? ( ..... )
4. We When we arrived, it is very windy. ( ..... )

### E. Writing

**6** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

**"A trip you made"**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



# Stop here !

## Mini-Test on unit 5 for Al-Azhar students

اخبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues .

A. Nada : Where would you like to go ?

Huda : \_\_\_\_\_ .

B. Fathi : \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Soha : It was a great holiday.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ is a large area with lots of trees close together.

- a. beach                      b. forest                      c. waterfall                      d. desert

2. We like to \_\_\_\_\_ a picnic at El-Azhar Park.

- a. have                      b. do                      c. ride                      d. make

3. She \_\_\_\_\_ a big sandcastle last year.

- a. build                      b. building                      c. built                      d. builds

4. They \_\_\_\_\_ see any pandas in the zoo.

- a. wasn't                      b. don't                      c. hasn't                      d. didn't

5. The \_\_\_\_\_ was amazing from the top of the Cairo Tower.

- a. souvenir                      b. towel                      c. view                      d. castle

6. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you yesterday ?

- a. did                      b. were                      c. have                      d. do

### 3 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

**"Learning English"**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Amir : How was your last holiday, Bassem ?

Bassem : (1) .

- a. I was busy
- b. It was wonderful
- c. They had fun
- d. I will go swimming

Bassem : (2) ..... ?

- a. Where did you go
- b. How did you go
- c. Why did you go there
- d. When did you go

Bassem : I went to Hurghada.

Amir : (3) ..... ?

- a. Who did you go with
- b. When will you go
- c. What did you do there
- d. Why are you busy

Bassem : I swam and built sandcastles on the beach.

Amir : Did you buy any souvenirs ?

Bassem : (4)

- a. No, she isn't
- b. Yes, I did
- c. Yes, I do
- d. No, I won't

Amir : When did you come back home ?

Bassem : (5)

- a. Last week
- b. My family
- c. To Aswan
- d. To buy some souvenirs

2. Choose the correct form of the underlined word(s) from a, b, c or d :

6. He draws a beautiful picture for his friend last week.

- a. drawing
- b. drew
- c. draw
- d. are drawing

7. We weren't go to the beach last year.

- a. aren't
- b. don't
- c. didn't
- d. isn't

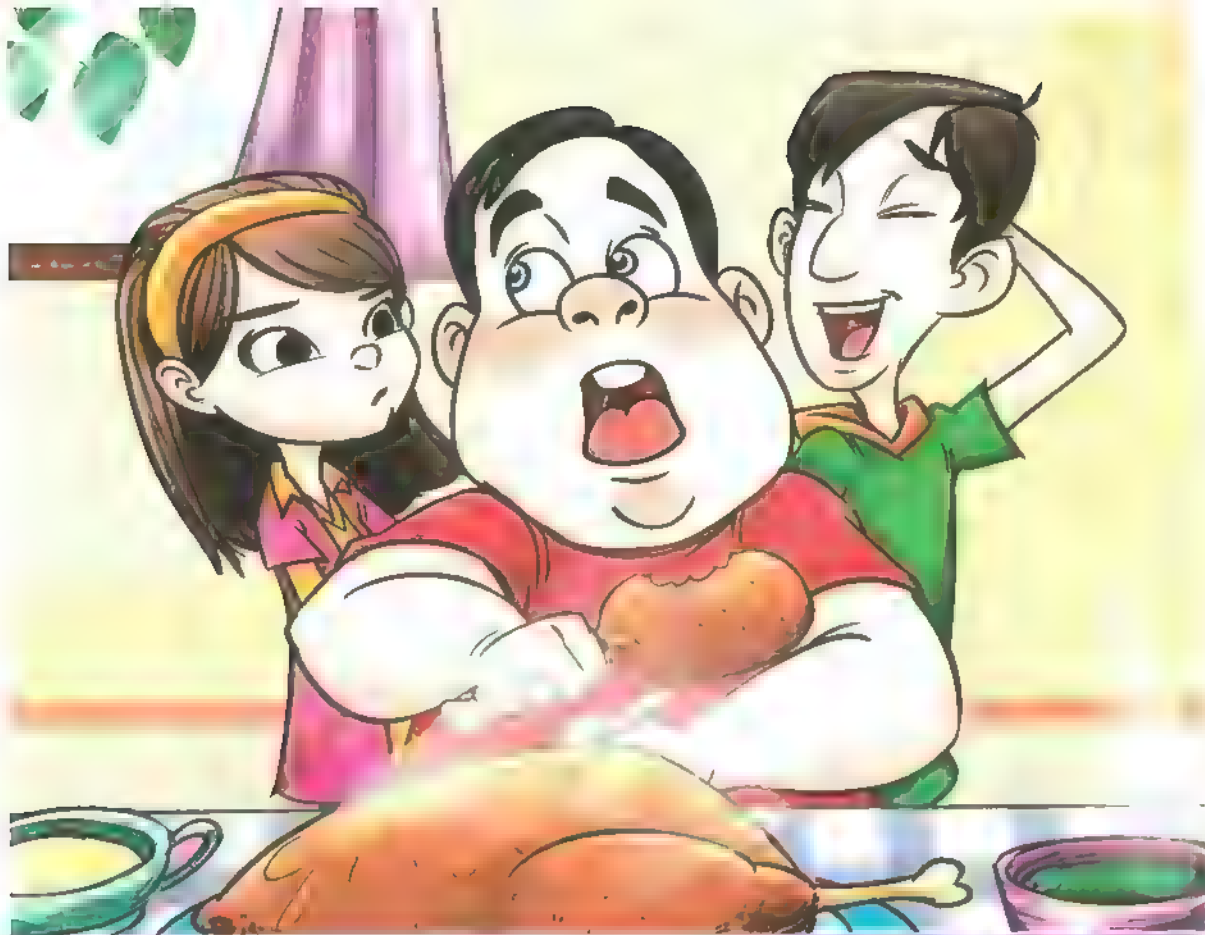
8. What did you found at the garden ?

- a. find
- b. finding
- c. finds
- d. is finding

9. I didn't at the club yesterday.

- a. don't
- b. wasn't
- c. am not
- d. haven't





## Unit

# 6

## Let's eat!

88 pages 54 : 83 - Web pages 108 : 115

### Objectives :

#### • Reading :

A paragraph describing a picture; an online review of a café

#### • Writing :

A paragraph describing a picture; an online review of a café

#### • Listening :

An interview about healthy drinks;

A conversation in a café

#### • Speaking :

An interview about healthy drinks;

A conversation in a café

#### • Language :

Countable and uncountable nouns; should and shouldn't for advice

#### • Life Skills :

Decision making; problem solving

#### • Issues :

Preventative health





## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

olives (n)	ریتون	saucepan (n)	طاسة
ingredients (n)	مكونات	hummus (n)	طحينة حمص
biscuits (n)	بسكويت	coconut (n)	جوز الهند
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	crisps (n)	مقرمشات
rice pudding (n)	أرز بليس	teaspoon (n)	ملعقة شاي
cinnamon (n)	قرفة	raisins (n)	ربيب



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

crisps - fridge - Olive - teaspoon - Raisins

1. .... oil is healthy for all people.
2. We keep our food cold in a . .... .
3. .... are dried grapes.
4. Add a ..... of sugar to your cup of tea.

### Lesson 1

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 109

nuts (n)	مكسرات	peppers (n)	فلفل
salt (n)	ملح	figs (n)	نبن
salad (n)	سلطة	sugar (n)	سكر

### Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 110

recipe (n)	وصفة [طهي]	bowl (n)	سلطانية / وعاء
slowly (adv)	ببطء	equipment (n)	معدات
stir (red) (v)	يقلب	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
perfect (n)	تام / ممتاز	amount (n)	كمية



share (d) (v)	ينقسم / يشارك	cooking (n)	طبخ
ready (adj)	جاهز / مستعد	cupboard (n)	دولاب
boil (ed) (v)	يغلي	plate (n)	طبق [مسطح]

### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sit down يجلس	sat down	sat down

### Study Words/Definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

<b>add</b>	put something together with another thing	يضيف
<b>biscuit</b>	a sweet snack baked in the oven, usually small, flat and round	بسكويت
<b>cheese</b>	a yellow, white or orange food that is made from milk	جبن
<b>cinnamon</b>	a sweet spice used in cooking	قرفة
<b>crisps</b>	hard, dry potato pieces that you eat as a snack	مقرمشات
<b>fridge</b>	a machine that keeps food and drinks cold	ثلاجة
<b>hummus</b>	a soft food made from chickpeas حمص	طحينة
<b>ingredient</b>	something you use to make food	مكون / مقدار
<b>nut</b>	a small, dry fruit with a hard shell	بندق
<b>pepper</b>	a green, red or yellow vegetable that you cook or eat in a salad	فلفل
<b>raisin</b>	a small, dry grape	ربيب
<b>recipe</b>	instructions on how to make a meal	وصفة طهي
<b>saucepan</b>	a round container used to cook things	طاسة
<b>stir</b>	move around ingredients, sugar, etc. with a spoon	يقلب
<b>teaspoon</b>	a small spoon of about 5 ml	ملعقة شاي





### Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات		
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym Opposite المضاد
prefer يفضل	like	hate بكره
perfect تام/ممتاز	excellent	imperfect غير كامل [ناقص]
quick سريع	fast	slow بطئ
sweet حلو المذاق	tasty	salty مالح

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونامية		
Suffix   Prefix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ly	تحويل الصفة إلى ظرف	slowly بطئ
-ment	تحويل الفعل إلى اسم	equipment معدات
im -	تعطى عكس المعنى	imperfect غير تام
un-	تعطى عكس المعنى	popular غير معروف



### Exercise

#### on Vocabulary Study

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :
  - We use the prefix \_\_\_\_\_ to form the opposite of "popular".
    - un-
    - in-
    - lr-
    - im-
  - It's a fast car. The synonym of "fast" is .....
    - slow
    - far
    - quick
    - high
  - Basbousa is sweet, but crisps are .....
    - hard
    - salty
    - fat
    - soft
  - I prefer football to basketball. The synonym of "prefer" is "....."
    - hate
    - need
    - like
    - dislike
  - We use the suffix "....." to get the adverb from the adjective slow.
    - ment
    - ly
    - ed
    - ing
  - "....." is similar in meaning to "excellent".
    - quick
    - imperfect
    - perfect
    - slow





## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 sweet (n) (adj)

- ▶ - Children like eating **sweets**.
- There are a lot of **sweet** things in the fridge.

حلوى - حلو المذاق

[حلوى]

حلو المذاق

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 57*

### 2 recipe / ingredients

\* **recipe**

وصفة أو تعليمات خاصة بإعداد نوع مُعين من الطعام

- ▶ - What is the **recipe** for rice pudding ?

\* **ingredients**

مكونات ومقادير طبق معين من الطعام

- ▶ - Rice, pasta and onions are the main **ingredients** of koshari.

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 57*

### 3 a bit + adjective [صفة]

قليلاً [بدرجة قليلة]

- ▶ It's a bit boring.

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 57*

### 4 What kind of ... ?

ما نوع

- ▶ What kind of food do you like ?

*Listening on lesson 1 SB page 54*

### 5 prefer + (v + ing) / noun

يفضل

- ▶ - I **prefer** watching TV.
- I **prefer** rice pudding with coconut.

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 57*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
Let's + inf. <span>يقرر أن</span>	end in .. <span>ينتهي بـ ..</span>
It's quick to cook. <span>إنها سريعة الطبخ.</span>	on top <span>على القمة</span>
make (food) ... <span>بعد الطعام</span>	for the whole family <span>للأسرة بأكملها</span>
It's real (easy) to (make). <span>سهلة التحضير</span>	for 20 minutes <span>لمدة عشرون دقيقة</span>
a bit boring <span>ممل بعض الشيء</span>	cook for <span>يطبخ لـ</span>
make hot chocolate <span>يعد مشروب شوكولاتة ساخن</span>	decide to + inf. <span>يقرر أن</span>
It's my favourite. <span>إنها المفضلة بالنسبة لي</span>	a teaspoon of <span>ملعقة صغيرة من</span>
	put .... into <span>يضع ... في</span>





## Skills



## Reading and Listening



## Listening

## • on Lesson 1 SB page 55

Nadia : Let's **make lunch** . I think we've got all the food.

Omar : There's some **salad** . Is there any **hummus** ?

Nadia : No, there isn't. But there are some **olives** .

Omar : There are some **peppers** , too.

Nadia : Good! Is there any **cheese** ?

Omar : Yes, there is. I've got it.

Nadia : What about **figs** ? Are there any **figs** ?

Omar : No! There aren't any **figs**.

Nadia : There are some **raisins** .

Omar : That's good.



(1) يعد وجبة الفداء

(2) سلطة

(3) طحينة

(4) زيتون

(5) فلفل

(6) تين

(7) زبيب

## • Reading on Lesson 2 SB page 56

## Roz Bel Laban : Egyptian Rice Pudding



ارز بلين

مكونات

زبيب

ملعقة شاي

قرصة

Ingredients<sup>(2)</sup> :

- 1 cup of rice      - 2 cups of water      - 3 cups of milk
- 1 cup of sugar      -  $\frac{1}{4}$  a cup of raisins<sup>(3)</sup>      -  $\frac{1}{4}$  a cup of nuts
- $\frac{1}{4}$  a teaspoon<sup>(4)</sup> of cinnamon<sup>(5)</sup>



**Instructions :**

1. Put the rice and water in a **saucepan**<sup>(6)</sup>.
2. **Boil**<sup>(7)</sup> the rice and water for 20 minutes.
3. **Add**<sup>(8)</sup> the milk slowly as you **stir**<sup>(9)</sup>.
4. Add the sugar and stir again.
5. Put the rice pudding into bowls.
6. Put the raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top.
7. Put the rice pudding in the **fridge**<sup>(10)</sup>.

- (6) طاسة  
(7) يغلى  
(8) يضيف  
(9) يقلب  
(10) ثلاجة

**Reading on Lesson 2 SB pages 57**

**Reviews of the recipe**

**Really easy! \* \* \* \* \***

This is a great **recipe**. It's really easy to make. There aren't a lot of **ingredients** and it's very quick to cook.  
Fawzi

وصفة  
مكونات - مقادير

**OK, but a bit boring<sup>(1)</sup> \* \* \***

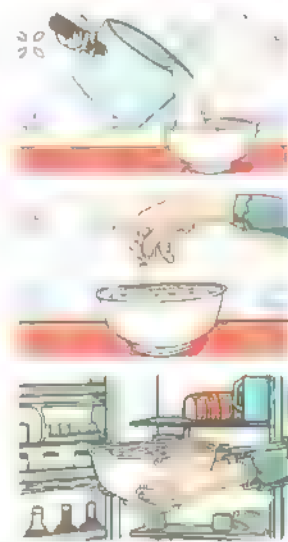
I liked this **rice pudding**, but it isn't my favourite. I think there are too many raisins. I don't like them. I prefer rice pudding with **coconut**<sup>(2)</sup>.  
Hana

**Perfect! \* \* \* \* \***

There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the **whole family**<sup>(3)</sup>. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food.  
Nabila

**Not like my mum's rice pudding! \* \***

My mum's rice pudding is delicious, but this rice pudding isn't very good. There's too much sugar and there aren't enough other ingredients.  
Salem



معل قميلا  
جور هند  
(5) ائلسرة باكمئما  
(6) ائز بالئين



**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

- Giving the main idea

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

**Learn**

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

- *The Egyptian rice pudding.*

- Extracting information

استخراج المعلومات

**Practise**

2. Hana likes rice pudding but it isn't her favourite because

there are too many ..... .

a. raisins

b. apples

c. coconuts

d. seeds

### • on Lesson 2 WB page 110

Mrs Amal has a lot of friends. Today, she is cooking for ten people. She has enough plates for people to eat on, but she does not have enough chairs, so her friend brings some. Now all the food is ready, but there is fish and rice for fifteen people, not ten! She has too much fish and rice. She decides to ask five more people but they can't all sit down. There are too many people and not enough chairs!

## Exercice on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

### ► Key vocabulary

- We put fruit in the ..... to keep it fresh.  
a. oven                      b. fridge                      c. bowl                      d. cupboard
- ..... have a lot of fat and salt.  
a. Olives                      b. Crisps                      c. Fruits                      d. Sweets
- Put a ..... of salt in the pot. That's enough.  
a. cup                      b. saucepan                      c. cattle                      d. teaspoon
- ..... are dried grapes used for some sweet foods like rice pudding.  
a. Nuts                      b. Biscuits                      c. Figs                      d. Raisins

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

- Rice, milk and sugar are the main ..... of rice pudding.  
a. marks                      b. instructions                      c. minutes                      d. ingredients

*Exercice - Youssef EL Seidick 2020*

- Put rice and water in a ..... before cooking rice pudding.  
a. bag                      b. teaspoon                      c. saucepan                      d. cup

- Which of the following is not a cooking verb ?

*Exercice - El Seid 2020*

- a. Pudding                      b. Boil                      c. Stir                      d. Add

*Exercice - EL Seid 2022 - Exercice - El Seid 2022 - Exercice - El Seid 2022 - Exercice - El Seid 2022*



8. ... is not an ingredient.

- a. Rice                      b. Nut                      c. Stir                      d. Raisin

(Gharbia - West Mahalla 2020)

9. There isn't enough ... to make hot chocolate.

- a. tea                      b. milk                      c. coffee                      d. juice

### ► El-Moasser Exercises

10. This restaurant serves ..... and healthy food.

- a. flat                      b. delicious                      c. bad                      d. slow

11. I found an easy ..... for making cookies.

- a. recipe                      b. role                      c. road                      d. rail

12. Mum .. ..... the rice and water for 20 minutes on the cooker.

- a. washed                      b. boiled                      c. drank                      d. ate

### ► Definitions

13. ... is a yellow, white or orange food that is made from milk.

- a. Oil                      b. Fig                      c. Pepper                      d. Cheese

14. ... is a small dry fruit with a hard shell.

- a. Fig                      b. Nut                      c. Olive                      d. Plum

### ► Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. She decided .. ..... a flower for her sister's birthday.

- a. buy                      b. buys                      c. to buy                      d. bought

16. After my mother cooks the rice pudding, she puts it ..... bowls.

- a. on                      b. into                      c. from                      d. at

## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### ► • What food (do / don't) you like ?

ما الطعام الذي (أحبه / لا أحبه) ؟

#### Questions



#### Answers



• What food do you like ?

ما الطعام الذي تحبه ؟

► - I like nuts.

أحب المكسرات.

• What food don't you like ?

ما الطعام الذي لا تحبه ؟

► I don't like olives.

لا أحب الزيتون.



### 3. Writing

#### مهارة الكتابة

**What food do you have in your kitchen ? ما الطعام الموجود في المطبخ الخاص بك ؟**

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. There is some cheese.                  | يوجد بعض من الجبنة.                 |
| 2. There aren't any olives.               | لا يوجد أي زيتون.                   |
| 3. There is enough milk in the fridge.    | يوجد قدر كفي من الحليب في الثلاجة.  |
| 4. There isn't any rice.                  | لا يوجد أي أرز.                     |
| 5. There is too much juice.               | يوجد كمية أكثر من اللازم من العصير. |
| 6. We have enough raisins for the recipe. | لدينا زبيب كافٍ للوصفة.             |

## El-Moasser

### Homework Interactive

- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي
- يمكنك من إتقان المفردات اللغوية ( التسميم )
- والقواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على الوحدات





## Step 1

## Vocabulary

اختبر أتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

## Read and complete :

1. A. Can you help your mum

بالصل

B. Yes, I can.

2. A. .... of food can you cook ?  
ماتوع

B. Rice pudding.

3. A. Why is it easy to make rice pudding ?

B. Because there are not a lot of  
مقادير

"Rice pudding"

## Step 2

اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث

## Complete the following dialogue :

Norhan asks Nada about the recipe of Rice Pudding.

Norhan : Good evening, Nada. Can you help your mum at home ?

Nada : Good evening, Norhan.

(1)

Norhan : What kind of food can you cook ?

Nada : (2) ..... It's easy to make.

Norhan : (3) ?

Nada : Because there are not a lot of ingredients.

Norhan : (4) ?

Nada : Yes, I need rice, milk and sugar in this recipe.

Norhan : Are there any raisins in this recipe ?

Nada : (5)

Answer : 4/ Monishah 2022

## Step 3

## writing

اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

## Write a paragraph on :

"Rice pudding"

Answer : 4/ Monishah 2022

"How to make lunch"

Mona and Hend are making lunch.

Mona : I'm hungry. Let's make lunch.

Hend : (1) ..... There is some salad.

(2)

Mona : No, there isn't any hummus.

Hend : There are some olives.

Good. Is there any cheese ?

(3)

Hend : What about figs ?

(4)

Mona : No, there aren't any figs

Are there any raisins ?

(5)

Answer : 4/ Monishah 2022

"How to make lunch"

1. A. Let's make

B. OK. That's a great idea.

2. A. Is there any

B. No, there isn't.

3. A. Are there any

B. Yes, there are.

Answer : 4/ Monishah 2022





## Language

1

### Countable nouns

- الأسماء التي [تعد] لها [مفرد وجمع].
- الاسم المفرد الذي [يُعد] يسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

### Countable and uncountable nouns

- الأسماء التي تُعد والتي لا تُعد

### Uncountable nouns

- الأسماء التي لا تُعد [ليس لها جمع] وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الاسم المفرد الذي [لا يُعد] لا يُسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

an apple	تفاحة	apples
a potato	ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes
a man	رجل	men
an ox	ثور	oxen
a loaf	خبز	loaves

hummus	حمص (طحيه)	water	ماء
furniture	أثاث	money	قود
salt	ملح	sugar	سكر
advice	نصيحة	news	أخبار
cheese	جبن	milk	لب

**ex.** - Apples contain vitamins. (اسم يُعد countable noun)

- Milk is very useful. (اسم لا يُعد uncountable noun)

2

## some - any

### -(a)-some

◀ تستخدم [some] بمعنى [بعض] في الحالات الآتية :

#### 1. Countable nouns :

1. مع الأسماء التي تُعد في صيغة الجمع :

some books | some chairs | some eggs

**ex.** - I have some books.

#### 2. Uncountable nouns :

2. مع الأسماء التي لا تُعد لتشير إلى كمية غير محددة :

some water | some sugar | some salad

**ex.** - She has some juice.

◀ تستخدم [some] في السؤال في حالة العرض والطلب :

**ex.** - Would you like some tea ? [عرض]

- Can I have some water, please ? [طلب]



**(b) any**

تستخدم [any] بمعنى (أي) في الحالات الآتية :

**Negative statements :**

• في الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

(مع الأسماء الجمع التي تعد والأسماء التي لا تعد) :

**ex.** - There aren't any vegetables in the fridge.

- There isn't any **meat** in the dish.

**Interrogative :**

• في صيغة الاستفهام :

**ex.** - Do you have any tomatoes ? (countable noun اسم يعد)

- Is there any salad in the dish ? (uncountable noun اسم لا يعد)



**Exercises**

**on Language**

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

► **SB , WB & Previous Exams**

1. Would you like ..... tea ?

(Dakahlia - East Mansouta 2023)

a. any

b. some

c. a lot

d. many

2. ~~There~~ There is some salt, but there ..... any crisps.

a. is

b. are

(Qalyubia - Shubra Al Khayma 2022)

c. aren't

d. isn't

3. ~~There~~ There are ..... peppers, too.

(Gharbia - Multidisciplinary 2021)

a. some

b. any

c. an

d. much

4. ~~Is~~ Is there ..... cheese in the dish ?

a. no

b. any

c. some

d. many

5. We don't have ..... money.

(Cairo - El Zeitoun 2020)

a. many

b. some

c. any

d. lots

6. Our new furniture ..... wonderful.

(Sharkia - Belbeis 2022)

a. are

b. were

c. have

d. is

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

7. There ..... apples in the fridge.

a. is any

b. are any

c. are some

d. is some

(Sharkia - Belbeis 2023 - Dakahlia - Meet Ghannay 2022)

8. Are there ..... tomatoes in the fridge ?

a. some

b. any

c. much

d. no






9. Meat ..... my favourite food.  
 a. are                      b. am                      c. is                      d. aren't
10. Can I have ..... orange juice, please ?  
 a. any                      b. some                      c. many                      d. a lot

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. There are any girls in the room. (Qalyubia - Khusus 2023) ( ..... )
2.  Is there any figs in the fridge ? ( ..... )
3. There aren't any milk to make hot chocolate. ( ..... )
4. We haven't got some computers in this room.

(Alexandria - Wasat 2020) ( ..... )

5. Do you like to have any fresh fruits ? ( ..... )

### ► El- Moasser-Exercises

6. I don't have some free time today. ( ..... )
7. Are there any sugar ? ( ..... )
8. Can I have any water ? ( ..... )
9. There isn't any canals near our village. ( ..... )
10. There is students in our classroom. ( ..... )



## Quick Look

An hour before the exam

مراجعة المنهج

والتمكن منه في ساعة

واحدة فقط في نهاية ملحق

A Week is enough



**a lot of, enough, too much, too many**

يمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات مع الأسماء التي تُعد والاسماء التي لا تُعد.

1	a lot of كثير من	+	countable noun اسم يعد	ex. - There are a lot of books.
		+	uncountable noun اسم لا يعد	ex. - There is a lot of sugar.
2	enough كاف	+	countable noun اسم يعد	ex. - Salma has enough pens.
		+	uncountable noun اسم لا يعد	ex. - Sama has enough milk.
3	too many عدد أكثر من اللازم	+	countable noun اسم يعد جمع	ex. - There are too many boys.
		+	uncountable noun اسم لا يعد	ex. - There is too much sugar.



**Exercises**

**on Language**

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► SB , WB & Previous Exams

- There are too ..... raisins on rice pudding. (Bem Saef - Naser 2023)  
a. many                      b. much                      c. some                      d. any
- There are too many people and not ..... chairs. (Cairo - Hade El Sheria 2022 - Monaha - Quesna 2024)  
a. much                      b. no                      c. enough                      d. some





3. ~~W~~ I don't like this tea. There is too ..... sugar in it.

- a. many                      b. few                      c. much                      d. lot

4. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we shouldn't drink ..... of it.

(Gharbia - Multidisciplinary 2021)

- a. too much                      b. too many                      c. many                      d. enough

5. There's ..... rice for you all.

(Alexandria - El Agami 2020)

- a. many                      b. any                      c. lot                      d. enough

6. There is too much ..... on the floor. Watch out!

- a. colours                      b. water                      c. toys                      d. people

### ► El-Moasser Exercises

7. My little sister had ..... presents in her birthday.

- a. too much                      b. lot                      c. very                      d. too many

8. You don't have ..... money to buy a new bag.

- a. too                      b. enough                      c. lot                      d. very

9. We'd like to have ..... hummus with kofta.

- a. many                      b. too many                      c. a lot                      d. a lot of

10. There is ..... milk in the bottle.

- a. many                      b. too many                      c. enough                      d. a lot

## 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

### ► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. Too many sugar is bad for our bodies. (.....)

2. ~~M~~ There is a lot sugar. (Bassoun - Gharbia 2022) (.....)

3. There are enough people on this beach. Let's go to a different one.

(West Tanta - Gharbia 2020) (.....)

4. ~~M~~ There isn't too many milk. (.....)

5. ~~W~~ Mrs Amal has too much friends. (.....)

### ► El-Moasser Exercises

6. There isn't too many tomatoes. (.....)

7. There are too much apples. (.....)

8. There are too many olive. (.....)

9. I didn't drink the tea. It had too many sugar. (.....)

10. There are to much rice in the kitchen. (.....)



# General Exercises

LESSONS

1 & 2

● Understand

● Apply

● Create



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واحتر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. There are a lot of rice pudding ..... online.  
a. recipes      b. books      c. ingredients      d. instructions
2. There is enough rice pudding for the whole .....  
a. girls      b. family      c. boys      d. teachers
3. There is a lot of ..... in the recipe.  
a. cinnamon      b. nuts      c. milk      d. sugar
4. I like sweet .....  
a. raisins      b. cinnamon      c. food      d. milk

(West Janta - Uthurbia 2020)

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

**Mona and Hend are making lunch.**

**Mona :** I'm hungry. Let's make lunch.

**Hend :** (1) ..... There is some salad. (2) ..... ?

**Mona :** No, there isn't any hummus, but there are some olives.

**Hend :** There are some peppers, too.

**Mona :** Good. Is there any cheese ?

**Hend :** (3) .....

**Mona :** What about figs ? Are there any figs ?

**Hend :** (4) .....

**Mona :** (5) ..... ?

**Hend :** Yes, there are a lot of raisins.

(Bent Mazar-Menia 2020)

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I like eating rice pudding. It's very .....  
a. bad      b. unhealthy      c. scary      d. delicious  
(Sedfa - Assiut 2023)
2. The main ..... of salad are tomatoes, cucumbers and onions.  
a. kinds      b. types      c. Ingredients      d. colours  
(Assiut 2023)



3. "Slow" is the opposite of ".....".  
a. flat                      b. modern                      c. quick                      d. terrible
4. A ..... means a set of instructions for cooking food.  
a. bill                      b. ball                      c. hill                      d. recipe
5. You can have ..... after your meal as a dessert.  
a. cinnamon                      b. rice pudding                      c. olives                      d. beans
6. To ..... is to move around ingredients, sugar, etc. with a spoon.  
a. add                      b. cook                      c. stir                      d. bring
7. ~~There~~ There ..... any olives at the market today.  
a. isn't                      b. aren't                      c. is                      d. are
8. The ship sank as there were ..... people on it. (North Gaza-Gaza 2022)  
a. enough                      b. much                      c. a lot                      d. too many
9. We don't need to share because there is ..... rice for everyone.  
a. enough                      b. too many                      c. many                      d. a lot
10. You can put the raisins, ..... and nuts on top of rice pudding.  
a. olives                      b. saucepan                      c. cinnamon                      d. salad

**4** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. There are too much cars in the street. ( )
2. No, there aren't some figs. ( )
3. There is many water in the jug. ( )
4. Are there any biscuits ? - No, there isn't. ( )

**5** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

**"Your favourite food"**



## Lessons

# 3 & 4

SB pages 58 & 59

WB pages 111 & 112



## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

fizzy drinks (n)	مشروبات غازية	snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
taste (d) (v) , (n)	بتذوق / طعم	cooking pot (n)	وعاء للطبخ
teeth (n)	أسنان	dinner time (n)	وقت العشاء
meal (n)	وجبة	tagine (n)	طاجين [أكلة في دوتة المغرب]
onions (n)	بصل	pasta (n)	مكرونة
chocolate (n)	شيكولاتة	vegetables (n)	خضروات



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

meals - fizzy drinks - tagine - pasta

1. Drinking fruit juice is more healthy than drinking \_\_\_\_\_ .
2. Koshari includes rice and \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. We have three \_\_\_\_\_ a day : breakfast, lunch and dinner.



SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 111

article (n)	مقال	introduction (n)	مقدمة
fat (n)	دهن	type (n)	نوع
weight (n)	وزن	illness (n)	مرض
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحي	situation (n)	موقف
caused (d) (v), (n)	سبب - بسبب		



SB page 60 WB page 112

traditional (adj)	تقليدي	amazing (adj)	رائع / مذهل
nyama na irio	[نياما نايريو]	shepherd's pie	قطيرة الراعي
طبق لحم مع بطاطس مطهي على نار هادئة		لحم بالحصار والبطاطس [بايكلترا]	





kapenta	[كابنتا]	dry (ied) (v)	يجفف
	طبق أسماك مشهور في زيمبابوي	Zimbabwe (n)	دولة زيمبابوي
stew (n)	الطهي على نار هادئة / طاجن لحم مع خضار	spices (n)	نوابل

### Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

bean	a long, narrow green vegetable that you usually eat cooked	فول
chocolate	a sweet food that is made from cocoa beans	شيكولاتة
fat	natural oil in food	دهون
fizzy drinks	a drink that has bubbles and a lot of sugar	مشروبات غازية
fruit juice	the liquid from a fruit that you can drink	عصير فاكهة
salt	a natural, white ingredient that can come from the sea, it makes food taste better	ملح
snack	a small amount of food that you eat between meals	وجبة خفيفة
spices	parts of a plant that you can put in food to give it a special taste	نوابل
stew	a meal made with meat and vegetables in one pot	طاجن لحم مع خضار

### Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات		
Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
bad for ضار بـ	harmful to	good for مفيد لـ
careful حريص / حذر	cautious	careless مهمل
hungry جائع	starving	full شبعان
type نوع	kind	
healthy صحي	well	unhealthy غير صحي



Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة ونهاية		
Suffix / Prefix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
- ness	يكون الاسم من الصفة	illness مرض
- al	يكون الصفة من الاسم	traditional تقليدي
un-	تعطي عكس المعنى	unhealthy غير صحي



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Fruits are a healthy snack. The opposite of "healthy" is .  
a. unhealthy    b. unpopular    c. irregular    d. health
- We add the suffix \_\_\_\_\_ to form the adjective of the word "tradition".  
a. -ness    b. -ment    c. -ly    d. -al
- There are many types of birds. The word "type" has the same meaning of the word ".....".  
a. role    b. kind    c. way    d. road
- You should be careful. The antonym of "careful" is ".....".  
a. guarded    b. healthy    c. careless    d. angry
- We use the prefix "....." to get the opposite of healthy.  
a. im -    b. il -    c. en -    d. un -
- To get the noun from the adjective "ill", we use the suffix ".....".  
a. - ion    b. - less    c. - ness    d. - tion
- The synonym of "hungry" is ".....".  
a. starving    b. full    c. careless    d. careful



## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 everyone + فعل مفرد

- - Everyone loves snacks. They love eating the snacks between meals.

ولكن لاحظ عند التعويض عليها بضمير ستخدم ضمير الجمع (they) وفعل جمع.

Reading on lesson 3 SB page 58

### 2 a piece of / pieces of + uncountable noun

- - I want a piece of bread.  
- I eat four pieces of fruit a day.

Reading on lesson 3 SB page 58





### 3 fruit + فعل مفرد

► **SB** Fruit is a great snack.

Reading on lesson 3 SB page 58

### 4 stew (n/v)

\* stew (n)

طعام مطهو على نار هادئة/طاجن لحم بالخضار

► Tagine is a **stew** with meat, vegetables and spices.

\* stew (ed) (v)

يطهو على نار هادئة

► I left the meat to **stew**.

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 60

### 5 catch

catch fish بصطاد سمك

catch a ball بمسك كرة

معاني مختلفة للفعل

catch a thief يقبض على لص

catch a bus يلحق بالأتوبيس

Reading on lesson 4 SB page 60

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions	Prepositions
It's the best way <b>to</b> ...	أفضل طريقة لـ
It's OK <b>to</b> ...	من الأفضل أن
It's a good idea <b>to</b> ...	إنها فكرة جيدة أن
stop eating (something) ..	يتوقف عن تناول (شيء) نهائياً ..
Be careful !	احترس / احذرا
order food	يطلب طعاماً
see a doctor	يزور طبيباً
make delicious snacks	يعد وجبات خفيفة لذيذة
a glass of	كوب من
cause illness	يسبب مرض
Is that everything ?	هل هذا كل شيء ؟
cook (something) <b>with</b> ..	يطهو شيء مع شيء آخر ..
even <b>with</b> ...	حتى مع
give advice <b>on</b> ...	يعطي نصيحة عن
a type <b>of</b>	نوع من
come <b>from</b>	يأتي من
<b>at</b> dinner time	في وقت العشاء
need <b>to</b> + inf./n	يحتاج إلى
a piece <b>of</b>	قطعة من
careful <b>with</b>	حريص على
add <b>to</b>	يضيف على
a meal <b>with</b>	وجبة بها





## Skills



## Reading and Listening



## Listening

## • on Lesson 3 SB page 59

**Presenter** : It's important to eat the **right** things, but we shouldn't **forget** about what we drink. Dr Randa Zaki is here to tell us more. Dr Randa, what should we drink ?

**Dr Randa** : Well, we should drink a lot of water. Water is **great** because it hasn't got any **fat**<sup>(4)</sup> or sugar.

**Presenter** : OK, so we should drink more water. And which drinks are bad for us ?

**Dr Randa** : Some drinks have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth.

**Presenter** : So we shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar. Some **fizzy drinks** don't have any sugar. Are they OK ?

**Dr Randa** : No, fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth, even when they don't have sugar.

**Presenter** : So we shouldn't have fizzy drinks. Are there any drinks good for our teeth ?

**Dr Randa** : Yes, milk is good for our teeth. We should **try** to drink a glass of milk every day.



(١) صحيح / مناسب  
بنسي  
رائع / عظيم  
دهن  
(٤) مشروبات غازية  
يحاول

## Listening skill

⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

\*..... hasn't got any fat or sugar.

a. Fizzy drink      b. Milk      c. Water      d. Juice

## • on Lesson 4 WB page 112

**Boy 1** : In England, people often have a traditional meal called shepherd's pie. You make it with meat, carrots and other vegetables with potatoes on top. It is wonderful. My favourite meal is shepherd's pie, and then chocolate ice cream!





## Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 58

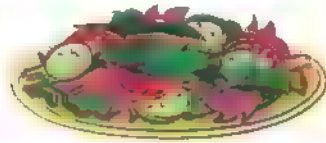
### Healthy Snacks<sup>(1)</sup>

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are **bad for**<sup>(2)</sup> us. What is the **best way**<sup>(3)</sup> to enjoy healthy snacks?

#### Crisps and cakes

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them.

Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this **type** of<sup>(4)</sup> food is bad for our bodies.



#### Fantastic fruit

Fruit is a great snack! It is very **good for**<sup>(5)</sup> us and most people like the sweet taste. You should eat between two and four **pieces of**<sup>(6)</sup> fruit a **day**<sup>(7)</sup>.

#### Beans and vegetables

Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks **like**<sup>(8)</sup> hummus with carrot and pepper are delicious.

#### Be careful<sup>(9)</sup>!

We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

5 مفيد لـ	4 نوع من	4 أفضل طريقة	2 ضار لـ	1 وجبات خفيفة صحية
	(9) كن حذراً	(8) مثل	(7) في اليوم الواحد	(6) قطع من

• on Lesson 4 SB page 60

### Food in Africa

Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite meal is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.





### Marwa

I live in **Morocco**<sup>(1)</sup>. **Tagine**<sup>(2)</sup> is a traditional meal from my country. It is a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. The taste is amazing! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.

### Hamza

In Kenya, people often make nyama na irio for dinner. It is a **stew**<sup>(3)</sup> with meat and potatoes. It is wonderful! I love eating it after school when I am very hungry!



### Makena

**Kapenta**<sup>(4)</sup> is a popular<sup>(5)</sup> type of fish in Zimbabwe. We catch the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. We often cook it with tomatoes and **onions**<sup>(6)</sup>. It is great!



### Bradley

**Answer**  
the following  
questions :

- Giving the main idea

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

**Learn**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

*"Food in Africa"*

- Extracting information

إستخراج المعلومات

**Practise**

2. What is the traditional meal in Morocco ?

(1) دولة المغرب

(2) طاجين

(3) طاجين يطهى على

نار هادئة

(4) كابنتا) أكلة سمك

في زيمبابوي

(5) شعبى / محبوب

(6) بصل



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

(a) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

#### ► Key vocabulary

1. This dish ..... delicious. I like it.

a. tastes

b. sounds

c. goes

d. does

2. .... is a type of vegetables that has a strong smell.

a. Potato

b. Carrot

c. Bean

d. Onion

3. Tagine is the name of a ..... and a cooking pot in Morocco.

a. mile

b. dress

c. drink

d. meal





4. She went to the dentist to check her .....

- a. fingers      b. teeth      c. bones      d. senses

► **SB , WB & Previous Exams**

5. Beans are a/an ..... meal for breakfast in Egypt.

*Ban Saif - Biba 2020*

- a. bad      b. unhealthy      c. traditional      d. unusual

6. .... give food a delicious taste.

*Beit ra - Kqr F - Dawa 2020 - Qena 2020*

- a. Cultures      b. Spices      c. Reviews      d. Spaces

7. We should be careful, even with ..... foods.

*Scarb Giza 2020*

- a. healthy      b. unhealthy      c. fast      d. bad

8. People ..... dates to keep it for a long time.

*Kqr F US Shendi - Bafra 2022*

- a. taste      b. dry      c. bake      d. fire

9.  Kapenta is a ..... of fish in Zimbabwe.

*CA - Giza 2020 - Mithras plmar 2020*

- a. colour      b. tape      c. type      d. size

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

10. Fruits and nuts are healthy ..... between meals.

- a. menus      b. snacks      c. times      d. diagrams

11. Cold is a familiar ..... in winter.

- a. illness      b. meal      c. stew      d. sport

12. Our science teacher drew a ..... on the board to show the experiment.

- a. sheep      b. dog      c. diagram      d. river

► **Definitions**

13. .... is a sweet food that is made from cocoa beans.

- a. Cake      b. Juice      c. Jam      d. Chocolate

14. .... is a natural, white ingredient that can come from the sea.

- a. Sugar      b. Pepper      c. Salt      d. Spices

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. Eating healthy food is the best ..... to be fit.

- a. road      b. form      c. way      d. shape

16. You should ..... after your teeth and don't eat much chocolate.

- a. make      b. take      c. look      d. give



## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### 1. Asking and answering about good and bad snacks :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الوجبات الخفيفة الجيدة والضارة :

Questions	Answers
• Which snacks do you eat ? - ما الوجبات الخفيفة التي تتناولها ؟	- I eat biscuits and crisps. اتناول البسكويت والمقرمشات.
• Which snacks are good for you ? - أى من الوجبات الخفيفة مفيدة لك ؟	- Fruits are good for me. الفواكه مفيدة لى.
• Which snacks are bad for you ? - أى من الوجبات الخفيفة ضارة بك ؟	- Chocolate and biscuits are bad for me. الشيكولاته والبسكويت أطعمة ضارة بى.

### 2. A discussion about your favourite food :

مناقشة عن طعامك المفضل :

Questions	Answers
• What is your favourite food ? - ما هو طعامك المفضل ؟	- My favourite food is koshari. طعامى المفضل هو أكلة الكشرى.
• What is in it ? - ماذا يوجد فى هذه الأكلة ؟	- There is rice, pasta, lentils and tomatoes. يوجد بها أرز ومكرونة وعدس وطماطم.
• How can you describe it ? - كيف يمكنك وصفها ؟	- It is a delicious meal and it is very popular in Egypt. انها وجبة لذيذة ومشهورة جدًا فى مصر.

## 3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

### Your favourite food طعامك المفضل

1. My favourite food is ....  
طعامى المفضل هو ....
2. It is a delicious meal with ... and ...  
انها وجبة لذيذة بها ... و ...
3. Its ingredients are ... and ...  
مكوناتها هى ...
4. I often eat it with ... and ...  
غالبًا ما اتناولها مع ... و ...
5. It is very popular in ...  
انها وجبة مشهورة جدًا فى [بلد] ...
6. It is a healthy meal.  
انها وجبة صحية.



<b>Step 1</b> Vocabulary اختبر إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	<b>Step 2</b> Speaking اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة التحدث	<b>Step 3</b> Writing اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
<p><b>Read and complete :</b></p> <p>1. A. What's your favourite ..... ? B. I like fish.</p> <p>2. A. Can you ..... food well ? B. Yes, I can.</p> <p>3. A. .... ? B. I can make pizza.</p>	<p><b>Complete the following dialogue :</b> Samira is asking Nadia about her favourite food.</p> <p>Samira : Good morning, Nadia. What's your favourite food ? Nadia : Good morning, Samira (1) .....</p> <p>Samira : I like fish very much, too. Nadia : (2) ..... ? Samira : Yes, I can cook food very well. Nadia : What kind of food can you cook ? Samira : (3) ..... I help my mum at home. Nadia : (4) ..... ? Samira : Yes, I enjoy cooking with my mother. What about you ? Nadia : (5) .....</p>	<p><b>Write a paragraph on :</b> "Your favourite food"</p>
<p>1. A. What are you doing now ? B. I ..... koshari.</p> <p>2. A. What are the ..... of koshari ? B. Rice, tomatoes and pasta.</p> <p>3. A. Does it have ..... in it ? B. No, it doesn't have any meat.</p>	<p>Rana and Mai are talking about koshari.</p> <p>Rana : What are you doing now ? Mai : (1) ..... Rana : Fantastic. Mai : Its ingredients are rice, tomatoes and pasta. Rana : ..... Mai : Yes, koshari is very delicious. Rana : Does it have meat in it ? Mai : ..... What about you ? Rana : ..... Mai : Kofta is very delicious, too.</p>	<p>"Koshari"</p>





## Language

## Giving advice using "should &amp; shouldn't"

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (should & shouldn't) بمعنى ينبغي أن / لا ينبغي أن  
تستخدم الصيغ التالية لإعطاء النصيحة.

**should**  
**shouldn't**

► Subject الفاعل + should + inf. المصدر

ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بفعل شيء جيد أو مفيد»

+ ex. - You **should** eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.

► Subject الفاعل + shouldn't + inf. المصدر

لا ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل شيء غير جيد أو غير مفيد»

ex. - You **shouldn't** eat too many crisps and cakes.

## Interrogative

**Yes / No question**

► Should + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ؟

ex. - **Should** we eat lots of fish ?

- Yes, you **should**.

- No, you **shouldn't**.

**Wh-question**

► Question word + should + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ؟  
كلمة الاستفهام

ex. - What **should** I eat ?



## Exercises

## on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. You ..... be late for school.

a. haven't

b. have

c. should

(Gharbia – Busyoun 2023)

d. shouldn't





2. You shouldn't ..... much coffee. (Part Said East 2022)  
 a. to drink      b. drink to      c. drink      d. drank
3. WB The pan is very hot. You ..... touch it. (Cairo Shomuk 2022)  
 a. shouldn't      b. can      c. haven't      d. should
4. WB We ..... drink a glass of milk every day. (Part Said East 2022)  
 a. shouldn't      b. can't      c. mustn't      d. should

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

5. Why ..... I be quiet in the library ?  
 a. don't      b. shouldn't      c. should      d. has
6. Should I ..... the medicine now ?  
 a. takes      b. took      c. taking      d. take
7. What should I ..... to get high marks ?  
 a. do      b. did      c. does      d. done
8. When it is windy, you ..... go out.  
 a. should      b. must      c. shouldn't      d. might

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

► **SB , WB & Previous Exams**

1. WB You should have fizzy drinks. (Part Said East 2022)
2. WB You shouldn't eating snacks in the class. (Part Said East 2022)
3. You should to clean your teeth before sleeping. (Part Said East 2022)
4. Why should I following the school rules ? (Part Said East 2022)

► **El-Moasser Exercises**

5. They should go out if you have a bad cold. ( )
6. You shouldn't look after your health. ( )
7. They should were careful when they cross the road. ( )
8. We should have drinks with a lot of sugar. ( )



# General Exercises

## LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

### 1 Complete the following dialogue :

Heba and her mother are talking about healthy and unhealthy snacks.

**Mother :** What are you eating, Heba ?

Heba : (1) .....

**Mother :** (2) .....

Heba : I know they're not good for my teeth but I like sweets, mum.

**Mother :** I know, but you shouldn't eat too many sweets.

Heba : (3) ..... ?

**Mother :** Because they have too much sugar.

Heba : (4) ..... ?

**Mother :** You should eat fruits and vegetables.

Heba : (5) .....

(Sharkia – West Zagazig 2020)

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The food that we eat today is similar to the food that the ancient Egyptians ate a long time ago. The ancient Egyptians ate a lot of bread. In fact, people believe that the ancient Egyptians made the first bread in the world. The ancient Egyptians used the land near the Nile to grow a lot of different fruits and vegetables. They also grew enough wheat to make bread. Bread was a very important food in ancient Egypt. Scientists found some bread in the tomb of Mentuhotep the Second in Luxor. It was four thousand years old. Pharaohs and other important people ate bread with a lot of fruit such as figs and dates. They also had it with honey. Bread is still important today.

(Giza – El Saf 2020)

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..... .

- a. date                      b. fruit                      c. bread                      d. honey

2. The bread in the tomb was ..... years old.

- a. 40000                      b. 4000                      c. 400                      d. 1400

3. The opposite of the underlined word "similar" is ..... .

- a. different                      b. small                      c. difficult                      d. enough

#### b. Answer the following questions :


4. What is this passage about ?

5. Who made the first bread in the world ?



6. What do you think of the ancient Egyptians ?

**3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- 1. When it is windy, you ..... go out. (Giza - El-Badrushein 2023)  
a. should      b. must      c. might      d. shouldn't
- 2. After we put sugar in tea, we should ....., it well.  
a. star      b. stir      c. stair      d. stare
- 3. We can ..... with our tongues.  
a. smell      b. taste      c. touch      d. look
- 4.  We ..... eat too much cake. It has too much sugar in it.  
a. should      b. shouldn't      c. must      d. can
- 5. To ..... means to cook something slowly in a liquid.  
a. bake      b. throw      c. stew      d. roast
- 6. To be ....., what should I do ?  
a. fit      b. fat      c. thirsty      d. hungry
- 7. Vegetables are good ..... your health.  
a. for      b. at      c. of      d. in
- 8. You should be ..... about what you drink and eat.  
a. helpful      b. careful      c. useful      d. beautiful
- 9. Rice, pasta and tomatoes are the main ..... of koshari.  
a. recipes      b. ingredients      c. members      d. fans
- 10. Bad food brings terrible .....  
a. happiness      b. money      c. illness      d. joy

**4 Read and correct the underlined words :**

- 1. They should to drink healthy water. (Cairo - East Cairo 2023 / Sharkia - Mashtool 2023) ( ..... )
- 2. I should watch TV before I finish my homework. ( ..... )
- 3. You shouldn't plays in busy roads. ( ..... )
- 4. You shouldn't eat healthy snacks. ( ..... )

**5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

**"Healthy food"**

(Sadat - Momtha 2023 / Ibtisam El-Badrushein - El-Badrushein 2023)





# Lesson 5 & 6

SB pages 61 & 62  
WB pages 113 & 114

## Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

menu (n)	قائمة طعام	customer (n)	زبون
pounds (n)	جنيهات	café (n)	مقهى
chef (n)	رئيس طهاة	waiter (n)	جرسون



### Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

customers - café - waiter - menu - chef

- The ..... helps people in the restaurant.
- This café is popular. It has a lot of .....
- Give me the ....., please to choose my favourite meal.
- Let's have coffee at the .....

### Lesson 7

SB page 61 WB page 113

apple juice (n)	عصير تفاح	order (ed) (v), (n)	يطلب / طلب
chicken pizza (n)	بيتزا بالفراخ	practise (d) (v)	يتدرب - يتمرن

### Lesson 8

SB page 62 WB page 114

walls (n)	جدران	sweets (n)	حلوى
basbousa (n)	بسبوسة	soon (adv)	قريبًا / في القريب العاجل
kunafa (n)	كنافة	real (adj)	حقيقي
weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	details (n)	تفاصيل
fresh (adj)	طازج	support (ed)(v)	يدعم / يساند
hope (d) (v)	يأمل / يتمنى	reasons (n)	أسباب / مبررات





### Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
cost يتكلف	cost	cost
grow ينمو / يكبر	grew	grown
leave يغادر	left	left
choose يختار	chose	chosen

### Vocabulary Study

#### Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym/Opposite المضاد
much كثير (للكمية)	—	little قليل (للكمية)
real حقيقي	true - actual	unreal غير حقيقي
large كبير (الحجم)	big	small صغير

#### Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix & Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
un -	تعطي عكس المعنى	unreal غير حقيقي
- er	تكوّن الاسم من الفعل	waiter جرسون



### Exercise on Vocabulary Study

☉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- They have little money as they are poor. The antonym of "little" is .....  
a. much      b. a few      c. tall      d. small
- The prefix ..... forms the opposite of the word "real".  
a. in-      b. un-      c. dis-      d. ir-
- The word "real" has the same meaning as ".....".  
a. true      b. traditional      c. amazing      d. windy
- We add the suffix "....." to the verb "wait" to form a noun.  
a. -less      b. -er      c. -able      d. -ness





## General Notes on Reading & Listening

\* d like / 'd love / 'd prefer → (to + inf.)

يود / يرغب في

▶ - What would you like to have ?

- I'd prefer to have cheese pizza.

\* I'd like some + noun.

▶ - I'd like some chicken pizza.

Listening on lesson 5 SB page 61

### Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
look very nice	يبدو لطيفة جدًا	look out of the window	ينظر من الشباك
the part we enjoyed most	الجزء الذي استمتعنا به كثيرًا	come to	يصل إلى
Here you are.	تفضل.	go back to	يعود إلى
have fish with rice	يتناول السمك مع الأرز	for lunch	لتناول وجبة الغداء
different than usual	مختلف عن المعتاد	the beach	على الشاطئ



### Skills

### Reading and Listening

#### Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 61

**Assistant** : Hello. What would you like today ?

**Customer** : I'd like a cheese and tomato pizza, please

**Assistant** : OK. Anything else ?

**Customer** : Yes, a salad, please.

**Assistant** : Small or large ?

**Customer** : Small, please.

**Assistant** : And would you like any drinks ?

**Customer** : Have you got any fruit juice ?

**Assistant** : Yes, we've got apple juice and orange juice.

**Customer** : I'd like an orange juice, please.







**Assistant** : Is that everything ?

**Customer** : Yes, it is.

**Assistant** : That's 105 pounds, please.

**Customer** : Thank you, here you are.

### Listening skill

- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d
- The customer chose : ..... Juice.  
a. apple                      b. pineapple    c. strawberry    d. orange

### Reading

#### • on Lesson 5 WB page 113

**Waiter** : Hello. What would you like today ?

**You** : Hello. Have you got any **pizza** ?

**Waiter** : Yes. Small or large ?

**You** : **Large**, please.

**Waiter** : What would you like to drink ?

**You** : I'd like some **cola**, please.

**Waiter** : Anything else ?

**You** : No, thank you. How much are these ?

**Waiter** : That's **thirty** pounds, please.

**You** : Thank you, here you are.

#### • on Lesson 6 SB page 62

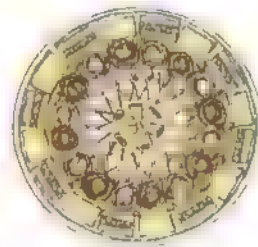
### City Café

**Great visit ! \*\*\*\*\***

Review by : Sara

I visited this café last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We chose this café **for lunch**<sup>(1)</sup> because it **looked very nice**<sup>(2)</sup>. The walls were green and white and there were big windows. (I love **looking out of**<sup>(3)</sup> the window and watching the city).

Ashraf and I both had rice for lunch. I had fish with rice and he had chicken. My dad had fish with rice, too, and mum had a salad. It's very healthy ! We all liked our food.





After lunch, Ashraf and I had desserts. This was the part we enjoyed most! There were a lot of different desserts and they all looked delicious! I chose basbousa and Ashraf had kunafa. They were amazing!!!

I'd like to visit this café again (very soon)!

• 1) على وجبة العشاء 2) يبدو لطيف جدًا 3) ينظر من

• on Lesson 6 WB page 114

1. I want to write about an amazing meal

I remember. I visited my cousins in Damietta last summer with my dad, mother and sister. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. (It was wonderful watching the boats on the water.)



2. I had my favourite meal, koshari. I love koshari but this was different than usual. It was delicious. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea. We all liked our food.



3. We then all had Egyptian Rice Pudding.

There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.

4. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again (one day)!

Answer  
the following  
questions :

Giving the main idea

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.  
- *An amazing meal in Damietta.*

- Critical thinking skill

2. Do you think they had healthy dessert ? Why / Why not ?

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

مهارة التفكير النقدي





• on Lesson 6 WB page 114

A meal which I always remember is fish and rice at a great restaurant in Alexandria. I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to the restaurant again soon.



## Exercise

### on Vocabulary

☉ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

► Key vocabulary

- The ..... is a person who cooks in a restaurant.  
a. customer      b. assistant      c. chef      d. waiter
- Our ..... enjoy having our different kinds of pizza every day.  
a. waiters      b. pupils      c. customers      d. patients
- A :** How much is the pen ? - **B :** Five .....  
a. pills      b. pounds      c. bins      d. ponds
- There are different dishes on the ..... in this restaurant.  
a. menu      b. list      c. recipe      d. ingredients

► SB , WB & Previous Exams

- The ..... serves food and drinks in a restaurant. *(Allyan Saef - Nismeh 2023)*  
a. water      b. mechanic      c. winter      d. waiter
- ~~6.~~ We stayed on the ..... and enjoyed the sea. *(Cairo - Malla caption 2021)*  
a. beach      b. desert      c. moon      d. valley
- I like to drink ..... juice. I don't like soda. *(Qalyoubia - Bechar 2022)*  
a. large      b. quick      c. real      d. fresh
- First, look at the ..... then choose your dish. *(Kaf El Shakh - El Kadi 2020)*  
a. foot      b. menu      c. meat      d. plate
- They built high ..... around the garden to keep plants safe.  
a. wars      b. weeds      c. walls      d. ways

*(Allyan Saef - Nismeh 2023)*



► **El-Moasser Exercises**

10. We asked him the ..... for being late.  
a. reason                      b. hope                      c. meal                      d. prize
11. I eat a lot of olives because they are ..... for me.  
a. bad                      b. unhealthy                      c. good                      d. ugly
12. You should ..... the topic sentence with other sentences in a paragraph.  
a. stop                      b. support                      c. forget                      d. hope
13. .... is a famous Egyptian dessert.  
a. Pasta                      b. Salad                      c. Basbousa                      d. Tagine
14. I ..... we can visit the new restaurant.  
a. hope                      b. include                      c. find                      d. cost

► **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. We had fish ..... rice for lunch yesterday.  
a. in                      b. of                      c. for                      d. with
16. Children should be careful and not to look ..... low windows.  
a. of                      b. out                      c. out of                      d. away from

**2. Speaking**

مهارة الحديث

► **1. Ordering food in a café :**

طلب طعام في كافيتيريا .

Waiter	جرسون	Customer	زبون
• What would you like to have ? ماذا تحب أن تسأل ؟		► - I'd like to have + (اسم طعام / مشروب). أرغب في تناول	
- We've got ..... لدينا ...		► • Have you got any ..... ? هل يوجد لديكم أي ..... ؟	
- Here you are. ههنا		- Yes, I'd like some meat. نعم أود بعض من اللحم.	
• Anything else ? هل تريد شيئاً آخر ؟		- No, thanks. لا، شكراً لك	
• That's + رقم + pounds. إنها مبلغ ... جنيهات.		► - How much does it cost ? كم الثمن ؟	



## ► 2. Giving advice :

إعطاء النصيحة :

You **الفاعل** + should / shouldn't + **المصدر** inf.**ex.** - You should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.

- يجب عليك تناول الكثير من الفواكه والخضروات.

- You shouldn't eat too many crisps and cakes.

- لا يجب أن تناول كميات كبيرة من المقرمشات والكيك.



## Pop Quiz

## on Speaking

## ⊙ Complete the following dialogue :

Adel is at the supermarket.

Adel : Hello, How are you ?

Assistant : Hello, (1) ..... . How can I help you ?

Adel : (2) ..... ?

Assistant : Yes, we have got some cheese. How much do you want ?

Adel : I (3) ..... .

Assistant : Here you are.

Adel : (4) ..... ?

Assistant : It is thirty pounds.

Adel : Thanks a lot.

Assistant : (5) ..... .

Bachra Mahmoudiya 2022



## Writing

## مهارة الكتابة

## A review of a café مقال نقدي عن مطعم

1. I visited a café yesterday. لقد زرت مطعم أمس.
2. I went there with my mum, dad and my brother. ذهبنا لهناك مع أمي و أبي وأخي.
3. We chose this café for lunch because it looked nice. قمنا باختيار هذا المطعم لتناول وجبة الغداء لأنه كان يبدو جميلاً.
4. We had rice with fish. تناولنا الأرز مع السمك.
5. We all liked our food. أعجبنا جميعاً الطعام.
6. Dessert is the most food we enjoyed there. استحبته هي كبر طعام قد سئمنا من تناوله.



# General Exercises

LESSONS

5 & 6

● Understand

● Create



Listen and choose the correct answer from the record.

استمع إلى معيكم واحتر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. When did they visit the café ?  
a. Last week      b. Last month      c. Last year      d. Last weekend
2. The writer visited the café with his .....  
a. cousins      b. friends      c. family      d. uncle
3. They had ..... in this café.  
a. snack      b. lunch      c. dinner      d. breakfast
4. The ..... were green and white.  
a. doors      b. windows      c. walls      d. tables



Complete the dialogue below.

**Ahmed** wants to eat chicken pizza at a restaurant.

**Waiter** : Hello. What would you like to eat ?

**Ahmed** : Hello. (1) ..... ?

**Waiter** : Yes. Small or large ?

**Ahmed** : (2) ..... I am not very hungry.

**Waiter** : (3) ..... ?

**Ahmed** : I'd like some orange juice, please.

**Waiter** : Anything else ?

**Ahmed** : (4) ..... How much are these ?

**Waiter** : (5) .....

**Ahmed** : Thank you. Here you are.

*Osobiy - Doshun 2024*



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Can you give me the ..... to choose my favourite meal ?  
a. list      b. ticket      c. menu      d. book
2. She has got ..... apples in the fridge.  
a. any      b. an      c. a      d. some

*Osobiy - Doshun 2024*



- 3. You ..... follow the traffic rules.  
a. shouldn't      b. should      c. mustn't      d. can't
- 4. Fruit juice has got ..... sugar in it.  
a. many      b. too many      c. a lot      d. too much
- 5. If you are ill, you should ..... a doctor.  
a. see      b. go      c. deal      d. drive
- 6. Children should be ..... and don't look out of low windows.  
a. careless      b. careful      c. unhealthy      d. bored
- 7. What would you like to ..... ? - I want fish and rice.  
a. make      b. stick      c. have      d. teach
- 8. We went to a new ..... to have a drink yesterday.  
a. café      b. coffee      c. pool      d. Island
- 9. A ..... works in a hotel or a restaurant.  
a. chief      b. chef      c. chair      d. cooker
- 10. My cousin took us to a café ..... lunch.  
a. of      b. for      c. out      d. on

#### 4 Read and correct the underlined words.

1. How many sugar do you need ? (Mountain - Question 2021)
2. You should to clean your teeth in the morning. ( )
3. He has got much books. (Cairo - EL Shoreak 2021) (.....)
4. What should she did to keep healthy ? (.....)

#### 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on

##### "A visit to a café"

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---





# Review

## on unit 6

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين

Vocabulary	Vocabulary	Language
<b>Lessons 1&amp;2</b>	meal (n)	<b>1. Countable Nouns :</b>
olives (n)	snack (n)	الأسماء التي تُعد :
ingredients (n)	cooking pot (n)	هي الأسماء التي لها مفرد وجمع
biscuits (n)	dinner time (n)	
fridge (n)	traditional (adj)	
rice pudding (n)	stew (n)	
cinnamon (n)	الطهي على نار هادئة / طاجن لحم مع خضار	
saucepan (n)	dry (ied) (v)	
hummus (n)	spices (n)	
	<b>Lessons 5&amp;6</b>	<b>2. Uncountable Nouns :</b>
coconut (n)	customers (n)	الأسماء التي ليس لها جمع وتعامل كالمفرد أي
crisps (n)	large salad (n)	تأخذ مثل في صيغة المفرد بعدها.
teaspoon (n)	waiter (n)	- Meat is my favourite food.
raisins (n)	menu (n)	3. some بعض من
recipe (n)	pounds (n)	نستخدم مع بحمته بحمته والسؤال في حبه
stir (red) (v)	chef (n)	القرص والطلب.
perfect (n)	hope (d) (v)	- I have some books.
equipment (n)	support (ed)(v)	- Would you like some tea ?
decide (d) (v)	order (ed)(v),(n)	4. any أي
<b>Lessons 3&amp;4</b>	walls (n)	- تستخدم مع الجملة الخبرية والمفيدة والاستفهامية.
fizzy drinks (n)	fresh (adj)	- There isn't any juice.
taste (d) (v), (n)	details (n)	- Are there any pens ?



# Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

## Critical thinking skill

أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة القراءة ومدى إتقانك لمهاره القراءة.

الهدف السجدي قد تجد صعوبة في التفكير الناقد وابداء الرأي.

الهدف السجدي عند قراءة الفقرة يجب عليك إعطاء رأيك فيما ورد في القطعه.

اقرأ وقيم بالإجابة متبعا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.

Do you think crisps are dangerous ? Why / Why not ?

Crisps are dangerous, do you agree ? Why ?

اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

My family and cousins all had fish from the sea! We all liked our food. Then, we all had Egyptian Rice Pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again one day !

Do you think they had healthy dessert ? Why / Why not ?

They had a healthy dessert, do you agree ? Why ?  
-Yes, I think so. Because there was not a lot of sugar in its recipe and it was not too sweet.

شرح الحل  
تم ذكر في النص ان وجبة الارز بالحبوب المصرية لا تحتوي على الكثير من السكر لذا فهي تعتبر صحية جيدة



## 2 Speaking

### Ordering food in a restaurant

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

أفردا: أريد ... ونجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

أفردا: يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد نحدث سلك وبين الجرسون في المطعم.

أفردا: وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

الحوار يكون بين الزبون والجرسون

السؤال	الإجابة	Usage
--------	---------	-------

What would you like to have for lunch?	I'd like to have chicken with rice.	طلب طعام
Do you want some salad?	Yes, of course.	الاستخدام

Anything else?	Yes, I'd like some water, please. No, thanks.	السؤال
Which snacks are good for you?	Fruits and vegetables are good for me.	الإجابة
Which snacks are bad for you?	Chocolate and biscuits are bad for me.	والضارة

Mazen and Michael are talking about healthy snacks.

Michael: I'm very hungry, Mazen.

Mazen: (1) .....

Michael: I had breakfast at 7:00 am.

Mazen: (2) .....

Michael: A snack (3) .....

No. Chocolate isn't a healthy snack.

Michael: What snacks are healthy to eat?

Mazen: (4) .....

Michael: Would you like fruit salad?

Mazen: (5) ...





سؤال كتابه لقره الإثنائية

معرفك للتعبير عن موضوع ما.



تريد كتابه موضوع عن

ونجد صعوبة في كتابة عدة جمل عنها.



نحب عليك معرفه قدر كاف من المعردات اللغوية و كيمية استخدامها في تكون حمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

### Topic

### Vocabulary

#### Write the meaning :

وجبه  
مصعم  
محلف  
مدهش  
لديد

### Meals

### Vocabulary

#### Fill in using vocabulary :

- Alexandria is famous for fresh fish.
- There were many ..... desserts.
- I would like to visit this again.
- I want to write about an amazing ..... I remember.

### Paragraph

#### Write a paragraph on "Meals"

### Healthy and unhealthy food

عسر صحي  
مشروبات عارية  
يختار  
صحه  
لا يجب أن  
الماء

#### Write an email about : "Healthy and unhealthy food"

تدرب مثافتي على مهاره كتابه





1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Koshari is very ..... Many people like it.  
 a. kind    b. ugly    c. dirty    d. popular  
*(Bem Saaf Bawawa 2022)*
2. She put some water in the .....  
 a. charger    b. tablet    c. kettle    d. laptop  
*(Sharkha Faw Zaqat 2022)*
3. How much is this book ? - It is fifty .....  
 litres    b. kilos    pounds    c. metres  
*(Gomaba Faw Taba 2022)*
4. Fish is my favourite .....  
 mail    b. mile    meal    d. mall  
*(Hamada Faw Zaqat 2022)*
5. Don't use ..... cooking oil. It's unhealthy.  
 a. enough    b. too much    c. many    d. some  
*(Awam Am Daba 2022)*
6. We don't have ..... rice, we need to buy some.  
 a. an    b. some    c. a    d. enough  
*(Bem Saaf Bawawa 2022)*
7. It's cold. You ..... wear a jacket.  
 a. should    b. shouldn't    c. have    d. haven't  
*(Gird Warraq 2022)*
8. .... isn't a cooking verb.  
 a. Boil    b. Add    c. Stir    d. it well.  
*(Hamada Faw Zaqat 2022)*
9. After we put sugar in tea, we should .....  
 a. star    b. stir    c. stair    d. stare  
*(Hamada Faw Zaqat 2022)*

10. Mai thinks that the ..... of rice pudding is easy.

- a. recycling    b. road  
 c. recipe    d. equipment  
*(Mouag Babawa 2022)*

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. There are any biscuits.    *(Cairo Masara 2022)*
2. Would you like some cup of tea ?  
*(Gird Amaba 2022)*
3. How much books do you have ?  
*(Gomaba Faw Zaqat 2022)*
4. What I should do to be healthy ?  
*(Gomaba Faw Zaqat 2022)*
5. We should drinks a lot of water.  
*(Kaf El Shakh El Bawad 2022)*
6. Ameen should eat snacks in the classroom.  
*(Bem Saaf Bawawa 2022)*
7. There are too much people in the market.  
*(Bem Saaf Bawawa 2022)*
8. You shouldn't eating too much chocolate.  
*(Dababha Bem Fawad 2022)*
9. Can I have any water ?  
*(Hamada Faw Zaqat 2022)*
10. You shouldn't eat a lot of fruits and vegetables.  
*(Hamada Faw Zaqat 2022)*



# Test

## on unit 6

• Understand

• Achieve

• Create

يمكنك حل الاختبار  
إلكترونياً وبصويته

### A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلّمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (بموضوع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)



1. Tagine is a traditional meal in ... ..  
a. Italy                      b. Morocco                      c. Egypt                      d. Athens
2. Mazen likes .....  
a. koshari                      b. tagine                      c. meat                      d. chicken
3. The taste of tagine is ..... !  
a. boring                      b. amazed                      c. bored                      d. amazing
4. The name comes from the cooking ... .. for this food.  
a. pot                      b. pan                      c. plate                      d. dish

© EFL Unit 6, Kufi For Schools, 2020

### B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rana and Maya are talking about their favourite food.

Rana : What is your favourite food ?

Maya : (1) .....

Rana : Koshari ! Fantastic. (2) ..... ?

Maya : They are rice, lentils, tomatoes and pasta.

Rana : (3) ..... ?

Maya : Yes, it is very delicious.

Rana : What else do you like ?

Maya : (4) ..... What about you ?

Rana : (5) .....

Maya : Wonderful !

### C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks ?



It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like its sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are **delicious**. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

- The underlined word "**delicious**" is the opposite of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. terrible      b. good      c. sweet      d. healthy
- The underlined pronoun "them" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. cakes      b. crisps and cakes  
c. snakes      d. beans and vegetables
- Fish sometimes have \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. a lot of sugar      b. a lot of salt  
c. a lot of fat      d. a lot of nuts

(Qatar, Doha 2020)

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. What do you think about snacks ?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. How much fruit should you have every day ?

\_\_\_\_\_

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**



Choose the

- \_\_\_\_\_ is sweet spices used in cooking.  
a. Hummus      b. Salt      c. Cinnamon      d. Olive
- Can you tell me the \_\_\_\_\_ of this delicious dish ?  
a. ingredients      b. members      c. raisins      d. groups

(Alba, Abu Dhabi 2020)



- 3. Egypt is famous for many things ..... its delicious food.  
a. answering      b. including      c. calling      d. playing
- 4. Chocolate and biscuits contain a lot of .....  
a. sugar      b. salt      c. juice      d. spices
- 5. There is an Egyptian food on the .....  
a. list      b. menu      c. form      d. book
- 6. Crisps have a lot of ..... and salt.  
a. fans      b. vans      c. fat      d. fair
- 7. I went to the Pyramids last week. They are ..... !  
a. lazy      b. amazing      c. healthy      d. fizzy
- 8. Would you like ..... coffee with milk, dad ?  
a. some      b. any      c. much      d. few
- 9. You ..... make noise in the school library.  
a. should      b. should have      c. shouldn't      d. shouldn't have
- 10. There are ..... classrooms in our school.  
a. much      b. too many      c. too much      d. a lot



Read and correct the underlined words :

- 1. We shouldn't eat healthy food. (Mauit - Centre 2023) ( ... .. )
- 2. We don't have some fruits in the fridge. ( ..... )
- 3. There is too many people in the club. ( ..... )
- 4. There are too much books on the shelves. ( ..... )

## E. Writing



Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on .

**"A meal you always remember"**

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



# Stop here !

## Mini-Test on unit 6 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini dialogues :

A. Heba : Is there any cheese in rice pudding ?

Adel : \_\_\_\_\_ .

B. Samir : \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Ayman : I like nuts.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c and d

1. I have a big apple. We can ..... it together.

a. share                      b. design                      c. cold                      d. stir

2. .... is the things you need to do an activity.

a. Recipe                      b. Salt                      c. Time                      d. Equipment

3. They don't have ..... pets.

a. some                      b. an                      c. much                      d. any

4. There are ..... delicious dishes on the table.

a. any                      b. a lot of                      c. much                      d. a

5. Breakfast is a very important ..... to start your day.

a. taste                      b. meal                      c. tagine                      d. snack

6. You should ..... carefully to your teachers.

a. listen                      b. listens                      c. listened                      d. listening

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on

**"Healthy snacks"**



1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

"Marwa and Hadeer are talking about Tagine".

Marwa : What are you cooking, Hadeer ?

Hadeer : (1) .....

- a. I'm cooking tagine
- b. I'm doing a project
- c. He is playing football
- d. You are doing well

Marwa : Is it an Egyptian dish ?

Hadeer : (2) ...

- a. Yes, she was
- b. No, they didn't
- c. No, it isn't
- d. No, she doesn't

Marwa : (3) ..... ?

- a. What are the ingredients
- b. What is the price
- c. Why is it healthy
- d. How can I buy it

Hadeer : Meat, vegetables, fruit and spices.

Marwa : How does it taste ?

Hadeer : (4) .....

- a. It's very delicious
- b. It's unpopular
- c. I eat it on weekends
- d. Fruit and vegetables

Marwa : (5) ..... ?

- a. Does it taste sweet
- b. Did he taste it
- c. Is it healthy
- d. Did you cook it before

Hadeer : Yes, it is very good for health.

2. Choose the correct form of the underlined word(s) from a, b, c or d :

6. There aren't any milk to make hot chocolate.

- a. weren't
- b. didn't
- c. isn't
- d. don't

7. Can I have any water, please ?

- a. some
- b. many
- c. lot
- d. an

8. You should been careful about what you eat.

- a. being
- b. be
- c. to be
- d. to being

9. He has any time for playing and studying.

- a. many
- b. lot
- c. enough
- d. a

10. There are too much people in the zoo today.

- a. enough
- b. often
- c. times
- d. many



# Review B

SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 116 & 117



## Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 64

### Sham El-Nessim

#### 1 What and when is it ?

Sham El Nessim is my favourite time of the year. We enjoy it at the start of spring<sup>(1)</sup>. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE!

#### 2 What people do

Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a park or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea.

#### 3 A recipe

On this day, we eat a lot of special<sup>(2)</sup> food. Do you want to know how to enjoy feseekh ? Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat too much !



#### 4 What I did

Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we went to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games. Do you know what we are doing in this photo ? We are painting<sup>(3)</sup> eggs ! We always do this. We didn't see our cousins last year, but we made a video call<sup>(4)</sup>. It was fun to talk to them on the laptop.



Do you know any other special food ? Click on<sup>(5)</sup> the [link](#) at the top of this website. Take a photo and write an email about it. Send us a recipe<sup>(7)</sup> for it.

١) فصل الربيع ٢) خاص ٣) يلون ٤) مكالمة فيديو ٥) يلفز / يضغط على ٦) أيقونة ٧) وصفة طهي





- on Lesson 1 WB page 116

### Judy's shopping list

Hi Judy,

The family party<sup>1</sup> is on Saturday. There are ten people. Can you help me and buy the shopping?

Five people like fish. Five people like chicken. The children like fizzy drinks, but they aren't healthy. So, we can have orange juice. Four bottles are enough for the children. We can all drink water, so we need eight bottles. Buy some tea, too, please.

Please go to the shops and then check we have enough chairs.

Many thanks

**Mona**

١. حفلة اسرية ، ٢. يفحص/يتأكد



- on Lesson 1 WB page 116



**Narrator : one**

**Boy 1** : I have tickets for the new play on Saturday.

**Boy 2** : How exciting !

**Narrator : two**

**Man 1** : I'd like a small salad, please.

**Man 2** : Is that everything ?

**Man 1** : Er, have you got any orange juice ?

**Man 2** : Small or large ?

**Man 1** : Large, please.

**Narrator : three**

**Woman** : First, put water in a kettle. Then, boil the water. Put the hot water in a cup with some hot chocolate. Don't add too much sugar. It isn't healthy.

**Narrator : four**

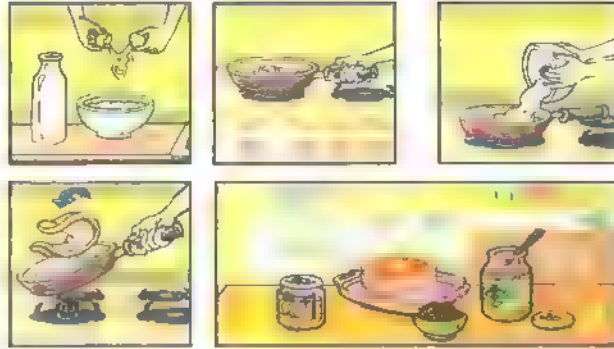
**Girl** : Last summer, we went to the Red Sea. I swam in the sea every day! It was wonderful.

**Narrator : five**

**Woman** : It's very hot today. You should drink a lot of water and you should wear a hat, too!



- on Lesson 2 SB page 65



Narrator : In the UK, many people eat pancakes at the start of spring.

How do you make pancakes ?

Put all your ingredients in a bowl, and add two eggs. Stir everything together. Put some butter in a pan. When the butter is hot, you should start cooking your pancakes! Cook each pancake for 2 or 3 minutes on one side. Then cook the other side of the pancake. Eat your pancakes with honey and nuts, or with sugar and lemon juice. Hmm, they are delicious!



**A week is enough**

**الامتحان بين يديك**

مراجعة المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط.

**كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية**





# GENERAL Exercises

Based on Units 4, 5 & 6

- If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.  
قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذ حصلت على ● غير جيد، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى

● ممتاز  
● جيد جداً  
● جيد  
● غير جيد

**Mohammed:** (3) ... .. ?

Mona: We use tablets in all subjects.

**Mohammed:** Has your class a smart board ?

Mona: (4) ... .. ?

**Mohammed:** (5) ... .. ?

Mona: No, we can't use mobile phones in the class

**Mona and Rana are going to have lunch.**

**Mona:** Good evening. How are you, Rana ?

Rana: 1

**Mona:** Are you hungry ?

Rana: 2 . What do we have

for lunch ?

**Mona:** 3

Rana: Great. I like pasta. (4) ?

**Mona:** No, there aren't any olives.

Rana: 5 ?

**Mona:** Yes, we have a lot of cheese.

Rana: I'll add some cheese on the top of it.

**Mona:** It looks delicious. You're a good chef.

السؤال الثالث في الورقة الامتحانية :

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite meal is koshari. It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.

السؤال الأول في الورقة الامتحانية :

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from

a, b, c or d : (موضوع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Your brother looks at websites for information about ... ..

- a computers      b 3D printers  
c laptops      d MP3 players

2. Your mum and Nada are ... ..

- a talking selfies      b studying English  
c playing football      d doing the shopping

3. Your mum and Nada are sending one of the photos to your

- a father      b uncle  
c grandmother      d grandfather

4. Osama is your

- a father      b uncle  
c brother      d grandfather

السؤال الثاني في الورقة الامتحانية :

2. Complete the following dialogue :

**A** Mohammed and Mona are talking about using technology at school.

**Mohammed:** Do you use technology at your school ?

Mona: (1) ... .. We use tablets.

**Mohammed:** Really ? Can you use a tablet ?

Mona: (2) ... ..



السؤال الرابع في الورقة الامتحانية .

## 4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Don't ..... any one your password.  
a. tells    b. telling    c. to tell    d. tell
2. I forgot to ..... my mobile phone. It will turn off soon.  
a. buy    b. text    c. charge    d. print
3. .... the icon on your mobile phone to open the application.  
a. Click    b. Tap    c. Print    d. Charge
4. The ..... means turn left.  
a. can    b. sign    c. role    d. view
5. Where ..... you spend your last holiday ?  
a. was    b. do    c. will    d. did
6. There are a lot of trees in the .....  
a. jug    b. jungle    c. weather    d. sky
7. You can boil water in a .....  
a. saucepan    b. teaspoon    c. bowl    d. cup
8. There aren't ..... printers in our class.  
a. some    b. much    c. any    d. a lot
9. A ..... is a small amount of food you eat between meals.  
a. stew    b. meat    c. snack    d. spices
10. Ziad has got a new MP3 .....  
a. player    b. phone    c. tablet    d. computer

In Morocco, tagine is a **traditional** meal. It is a stew with meat, vegetables, fruits and spices. Its taste is amazing ! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food. In Kenya, people often make nyama na irio for dinner. It is a stew with meat and potatoes. It is wonderful! Kapenta is a popular type of fish in Zimbabwe. They catch the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. They often cook it with tomatoes and onions.

## a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to .....  
a. koshari    b. tagine    c. kapenta    d. nyama na irio
2. Kapenta is from .....  
a. Zimbabwe    b. Kenya    c. Morocco    d. Egypt
3. The underlined word "traditional" means .....  
a. very new    b. not old    c. very old    d. very delicious

## b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the traditional meal in Morocco ?
5. What do you think is the best meal for the Egyptians in this passage ? Why ?
6. Give a suitable title for this passage.



- B.1.** How ..... pieces of fruits should you have daily ?  
a. many    b. much    c. long    d. often
2. Please, Mum write me the ..... to cook pizza well.  
a. recipe    b. road    c. recycling    d. equipement
3. A ..... is something you buy to remember a holiday.  
a. project    b. prize    c. souvenir    d. view
4. The ..... is a big strong building from the past.  
a. attic    b. sandcastle    c. mountain    d. castle
5. I want to go to the ..... and swim in the sea.  
a. mountain    b. rock    c. beach    d. cave
6. There ..... a little water in the bottle.  
a. were    b. have    c. is    d. do
7. Hany ..... his English book now.  
a. reads    b. is reading    c. reading    d. read
8. A ..... is smaller than a computer.  
a. club    b. sun    c. tablet    d. desert
9. Mum adds special ..... that give amazing taste to food.  
a. snacks    b. spices    c. bowls    d. menus
10. This restaurant doesn't have any fish on the .....  
a. menu    b. list    c. guide    d. recipe

السؤال الخامس في الورقة الامتحانية :

5. Read and correct the underlined word :

- A.** 1. There **are** some ink on your jacket. ( ..... )  
2. What should they **had** to stay healthy ? ( ..... )  
3. We **don't** sleep in a tent yesterday. ( ..... )  
4. **Listening** carefully to answer the question. ( ..... )
- B.** 1. She **talking** with her sister at the moment. ( ..... )  
2. Where did he **goes** last weekend ? ( ..... )  
3. The park is **front** to my home. ( ..... )  
4. Do you have **some** juice ? ( ..... )

السؤال السادس في الورقة الامتحانية :

6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

**A.** "Technology"**B.** "Your favourite food"



# Videoscript

## Unit 1

on Lesson 3 SB page 6

**Narrator** : Senet is a very old Egyptian game. You can see it in this picture. It is about 3.000 years old.

**Narrator** : Look at these people at the Pharaonic Village museum in Cairo. They like senet, too.

**Narrator** : Today, people play a game like senet. It's called chess.

**Narrator** : Two people play chess. Each person has got white or black pieces. It is not an easy game. Some people play it for six hours or more !

**Narrator** : Bassem Amin is an Egyptian chess player. He is from Tanta and he is very famous. He is very good at chess.

**Narrator** : Chess is a popular game in Egypt. There are many chess clubs and some children have chess lessons after school. They also play it at home with their parents.

**Narrator** : Do you play chess ?

## Unit 2

on Lesson 2 SB page 14

**Narrator** : In Africa, America, Asia, and Europe, most children between the ages of four and eighteen go to school. They often study subjects such as maths, Arabic and English.

Students study in the morning and sometimes in the afternoon, too.

Some children go to school from

Sunday to Thursday.

Other children go to school from Monday to Friday.

When they finish school, some students choose to go to university. Some of the most important universities in Africa and the Arab region are in Egypt.

There is the Al-Azhar University. This is one of the oldest universities in the world.

And there is Cairo University in Giza.

Here, people study subjects like art, science and computer studies.

Do you want to go to university ?

Which subjects do you want to study at university ?

## Unit 3

on Lesson 2 SB page 24

Do you like playing football ?

Do you like watching football ? Of course, football is a popular sport in Egypt. There are many excellent Egyptian footballers.

Mohamed Salah is one of the best players in the world. He's played for some famous football clubs in England and Italy.

Hossam Hassan, Mido and Essam el Hadary are all famous Egyptian footballers. They played football for teams in Africa and Europe.

People love playing it ... and watching it.

Thousands of people go to see football clubs like Al-Ahly ... and El-Zamalek.





The country's national side are known as the Pharaohs. They often play in the World Cup. This is a tournament for the best teams in the world. The Pharaohs sometimes win a tournament called the Africa Cup of Nations. This is a competition for countries in Africa. In 2019, it was in Egypt!

Do you like playing football?

Do you like watching football?

## Unit 4

on Lesson 2 SB page 36

**Narrator** : We use technology every day.

Modern technology is very different from technology in the past. The ancient Egyptians used their own forms of technology to do a lot of different things.

For example, ancient Egypt was the first civilization to use calendars. This is a calendar in the Temple of Karnak in Luxor.

Today, we can use our phones to find our way. The ancient Egyptians used astronomy to find their way in the desert and at sea. Astronomy is the study of stars and planets.

How do you tell the time? Have you got a phone ... or a watch?

The ancient Egyptians had the first clocks. They were called sundials, like this one in Alexandria.

They used the sun to tell the time. Hieroglyphics is the oldest writing in the world. The ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphics to communicate. And of course, the ancient Egyptians used a plant called papyrus to make the first kind of paper.

This is papyrus. It grows along the River Nile. Today, we use different technology to the ancient Egyptians. This woman is writing a text message on her phone. And this man is writing a story. He is not using paper at all!

Today, we have calendars on our phones, computers and tablets.

Today's technology is different, but we can thank the ancient Egyptians for starting the ideas for our technology too.

## Unit 5

on Lesson 3 SB page 48

**Narrator** : Almost 15 million people come to Egypt every year. It's a very popular place for a holiday.

When people come to Egypt, they can visit exciting cities like Alexandria, ..., beaches, ..., caves, ..., and the beautiful desert.

They also come to see the many important places from history. This is the Khan family. They're from Jordan. Last year they visited Egypt on holiday. They visited Giza to see the Pyramids and the Sphinx. And they rode on a camel.

They visited the beautiful city of Luxor. Then, they went to the Valley of the Kings ... where they visited the Karnak Temple. They also spent some days in Cairo.

They went shopping in the Khan el-Khalili market. Here, they bought souvenirs for their friends back at home. Finally, they went to Hurghada and they swam in the Red Sea.

Egypt is a wonderful place for a holiday. Where do you want to go?





**on Lesson 3 SB page 58**

**Narrator :** What did you eat for lunch today ? Did you eat some falafel or a chicken salad ?  
Or perhaps you enjoyed some delicious meat and rice.  
And what did you drink ? Maybe you had some water, a cup of tea or some nice orange juice.  
The food that we eat today is similar to the food that the ancient Egyptians ate a long time ago.  
The ancient Egyptians ate a lot of bread. In fact, people believe that the ancient Egyptians made the first bread in the world.

The ancient Egyptians used the land near the River Nile to grow a lot of different fruit and vegetables.

They also grew enough wheat to make bread. Bread was a very important food in ancient Egypt.

Scientists found some bread in the tomb of Mentuhotep the Second in Luxor. It was 4,000 years old !

Pharaohs and other important people ate bread with a lot of fruit, such as figs and dates . They also had it with honey . Bread is still important today.

From this bread in Egypt today to bagels in the USA and baguettes in France, people all around the world love it at all times of the day.



### Unit 1

#### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

##### "My hobbies"

Doing hobbies is very important. I have a lot of hobbies. The most important hobby is playing football. I play football every day. I play it with my friends. We play it in the club. I also like swimming and painting. I go swimming once a week. I like painting when I go to the park. We should do hobbies because they make us healthy.

#### General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

##### "My family"

My name's Ali. I have a big family. My mum's name is Amira. She is a teacher. My dad's name is Omar. He is a doctor. I have two sisters, Sama and Samira. They are twins. I am in preparatory one. I go to Shoubra Preparatory School for boys. Mum helps us to practise our hobbies. My father also tells us funny stories in his free time, so we enjoy staying with our father in his free time. I like my family so much. It is a great family.

#### General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

##### "My favourite person in my family"

I love all my family, but my father is the person I like most. He works hard. He buys new clothes for me every month. He gives me money every day to buy what I need. His life is busy, but he spends much time with me studying new lessons. I love him so much. When I find a problem, I discuss it with him. He encourages me so much. He is my hero.

#### Test on unit 1

##### "My favourite sports star"

Habiba Marzouk is a top gymnast in Africa. She lives in Cairo with her family. Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she trains for 5 or 6 hours. She wants to go to the Olympics. Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy food. All the Egyptians like Habiba and want her to achieve her goal.

### Unit 2

#### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

##### "My favourite subject"

My favourite subject is English. I have English every day at school. My English teacher is Mr Ayman. He is very kind. He helps me a lot. I have an English test weekly. I always get the full mark. I like watching English films on TV. I also borrow some English books from the library. That helps me improve my language a lot. I hope to travel to England to speak English well.

#### General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

##### "How children go to school"

Children go to school in different ways. Some children live near their schools so they walk to school. Some children live a long way from their school. They go to school by car, bus or train. Cycling is a healthy and cheap way to get to school. Many children like to cycle to school. Some children live in cold places. They go to school on a snowmobile when there is a lot of snow.



General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

**"A day in my life"**

I get up at 6 o'clock in the morning every day. I wash my face and have breakfast. I go to school by bus. I have six lessons a day. I come back home at 2:30 p.m. in the afternoon. I do my homework in the evening. I watch TV with my family at weekends. Sometimes, we go to the park and play on Saturdays. I go to bed early. That helps me to get up early.

Test on unit 2

**"A day with my family"**

I always help my family at home. I get up at seven a.m. I make my bed. I go to school on time. I never get up late. After school, I have my lunch and do my homework. At night, I prepare my bag and go to bed. I don't watch TV the night before school days. At the weekends, I help my mother clean up the house. I also go shopping if my family want something.

**Unit 3**

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

**"A famous sports star"**

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He is 1.75 meters tall. He is quite short for a footballer. He has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He usually has a big smile. He is a fast runner and he scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He gives money to build schools and hospitals. He plays for a team in England. It's called Liverpool Football Club. Many Egyptians watch his matches. They feel very happy when he scores goals.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

**"A famous children's story"**

My favourite story book is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters in Wonderland. She met the White Rabbit which was always late. She also met the Cheshire Cat which had a big smile. At last, she met the Queen of Hearts. She was always angry and shouted at people. Children like reading stories like this.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

**"A review on my favourite book"**

I love reading so much. Last week, I read a book about life in the mountains. The book is good, but there was some information I don't believe it. I asked my teacher. He told me it is a children's story! I understood the idea and told the story to all my friends. They were very surprised when I told them. I think reading is very useful for all people. I advise everyone to read a lot.

Test on unit 3

**"My best friend"**

I have many friends. But Sameh is my best friend. I met him first at school. He is tall and thin. He has a long, curly hair. He is very kind and funny. We walk to school every day together. He is very good at maths. He always helps me at maths. I help him at English. We both like playing football. We go to the club on Fridays to practise football. Sameh is a real friend. I respect him so much.



## Unit 4

### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

#### "Technology"

I love technology. My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone. I'd like to spend all day playing video games, but I have to go to school. My favourite lesson is computer studies. At break, I look at websites for new video games. Modern technology has changed our life a lot. Nowadays, most people use it in many ways. Young people use it all the time.

### General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

#### "I like nature more than technology"

I love nature. I like walking and watching trees, animals, flowers and insects all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside at break. I don't go outside when it's very hot or cold! Also, technology is very important for our life. Technology makes our life easier. Both nature and technology are important for our life.

### General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

#### "My favourite place"

Egypt is a beautiful country. There are many interesting places in it. The Pyramids in Giza are my favourite place. I like visiting the Pyramids with my family. My father knows a lot about the Pyramids. He likes reading about the ancient Egyptians. He tells us many interesting information each time when we visit the Pyramids. We always take pictures next to the Pyramids and the Sphinx. I am very proud of my country.

### Test on unit 4

#### "How to keep safe online"

When you are online, you need to follow some rules to stay safe. Keep your password secret. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't tell people your personal information. Don't send photos to people you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher. Don't answer a phone call or a video call from people you don't know. You must be very careful with using modern technology.

## Unit 5

### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

#### "A picnic at Al Azhar Park"

In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic at Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food. Then, we played games. My brother, Ali rode his bike. We enjoyed our time. Al Azhar Park is a beautiful place to go to. You can do many activities there. It's really wonderful. I hope to go there one day with my friends. It will be a very nice trip. But we should keep the park clean.

### General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

#### "A day on the beach"

Last summer, the weather was very hot. We decided to go to the beach in Hurghada. Hurghada is a beautiful city. My sister Mariam made a sandcastle on the beach. I swam in the sea and climbed the mountains. We enjoyed our time a lot. My mother made us a delicious meal. My father told us some funny stories. It was a typical day. In the evening, I enjoyed the beautiful view on the beach. I'm looking forward to visiting Hurghada again next summer.



General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

**"A holiday in Paris"**

Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails! One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards. People in Paris are so kind. They helped me a lot.

Test on unit 5

**"A trip I made"**

Last summer, I went on a trip to London with my school. My favourite place was Windsor Castle. We went there by train. We walked around the castle. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye, because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top. This trip helped us to improve our English as we spoke English all the time. It was a very nice trip. We stayed there for two weeks.

**Unit 6**

**"My favourite food"**

Roz Bel Laban is an Egyptian rice pudding. It's my favourite Egyptian dessert. Its ingredients are rice, water, milk and sugar. Some people like it very tasty so they add much sugar to it. Other people like to add some nuts and raisins on the top. I like to add some cinnamon. You can try to make it by yourself at home; there are many recipes for this dish online.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

**"Healthy food"**

Food is very important for us. We should eat healthy food. We shouldn't eat unhealthy food. Healthy food should include all types of food. We should eat fruit and vegetables. They give us vitamins. We should eat dairy products such as cheese and milk because they make our teeth and bones strong. We should drink a lot of water. We shouldn't eat too much sugar or salt because they are unhealthy.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

**"A visit to a café"**

I visited a nice café with my family and my friends yesterday. It overlooks a beautiful view. My mum had fish. My dad and I had pizza with my brother. We had cakes after lunch. I had basbousa and my brother had kunafa. I prefer the café that overlooks the Nile. The view is fantastic. I enjoy fresh air. My friends like taking photos from the windows that overlooks the nice view.

Test on unit 6

**"A meal I always remember"**

Tagine is a traditional meal in Morocco. It is a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. It has an amazing taste. The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food. If you want to try this meal, you have to visit Morocco. I went to Morocco last month. When I went to a restaurant to have lunch, I ate tagine. It was really delicious. I hope to have it again.



# Listening Texts

## Audioscript

Girl 1 : Hi, Lama. Is that a new bag ?  
 Girl 2 : Hi, Inji. No, it's my sister's bag.  
 Girl 1 : It's big. What's in it ?  
 Girl 2 : This is my pencil case. It's red.  
 Girl 1 : Is that your book ?  
 Girl 2 : Yes. It's very good. It's about animals.  
 Girl 1 : Is that a ball in your bag ?  
 Girl 2 : No, it's an orange ! I like oranges.  
 Girl 1 : I prefer apples. Is that your phone ?  
 Girl 2 : Yes, it is. Look ! It's ten o'clock. Time for our English class.

## D Audioscript

### Narrator :

- |                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. washed, talked | 2. called, waited  |
| 3. blue, duck     | 4. cake, home      |
| 5. shop, chick    | 6. father, brother |
| 7. candy, July    | 8. tail, gate      |

## 1 Lessons 1 & 2

I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays. It is my favourite sport. I play it with my friends. It is an interesting sport.

## 2 Lessons 5 & 6

Gymnastics is a difficult sport. Gymnasts train for many hours daily. They must balance their hobby, work and study to achieve their dream.

## 3 Test on unit 1

Habiba Marzouk lives in Cairo. She has a very busy life. She is a top gymnast in Africa. She wants to go to the Olympics.

نورج اصبحان نورسعيد

Amira is twelve years old. She is from Hurghada. She is in preparatory one at school. She likes science and maths.

## 1 Lessons 3 & 4

My school is far from my house. I cycle to school every morning. It's healthy and it makes me arrive there on time.

## 2 Lessons 5 & 6

Amira is twelve years old. She is from Hurghada. She is in preparatory one at school. She likes science and maths.

## 3 Test on unit 2

Akeyo lives in Nairobi. Her school is far away. Her parents drive her there. She goes to the library to read during the break.

## October Test

My friend is called Amr. He's thirteen. He has got two brothers. His mother is a housewife. His grandmother is 60 years old. She is called Nadia.

## 1 Lessons 1 & 2

Doaa Elghobashy plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 cm tall. She's strong and fast. She always has a big smile.

## 2 Lessons 5 & 6

My best friend is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind. He likes reading and playing video games.

## 3 Test on unit 3

Yunis has got short, dark curly hair. He likes history, but he doesn't like art because he is not good at drawing or painting.



#### 4 General Exercises on Units 1, 2 & 3

Helmi's favourite subject is history. He isn't good at drawing or painting. His favourite sport is swimming. He goes swimming twice a week.

### Unit 4

#### 1 Lessons 1 & 2

Ziad is in his classroom. There are two laptops in the classroom. There is a printer, too. Omar is printing his homework.

#### 2 Test on unit 4

Soha loves nature. She likes watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around us. She likes being in the garden and looking at the sky.

#### November Test

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He is good at scoring many goals. He is a clever player. He is 1.75 metres tall. He is kind and he likes to talk to his fans.

### Unit 5

#### 1 Lessons 1 & 2

Last week, we had a picnic at Al Azhar Park in Cairo. We ate delicious food. Then, we played games and Ali rode on his bike.

#### 2 Lessons 5 & 6

Last summer Andy travelled to Egypt because she wanted to learn Arabic. She went to a language school in Cairo. She had a wonderful time.

#### 3 Test on unit 5

When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake. We saw camels and slept in a tent. It was my favourite holiday.

### Unit 6

#### 1 Lessons 1 & 2

There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online. There's enough rice pudding for the whole family. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe but I like sweet food.

#### 2 Lessons 5 & 6

I visited this café last weekend with my family. We chose this café for lunch. Its walls were green and white.

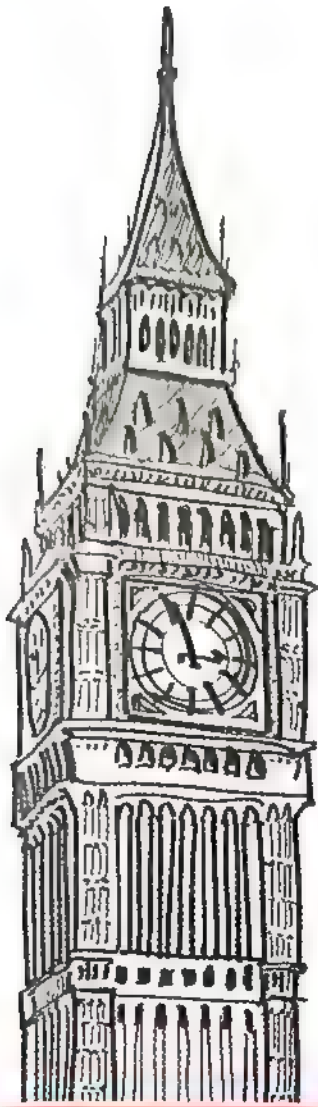
#### 3 Test on unit 6

Mazin likes tagine. In Morocco, tagine is a traditional meal. Its taste is amazing! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.

#### 4 General Exercises on Units 4, 5 & 6

My brother looks at websites for information about 3D printers. My mum and sister, Nada are taking selfies. They are sending one of the photos to my grandmother. My dad is sending an email to my uncle Osama.





# New Hello!

By a group of supervisors

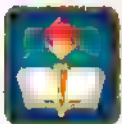
Mr. Ahmed Sheta  
معلم لغة إنجليزية

دليلك لاستخدام كتاب المعاصر  
لتدريس فعال و مبدع

FREE PART

## Teacher's ORGANIZER

Your Guide To Creative and Effective Teaching



**AL TALADA BOOKSTORE**

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91

e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com

www.elmoasserbooks.com

15014

**1<sup>st</sup>**  
Prep.  
2024  
FIRST TERM



# Answers of The Main Book

## (1<sup>st</sup> Prep)

Mr. Ahmed Sheta

معلم لغة إنجليزية

إجابات كتاب الشرح المعاصر للصف الأول الإعدادي

## Unit (1)

## Lessons 1 &amp; 2

## Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. c. end   | 2. d. free |
| 3. d. -ing  | 4. d. -al  |
| 5. b. -lose |            |

## Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. diary     | 2. b. Voluntary |
| 3. c. interview | 4. c. twins     |
| 5. b. hobby     | 6. a. son       |
| 7. a. Drums     | 8. c. does      |
| 9. b. story     | 10. d. male     |
| 11. b. aunt     | 12. b. band     |
| 13. d. swimming | 14. c. called   |
| 15. b. aged     | 16. d. Both     |

## Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- |              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| 1. a. him    | 2. d. us   |
| 3. b. She    | 4. b. They |
| 5. d. theirs | 6. c. she  |
| 7. b. yours  | 8. b. his  |
| 9. b. our    | 10. b. her |
| 11. b. Whose | 12. c. his |

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

- |          |         |
|----------|---------|
| 1. their | (them)  |
| 2. you   | (your)  |
| 3. My    | (Mine)  |
| 4. hers  | (her)   |
| 5. Who   | (whose) |

- |          |         |
|----------|---------|
| 6. yours | (your)  |
| 7. my    | (mine)  |
| 8. She   | (He)    |
| 9. for   | (to)    |
| 10. his  | (their) |

## General Exercises on lessons 1 &amp; 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a. Basketball
2. b. On Mondays
3. d. My friends
4. c. Interesting

2. Complete the following dialogue:

1. I'm fine
2. My favourite hobby is playing football.
3. On Fridays.
4. Who do you play it with?
5. What about you?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- |                           |                 |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. She                 | 2. c. playing   |
| 3. d. daughter            | 4. a. voluntary |
| 5. b. great-grandchildren |                 |
| 6. c. band                | 7. a. our       |
| 8. b. its                 | 9. b. twins     |
| 10. a. dictionary         |                 |

4. Read and correct the underlined words:

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| 1. Who  | (Whose) |
| 2. mine | (my)    |
| 3. mine | (me)    |
| 4. her  | (their) |

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on:

Students' own answers



## Lessons 3 & 4

### Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |             |
|-----------------|-------------|
| 1. b. essential | 2. d. low   |
| 3. b. -full     | 4. c. reach |
| 5. a. un-       | 6. -ing     |
| 7. c. -old      |             |

### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. b. orphan     | 2. c. city     |
| 3. b. adventures | 4. b. meat     |
| 5. c. mountain   | 6. b. goat     |
| 7. b. airport    | 8. d. correct  |
| 9. d. end        | 10. b. country |
| 11. d. city      | 12. c. attic   |
| 13. c. with      | 14. a. from    |
| 15. a. making    | 16. b. takes   |

### Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |               |                    |
|---------------|--------------------|
| 1. b. does    | 2. b. Does         |
| 3. d. don't   | 4. a. feel         |
| 5. d. never   | 6. a. plays        |
| 7. c. doesn't | 8. d. have         |
| 9. c. get     | 10. c. is          |
| 11. c. builds | 12. b. usually get |
| 13. a. speak  | 14. a. live        |
| 15. a. gives  | 16. c. love        |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. do           | (does)         |
| 2. eating       | (eats)         |
| 3. do           | (does)         |
| 4. do           | (are)          |
| 5. plays        | (play)         |
| 6. plays always | (always plays) |
| 7. Does         | (Do)           |

- |           |         |
|-----------|---------|
| 8. Do     | (Does)  |
| 9. writes | (write) |
| 10. am    | (do)    |

### General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

- I live in Giza.
- Yes, I have one brother.
- What is he called ?
- What do you like ?
- Yes, I am.

2. Read the following, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- a. has no father or mother.
- b. camel
- c. Samar and Felfela

B. Answer the following questions :

- The life of an orphan girl.
- Adnan had a lot of goats and camels.
- I think it had a lot of adventures.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. d. go        | 2. d. does        |
| 3. b. orphan    | 4. c. sheep       |
| 5. b. away      | 6. b. attic       |
| 7. a. go        | 8. a. airport     |
| 9. a. is always | 10. b. adventures |

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |            |         |
|------------|---------|
| 1. doesn't | (never) |
| 2. are     | (do)    |
| 3. goes    | (go)    |
| 4. boiling | (boils) |

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers



## Lessons 5 & 6

### Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. strong
2. c. un-
3. b. -ing
4. b. close
5. b. adjective

### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                    |                |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. b. athlete      | 2. b. train    |
| 3. c. gymnastics   | 4. c. balance  |
| 5. b. olympics     | 6. b. lose     |
| 7. a. diagrams     | 8. b. achieve  |
| 9. b. swimming     | 10. b. related |
| 11. c. description | 12. b. stay    |
| 13. b. gymnast     | 14. a. Busy    |
| 15. b. for         | 16. b. is      |

### Pop quiz on (Speaking)

1. Yes, you can.
2. His name is Fathi.
3. How old is he ?
4. What is he interested in ?
5. Yes, I do.

### General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. b. difficult | 2. d. train   |
| 3. b. balance   | 4. a. achieve |

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. He is a teacher.
2. Where does he work ?
3. When was he born ?
4. His favourite sport is volleyball.
5. Yes, I do.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. c. achieve | 2. a. gymnastics |
| 3. c. train   | 4. b. doesn't    |
| 5. a. move    | 6. a. Her        |
| 7. c. gymnast | 8. a. dream      |
| 9. b. do      | 10. b. stay      |

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |          |         |
|----------|---------|
| 1. Which | (Whose) |
| 2. live  | (lives) |
| 3. are   | (is)    |
| 4. do    | (is)    |

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Question Collected

from previous exams

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. c. make   | 2. b. little |
| 3. b. orphan | 4. d. sister |
| 5. c. his    | 6. c. Chess  |
| 7. b. attic  | 8. c. goats  |
| 9. a. never  | 10. b. is    |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| 1. our        | (ours)       |
| 2. his        | (him)        |
| 3. is         | (does)       |
| 4. mine       | (my)         |
| 5. 've        | ('m)         |
| 6. always are | (are always) |
| 7. is         | (does)       |
| 8. work       | (works)      |
| 9. doesn't    | (don't)      |
| 10. living    | (live)       |



**Test** on Unit 1**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. Cairo                      2. c. the Olympics  
3. a. gymnast                4. a. busy

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. Hello, Hani.  
2. My favourite hobby is reading books.  
3. In the school library  
4. Do you like funny stories ?  
5. Who helps you ?

**3. Read the following, then answer the questions :****A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. far from  
2. d. Lamia and Aya  
3. c. far

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. Lamia's family  
5. Ali  
6. I think she has a busy life because she has a lot of activities to do.

**Vocabulary & Structure****4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. a. Twins                      2. c. hobbies  
3. b. parents                4. c. me  
5. d. airport                6. a. reads  
7. c. aged                    8. c. yours  
9. d. makes                10. a. orphan

**5. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. is                              (are)  
2. plays                        (play)  
3. stays                        (stay)  
4. hers                         (our)

**6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

Students' own answers

"Stop here" اختبار مصغر خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

**1. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini - dialogues :**

- A. My favourite subject is math.  
B. What is your sister called ?

**2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. add                      2. d. come  
3. b. He                      4. c. train  
5. b. Great grandfather  
6. d. go

تدريبات طبقاً لنموذج امتحان محافظة بورسعيد الاختياري

1. a                              2. d                              3. d  
4. c                              5. a                              6. b  
7. a                              8. c                              9. c  
10. c                            11. c                            12. b  
13. d

**Unit (2)****Lessons 1 & 2****Exercise on (Vocabulary study)****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. d. remote  
2. a. -ly  
3. b. after  
4. c. un-  
5. d. typical

**Exercise on (Vocabulary)****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. timetable                2. c. bell  
3. c. social studies           4. c. roads  
5. b. subjects                6. b. Maths



- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 7. c. typical    | 8. b. playground |
| 9. d. lessons    | 10. b. drama     |
| 11. c. languages | 12. b. Break     |
| 13. a. hall      | 14. d. in        |
| 15. d. get       | 16. c. drove     |

### Exercises on (Language)

#### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. d. is       | 2. a. usually has |
| 3. a. never    | 4. a. watches     |
| 5. d. never go | 6. d. often       |
| 7. d. reads    | 8. c. does        |
| 9. c. always   | 10. b. never      |

#### 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. play always | (always play) |
| 2. much        | (often)       |
| 3. go          | (goes)        |
| 4. in          | (at)          |
| 5. always are  | (are always)  |
| 6. walks       | (walk)        |
| 7. got         | (get)         |
| 8. always      | (never)       |
| 9. have        | (has)         |
| 10. ever       | (never)       |

### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

#### 1. Complete the following dialogue :

- I'm fine.
- What's your favourite day of the week ?
- Why ?
- Science
- In the laboratory

#### 2. Read the following, then answer the questions :

##### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. a. Othmano | 2. d. early |
| 3. b. rest    |             |

##### B. Answer the following questions :

- Othmano's typical day.

5. I think so

6. Because his school is far away.

#### 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. c. at             | 2. b. difference |
| 3. b. time           | 4. c. language   |
| 5. a. home economics |                  |
| 6. d. Religion       | 7. b. is always  |
| 8. c. How often      | 9. b. visit      |
| 10. b. typical       |                  |

#### 4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. never        | (always)       |
| 2. does         | (do)           |
| 3. has          | (have)         |
| 4. does usually | (usually does) |

#### 5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

lessons 3 & 4

### Exercise on (Vocabulary study)

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. d. unsafe   | 2. a. inside |
| 3. d. un-      | 4. a. -ous   |
| 5. a. friendly |              |

### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. follow      | 2. c. way       |
| 3. b. cycle       |                 |
| 4. c. snowmobile  | 5. c. objects   |
| 6. b. uniform     | 7. b. say       |
| 8. c. rains       | 9. a. journey   |
| 10. b. transport  | 11. a. cultures |
| 12. c. canoe      |                 |
| 13. d. snowmobile | 14. a. on       |
| 15. c. take       | 16. b. on       |



**Exercises on (Language)****1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                        |                  |
|------------------------|------------------|
| 1. b. butcher's        | 2. c. sister's   |
| 3. b. girls' names     | 4. b. girl's     |
| 5. d. brothers'        | 6. d. belongs to |
| 7. c. children's       | 8. c. door       |
| 9. b. Dina's           |                  |
| 10. c. computer screen |                  |
| 11. b. cat's           | 12. a. car park  |
| 13. a. baker's         |                  |

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |                     |                    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. grandparents's   | (grandparent's)    |
| 2. girl's           | (girls')           |
| 3. When             | (Whose)            |
| 4. Dalia's and Azaa | (Dalia and Azaa's) |
| 5. Alis             | (Ali's)            |
| 6. cars's           | (car)              |
| 7. chemist          | (chemist's)        |
| 8. Halas'           | (Hala's)           |
| 9. Who's            | (Whose)            |
| 10. brother         | (brother's)        |

**General Exercises** on lessons 3 & 4**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1. b. far    | 2. b. cycle   |
| 3. b. arrive | 4. d. healthy |

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. I walk to school.
2. Why ?
3. How long does it take to get to school ?
4. In the car.
5. You're right.

**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. d. rules        | 2. d. faraway |
| 3. b. doctor's car | 4. b. towel   |

- |                     |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| 5. b. cycle         | 6. c. transport |
| 7. c. Sara's mother | 8. d. (b & c)   |
| 9. a. takes         | 10. d. safe     |

**4. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. Ali      | (Ali's)    |
| 2. school's | (school)   |
| 3. sisters  | (sister's) |
| 4. of       | (to)       |

**5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

Students' own answers

**Lessons** 5 & 6**Exercise on (Vocabulary study)****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. -ly
2. a. un-
3. d. leave
4. d. right
5. c. wear

**Exercise on (Vocabulary)****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. message      | 2. b. project   |
| 3. b. put          | 4. b. grade     |
| 5. b. good         | 6. c. tell      |
| 7. c. quite        | 8. a. go        |
| 9. a. dinner       | 10. b. reply    |
| 11. a. preparatory | 12. b. friendly |
| 13. c. email       | 14. c. with     |
| 15. d. Best wishes | 16. d. at       |

**Pop quiz on (Speaking)**

1. My favourite subject is English.
2. Why ?
3. Who teaches you English ?
4. Three times a week.
5. Thank you.



**General Exercises** on lessons 5 & 6

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. twelve
2. b. Hurghada
3. d. preparatory
4. d. science and maths.

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. During the break.
2. Where will we do our research ?
3. Are you ready ?
4. Yes, it is.
5. The librarian.

**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                       |                |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1. c. put             | 2. b. flag     |
| 3. b. do              | 4. b. separate |
| 5. c. goes            | 6. b. reply    |
| 7. b. have            | 8. a. wake     |
| 9. b. always          |                |
| 10. b. the boy's name |                |

**4. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. ever    | (never)   |
| 2. studied | (study)   |
| 3. are     | (do)      |
| 4. don't   | (doesn't) |

**5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

Students' own answers

**Question Collected**  
from previous exams

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. a. home     | 2. b. bell     |
| 3. a. uniforms | 4. c. often    |
| 5. d. library  | 6. c. sister's |
| 7. c. maths    | 8. c. grade    |

9. d. playground
10. c. social studies.

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. at              | (on)              |
| 2. always come     | (never come)      |
| 3. sister          | (sister's)        |
| 4. never           | (always)          |
| 5. Ahmed's and Ali | (Ahmed and Ali's) |
| 6. always is       | (is always)       |
| 7. boy's           | (boys')           |
| 8. usually         | (never)           |
| 9. long            | (often)           |
| 10. teachers       | (teacher's)       |

**Test** on Unit 2

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. a. Nairobi | 2. d. parents |
| 3. b. faraway | 4. d. library |

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. I go to school by car.
2. I go to school by bus.
3. Because my school is far away.
4. How long does it take to get there ?
5. Which is better to go to school by car or by bus ?

**3. Read the following, then answer the questions :**

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. 10 pm
2. b. before
3. c. next to

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. Nada
5. Nada's routine
6. To surf the internet



**Vocabulary & Structure****4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                         |                 |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. Canoe             | 2. b. is always |
| 3. a. cycle             | 4. c. teachers' |
| 5. a. school playground |                 |
| 6. c. quite             | 7. c. end       |
| 8. b. laboratory        | 9. d. hobbies   |
| 10. a. at               |                 |

**5. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| 1. Who's   | (Whose)     |
| 2. chemist | (chemist's) |
| 3. girl's  | (girls')    |
| 4. goes    | (go)        |

**6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

Students' own answers

"Stop here" اختبار مصغر خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

**1. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini - dialogues :**

- A. What day is today ?  
B. Twice a week.

**2. Read the following, then answer the questions :**

1. Because he lives near his school.  
2. I think because he is good at science, maths and English.  
3. Twice a week

4. b. clever                      5. c. Nabil

تدريبات طبقاً لنموذج امتحان محافظة بورسعيد

الاختباري

- |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a  | 2. c  | 3. d  |
| 4. b  | 5. a  | 6. c  |
| 7. d  | 8. d  | 9. c  |
| 10. d | 11. d | 12. a |
| 13. d | 14. d | 15. c |

**Unit (3)****Lessons 1 & 2****Exercise on (Vocabulary study)****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                  |            |
|------------------|------------|
| 1. d. well known | 2. d. -ian |
| 3. b. dark       | 4. b. fast |
| 5. c. adjective  |            |

**Exercise on (Vocabulary)****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. runner     | 2. b. scarf     |
| 3. d. fans       | 4. a. hair      |
| 5. c. smile      | 6. d. sports    |
| 7. a. weak       | 8. a. normal    |
| 9. b. holiday    | 10. b. features |
| 11. d. glasses   | 12. b. beard    |
| 13. c. moustache | 14. b. score    |
| 15. c. look      | 16. c. for      |

**Exercises on (Language)****1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |              |                   |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 1. a. 've    | 2. c. can't       |
| 3. c. hasn't | 4. a. can         |
| 5. c. has    | 6. b. can         |
| 7. c. She    | 8. b. haven't got |
| 9. b. hasn't | 10. c. Have       |

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1. aren't | (haven't) |
| 2. gives  | (give)    |
| 3. Have   | (Has)     |
| 4. 've    | ('s)      |
| 5. hasn't | (has)     |
| 6. get    | (got)     |
| 7. has    | (have)    |
| 8. riding | (ride)    |



9. can (can't)  
10. has (have)

**General Exercises** on lessons 1 & 2

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. volleyball  
2. a. 180  
3. a. smile  
4. a. strong and fast

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. Mohammed Salah  
2. Football  
3. What does he look like ?  
4. Why do you like him?  
5. Yes, I do.

**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. score  
2. a. team  
3. c. hasn't  
4. a. can  
5. a. haven't  
6. b. Slow  
7. b. famous  
8. c. smile  
9. d. moustache  
10. c. curly

**4. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. get (got)  
2. Have (Has)  
3. running (run)  
4. Do (Can)

**5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Students' own answers"

**Lessons 3 & 4**

**Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. -ible  
2. d. usual  
3. b. exciting  
4. c. noun  
5. c. -ed

**Exercise on (Vocabulary)**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. sensible  
2. d. painting  
3. c. strange  
4. b. angry  
5. c. Adventure  
6. d. frightened  
7. c. science  
8. d. laugh  
9. d. doing something  
10. c. dangerous  
11. a. character  
12. d. blog  
13. b. clever  
14. b. of  
15. a. doing  
16. c. to solve

**Exercises on (Language)**

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. to play  
2. d. learning  
3. b. playing  
4. d. doesn't  
5. b. Does  
6. c. drawing  
7. c. doing  
8. a. watching  
9. d. playing  
10. d. using

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. swim (swimming)  
2. for (at)  
3. watch (watching)  
4. about (in)  
5. travel (travelling)  
6. ride (to ride)  
7. listens (listening)  
8. walk (walking)  
9. do (doing)  
10. Have (Do)

**General Exercises** on lessons 3 & 4

**1. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. Basketball  
2. Because I train every day.  
3. Where do you play basketball ?  
4. How often do you play basketball ?  
5. Sure / Yes, you can.



## 2. Read the following, then answer the questions :

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. The Queen of Hearts
2. d. loudly                      3. b. Alice

### B. Answer the following questions :

4. Alice Adventures in Wonderland.
5. The Cheshire cat helps Alice to find different places and characters.
6. I think because she isn't frightened of the Queen of Hearts.

## 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. b. to visit | 2. c. sensible |
| 3. c. Late     | 4. a. art      |
| 5. b. learning | 6. d. History  |
| 7. c. blog     | 8. d. like     |
| 9. b. shouts   | 10. b. boring. |

## 4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. read  | (reading) |
| 2. of    | (at)      |
| 3. draw  | (drawing) |
| 4. going | (to go)   |

## 5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

**Lessons 5 & 6**

## Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. -ity
2. c. link
3. c. -ance

## Exercise on (Vocabulary)

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. c. wheelchair  | 2. d. secret      |
| 3. b. storm       | 4. c. personality |
| 5. a. called      | 6. a. fun         |
| 7. b. review      | 8. c. connects    |
| 9. c. Reading     | 10. c. island     |
| 11. c. Appearance | 12. b. Hobbies    |
| 13. c. Together   | 14. c. by         |
| 15. b. around     | 16. c. do         |

## Pop quiz on (Speaking)

1. Yes, I do.
2. What's your favourite story ?
3. Is it exciting ?
4. Of course.
5. You're welcome.

## (General Exercises) on lessons 5 & 6

### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. Basil
2. d. straight
3. c. kind
4. d. a & b

### 2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. My favourite book is Anne of Green Gables.
2. Who wrote it ?
3. Anne
4. Because it has a lot of adventures.
5. What lesson can you learn from this book ?

### 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |              |                  |
|--------------|------------------|
| 1. d. secret | 2. c. called     |
| 3. b. pool   | 4. c. wheelchair |
| 5. d. best   | 6. b. but        |
| 7. a. and    | 8. c. brave      |
| 9. d. to do  | 10. b. classroom |



**4. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. play     | (playing)  |
| 2. gets     | (got)      |
| 3. and      | (but)      |
| 4. drinking | (to drink) |

**5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

Students' own answers

**Question Collected**

from previous exams

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. c. strong   | 2. c. Has      |
| 3. c. Can      | 4. b. playing  |
| 5. b. sensible | 6. a. friendly |
| 7. b. poor     | 8. b. queen    |
| 9. d. scoring  | 10. d. curly   |

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. watching | (to watch)  |
| 2. listened | (listening) |
| 3. Do       | (Can)       |
| 4. Have     | (Has)       |
| 5. Has      | (Have)      |
| 6. has      | (have)      |
| 7. giving   | (give)      |
| 8. get      | (got)       |
| 9. play     | (playing)   |
| 10. Has     | (Have)      |

**Test on Unit 3**

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| 1. a. dark | 2. d. history |
| 3. c. art  | 4. c. drawing |

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

- My best friend's name is Abdallah.
- What does he look like ?

3. What does he like ?

4. He is good at playing football.

5. Yes, I think so.

**3. Read the following, then answer the questions :**

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- b. Akram
- b. two times
- a. dark

**B. Answer the following questions :**

- The writer's best friend Akram.
- Because he watches matches there.
- twice a week.

**Vocabulary & Structure**

**4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. frightened | 2. c. talking      |
| 3. d. lesson     | 4. b. got          |
| 5. d. fans       | 6. c. because      |
| 7. d. secret     | 8. a. do           |
| 9. a. pool       | 10. b. personality |

**5. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. helping | (help)    |
| 2. Have    | (Has)     |
| 3. but     | (and)     |
| 4. play    | (playing) |

**6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Students' own answers"

**"Stop here"** احذروا مصفر خاص بطلاب الأهرام الشريف

**1. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini - dialogues :**

- What are your hobbies ?
- Messi.



## 2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. c. moustache | 2. b. has      |
| 3. a. character | 4. b. brave    |
| 5. d. playing   | 6. b. painting |

تدريبات طبقاً لنموذج امتحان محافظة بورسعيد  
الاختباري

- |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c  | 2. b  | 3. a  |
| 4. c  | 5. a  | 6. c  |
| 7. b  | 8. b  | 9. c  |
| 10. c | 11. d | 12. a |
| 13. b | 14. c | 15. d |

## General Exercises based on Units (1, 2, 3)

### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. c. history  | 2. d. drawing |
| 3. a. swimming | 4. b. a week  |

### 2. Complete the following dialogue :

- A.** 1. playing chess  
2. And you ?  
3. Yes, I do.  
4. Swimming  
5. Where do you go swimming ?
- B.** 1. Yes, I do.  
2. What's your favourite day ?  
3. Why ?  
4. On Tuesday.  
5. I have maths and English

### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

- (A)** 1. b. by bike as it's cheaper and healthier.  
2. a. canoe  
3. d. USA  
4. Different ways to come to school.  
5. It's useful to go to school on a bike.  
6. Because there is a lot of snow.

- (B)** 1. b. dark                      2. b. Baher  
3. c. curly  
4. My Best friend Baher  
5. twice a week  
6. To play football with friends

### 4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- (A)** 1. c. Gymnastics              2. a. cycle  
3. d. frightened                4. d. band  
5. a. snowmobile               6. d. adjective  
7. b. smile                        8. d. doing  
9. a. She                         10. b. never
- (B)** 1. b. boat                        2. a. Aunt  
3. b. typical                      4. c. beard  
5. a. fans                         6. b. bell  
7. a. attic                         8. a. live  
9. c. book club                 10. b. can't

### 5. Read and correct the underlined words :

- (A)** 1. don't                        (doesn't)  
2. What                         (Who)  
3. Has                          (Have)  
4. My                            (Mine)
- (B)** 1. he                            (his)  
2. girl's                         (girls')  
3. can't                         (can)  
4. never is                      (is never)

### 6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Students' own answers"

## Unit (4)

## Lessons 1 & 2

### Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. c. offline   | 2. b. new     |
| 3. c. un-       | 4. a. -er     |
| 5. b. essential | 6. b. receive |
| 7. a. -er       | 8. b. modern  |



### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. a. MP3 player | 2. c. charger    |
| 3. c. printer    | 4. a. mouth      |
| 5. d. technology | 6. d. laptop     |
| 7. a. Click      | 8. d. take       |
| 9. b. sending    | 10. c. classmate |
| 11. c. charge    | 12. b. email     |
| 13. c. tap       | 14. c. website   |
| 15. c. for       | 16. c. doing     |

### Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| 1. b. an   | 2. c. aren't |
| 3. d. Is   | 4. b. any    |
| 5. b. Are  | 6. b. Are    |
| 7. c. any  | 8. d. isn't  |
| 9. c. some | 10. c. are   |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. is     | (are)    |
| 2. are    | (aren't) |
| 3. some   | (any)    |
| 4. any    | (some)   |
| 5. aren't | (isn't)  |
| 6. Are    | (Is)     |
| 7. Is     | (Are)    |
| 8. their  | (there)  |

### Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. b. next       | 2. d. Is coming   |
| 3. c. is reading | 4. b. are making  |
| 5. c. winning    | 6. a. are playing |
| 7. c. behind     | 8. a. kicking     |
| 9. d. getting    | 10. b. front      |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| 1. do      | (am doing)    |
| 2. charged | (charging)    |
| 3. sleeps  | (is sleeping) |
| 4. behind  | (next)        |
| 5. to      | (of)          |
| 6. under   | (behind)      |
| 7. is      | (are)         |
| 8. up      | (to)          |

### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| 1. b. classroom | 2. c. two  |
| 3. d. printer   | 4. a. Omar |

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Yes, I'm busy.
2. What are you doing ?
3. To my friend.
4. Yes, it is.
5. Can you take photos with it ?

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. d. 3D printer | 2. a. Are      |
| 3. a. icon       | 4. b. text     |
| 5. c. phone      | 6. a. are      |
| 7. b. click      | 8. a. printing |
| 9. b. any        | 10. b. online  |

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| 1. working | (is working) |
| 2. Is      | (Are)        |
| 3. some    | (any)        |
| 4. look    | (looking)    |

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Students' own answers"



## Lessons 3 &amp; 4

## Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. c. similar   | 2. b. called |
| 3. b. -tion     | 4. c. -er    |
| 5. d. different |              |

## Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1. b. insects    | 2. c. mime    |
| 3. b. wave       | 4. b. do      |
| 5. c. garden     | 6. b. sitting |
| 7. b. video call | 8. d. advice  |
| 9. d. programmes | 10. d. kind   |
| 11. b. different | 12. c. eagle  |
| 13. a. Nature    | 14. c. put    |
| 15. c. make      | 16. b. on     |

## Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. c. writing | 2. b. is       |
| 3. b. working | 4. b. are      |
| 5. c. I am    | 6. d. isn't    |
| 7. d. doing   | 8. b. is       |
| 9. a. Are     | 10. d. wearing |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| 1. called  | (calling)    |
| 2. do      | (doing)      |
| 3. Are     | (Is)         |
| 4. wearing | (is wearing) |
| 5. does    | (is doing)   |
| 6. doesn't | (isn't)      |
| 7. run     | (running)    |
| 8. use     | (using)      |
| 9. are     | (is)         |

## General Exercises on lessons 3 &amp; 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. My favourite place is the park.
2. I can see birds and play games with my friends.
3. What's your favourite bird ?
4. I fly a kite.
5. Do you enjoy your time there ?

2. Read the following, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. b. video | 2. d. park |
| 3. b. hates |            |

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Beautiful Nature
5. She takes lots of photos of flowers and birds.
6. She likes walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around her.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. b. doing     | 2. b. spend    |
| 3. c. take      | 4. d. playing  |
| 5. d. programme | 6. c. taking   |
| 7. a. advice    | 8. d. eagles   |
| 9. b. think     | 10. b. insects |

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1. do     | (is)        |
| 2. Does   | (Is)        |
| 3. play   | (playing)   |
| 4. listen | (listening) |

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Students' own answers"



## Lessons 5 & 6

### Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. c. un-     | 2. b. -er     |
| 3. b. popular | 4. c. turn on |
| 5. a. -ion    |               |

### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. c. password | 2. b. instructions |
| 3. a. popular  | 4. b. drop         |
| 5. b. kettle   | 6. a. Staying      |
| 7. a. personal | 8. d. worried      |
| 9. b. answer   | 10. a. gave        |
| 11. b. make    | 12. c. send        |
| 13. b. secret  | 14. d. turn on     |
| 15. a. ask     | 16. b. make        |

### Pop quiz on (Speaking)

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. What are you looking at ?
3. Why ?
4. Who do you want to make a cake for ?
5. Happy Birthday.

### Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. a. Don't | 2. a. tap   |
| 3. c. Ask   | 4. d. Don't |
| 5. c. send  | 6. b. Wait  |
| 7. b. eat   | 8. a. keep  |
| 9. c. cross | 10. b. Use  |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |            |         |
|------------|---------|
| 1. Keeps   | (Keep)  |
| 2. putting | (put)   |
| 3. Doesn't | (Don't) |

- |             |          |
|-------------|----------|
| 4. Didn't   | (Don't)  |
| 5. Checking | (Check)  |
| 6. Guessed  | (Guess)  |
| 7. Always   | (Never)  |
| 8. Forgot   | (Forget) |

### General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I'm fine, thanks.
2. Which is bigger the computer or the laptop ?
3. Where can we find computers ?
4. Yes, it is.
5. Yes, I do.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. d. secret   | 2. d. password |
| 3. d. messages | 4. a. Turning  |
| 5. d. take     | 6. c. Don't    |
| 7. b. saved    | 8. b. boil     |
| 9. a. safe     | 10. a. with    |

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. password
2. d. technology
3. a. mum or dad

b. Answer the following questions :

4. You should tell a parent or a teacher.
5. Staying safe online / Technology
6. To stay safe online.

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |            |          |
|------------|----------|
| 1. forgot  | (forget) |
| 2. Didn't  | (Don't)  |
| 3. Helping | (Help)   |
| 4. Turns   | (Turn)   |



### 5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

Question Collected

from previous exams

#### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. boiled    | 2. a. password  |
| 3. c. mistake   | 4. d. Don't     |
| 5. c. Are there | 6. c. is crying |
| 7. c. message   | 8. d. do        |
| 9. b. diary     | 10. b. make     |

#### 2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| 1. ate     | (is eating)    |
| 2. some    | (any)          |
| 3. too     | (to)           |
| 4. Keeping | (Keep)         |
| 5. Is      | (Are)          |
| 6. watch   | (are watching) |
| 7. isn't   | (aren't)       |
| 8. drank   | (drink)        |
| 9. was     | (am)           |
| 10. some   | (any)          |

Test on Unit 4

#### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. c. nature | 2. b. watching |
| 3. a. likes  | 4. c. sky      |

#### 2. Complete the following dialogue :

- There's a white board and a laptop.
- Yes, we do.
- What are you doing now ?
- About nature.
- Are mobiles allowed in class ?

### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

#### a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- b. receiving
- c. USA
- b. Sama and her mum

#### b. Answer the following questions :

- Technology
- He is a winner.
- I think it's very useful to look for information on websites.

### Vocabulary & Structure

#### 4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. c. technology   | 2. a. tap          |
| 3. d. instructions | 4. b. Ask          |
| 5. c. say          | 6. d. Come         |
| 7. b. Is           | 8. b. is listening |
| 9. a. making       | 10. b. using       |

#### 5. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. There is | (Is there) |
| 2. watches  | (watching) |
| 3. Doesn't  | (Don't)    |
| 4. do       | (is)       |

#### 6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

"Stop here" اخبار مصر خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

#### 1. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini - dialogues :

- Yes, there is.
- What are you doing ?

#### 2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |           |                  |
|-----------|------------------|
| 1. d. any | 2. b. is playing |
|-----------|------------------|



3. c. insects      4. a. send  
5. b. password    6. d. selfie

تدريبات طبقاً لنموذج امتحان محافظة بورسعيد  
الاختباري

- |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. a |
| 4. c | 5. d | 6. c |
| 7. d | 8. a | 9. b |

### Unit (5)

### Lessons 1 & 2

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| 1. d. ir-   | 2. c. far      |
| 3. c. close | 4. a. terrible |
| 5. c. enter |                |

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. b. activity  | 2. d. desert   |
| 3. b. waterfall | 4. b. jungle   |
| 5. c. cave      | 6. d. Forests  |
| 7. a. made      | 8. a. Camels   |
| 9. d. map       | 10. a. bats    |
| 11. a. River    | 12. b. tent    |
| 13. a. Sand     | 14. a. island  |
| 15. c. picnic   | 16. a. journey |

#### Exercises on (Language)

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. d. where   | 2. b. sat      |
| 3. c. watched | 4. d. wasn't   |
| 5. b. did     | 6. d. was      |
| 7. a. eat     | 8. c. Did      |
| 9. d. did     | 10. c. visited |
| 11. b. study  | 12. a. didn't  |
| 13. c. Where  | 14. a. see     |

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| 1. did    | (were)    |
| 2. went   | (go)      |
| 3. play   | (played)  |
| 4. wasn't | (weren't) |
| 5. found  | (find)    |
| 6. walk   | (walked)  |
| 7. spent  | (spend)   |
| 8. gives  | (gave)    |
| 9. bought | (buy)     |
| 10. has   | (had)     |

#### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                     |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. Al-Azhar Park | 2. a. delicious |
| 3. b. bike          | 4. c. games     |

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. I went to the beach.
2. What did you do there ?
3. When did you come back ?
4. Yes, I did.
5. Yes of course / Sure.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. b. cave    | 2. b. go      |
| 3. d. was     | 4. c. didn't  |
| 5. b. jungle  | 6. b. map     |
| 7. a. climbed | 8. b. check   |
| 9. a. beach   | 10. a. desert |

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |            |          |
|------------|----------|
| 1. Was     | (Were)   |
| 2. doesn't | (didn't) |
| 3. go      | (went)   |
| 4. ate     | (eat)    |

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on ;

Students' own answers



### Lessons 3 & 4

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. b. -ment     | 2. b. -ful   |
| 3. d. fantastic | 4. b. boring |
| 5. b. re-       |              |

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                     |                  |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. c. course        | 2. b. market     |
| 3. c. advertisement | 4. a. Camp       |
| 5. d. view          | 6. c. activities |
| 7. b. Dolphins      | 8. c. students   |
| 9. b. stayed        | 10. b. language  |
| 11. d. hotel        | 12. b. tower     |
| 13. c. souvenir     | 14. a. castle    |
| 15. c. in           | 16. b. make      |

#### General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

#### 1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. It was fantastic.
2. Where did you go ?
3. Yes, I did.
4. Did you enjoy your time there ?
5. I came home yesterday evening.

#### 2. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. A laptop
2. b. very good
3. b. river

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Mona's study life
5. With her family.
6. I think because she met students from different countries.

#### 3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. b. castle    | 2. b. tent     |
| 3. b. souvenirs | 4. b. go       |
| 5. c. did       | 6. b. had      |
| 7. b. boring    | 8. d. flat     |
| 9. b. learn     | 10. c. dolphin |

#### 4. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| 1. have | (had)    |
| 2. camp | (camped) |
| 3. Did  | (Was)    |
| 4. did  | (do)     |

#### 5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

### Lessons 5 & 6

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |           |
|-----------------|-----------|
| 1. c. lost      | 2. b. -er |
| 3. c. succeeded | 4. a. -y  |
| 5. b. noun      |           |

#### Exercise on (Vocabulary)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. response  | 2. b. sign      |
| 3. c. rules     | 4. b. postcard  |
| 5. c. friendly  | 6. b. theatre   |
| 7. b. tickets   | 8. b. closed    |
| 9. c. signature | 10. c. sandals  |
| 11. c. Tower    | 12. a. happened |
| 13. c. windy    | 14. d. snail    |
| 15. c. for      | 16. c. top      |

#### Pop quiz on (Speaking)

1. Did you get the result ?
2. Really !
3. What did you get ?
4. Congratulations.
5. That's bad news.



**Revision Exercises** on lessons 5 & 6

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. summer                      2. d. Arabic
3. a. language school
4. d. wonderful

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. It was great !
2. How did you go to Jordan ?
3. Did you stay in a hotel ?
4. Yes, I did.
5. By car.

**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. b. had   | 2. a. so      |
| 3. b. went  | 4. b. want    |
| 5. b. art   | 6. d. sign    |
| 7. d. start | 8. c. pity    |
| 9. c. boats | 10. c. Valley |

**4. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |           |        |
|-----------|--------|
| 1. eat    | (ate)  |
| 2. talked | (talk) |
| 3. felt   | (feel) |
| 4. is     | (was)  |

**5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

Students' own answers

**Question Collected**  
from previous exams

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                   |               |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. a. souvenir    | 2. d. go      |
| 3. a. stay        | 4. b. visited |
| 5. d. beach       | 6. d. wasn't  |
| 7. c. sea         | 8. a. trip    |
| 9. a. sandcastles | 10. b. back   |

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1. Did      | (Were)    |
| 2. Do       | (Did)     |
| 3. buy      | (bought)  |
| 4. Do       | (Was)     |
| 5. spent    | (spend)   |
| 6. visiting | (visit)   |
| 7. swim     | (swam)    |
| 8. enjoy    | (enjoyed) |
| 9. did      | (do)      |
| 10. next    | (last)    |

**Test** on Unit 5

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. b. To Siwa | 2. c. swam      |
| 3. d. camels  | 4. a. favourite |

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. I'm from Egypt.
2. I'm from London.
3. How did you come here ?
4. He is a dentist.
5. What's your mother's job ?

**3. Read the following, then answer the questions :**

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. interesting
2. a. far from
3. a. 21

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. An interesting holiday
5. As he was going to the sea for the first time.
6. hotel

**Vocabulary & Structure**

**4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1. d. sign | 2. a. find |
| 3. d. tent | 4. a. was  |



5. c. didn't      6. d. beach  
7. b. place      8. a. frightened  
9. c. making    10. b. boat

**5. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. wash            (washed)  
2. last             (ago)  
3. do               (did)  
4. is                (was)

**6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

Students' own answers

"Stop here" اختبار مصغر خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

**1. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini - dialogue :**

- A. I'd like to go to the cinema.  
B. How was your holiday ?

**2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. forest      2. a. have  
3. c. built      4. d. didn't  
5. c. view      6. b. were

تدريبات طبقاً لنموذج امتحان محافظة بورسعيد  
الاختباري

1. b            2. a            3. c  
4. b            5. a            6. b  
7. c            8. a            9. b

**Unit (6)**

**Lessons 1 & 2**

**Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. a. un-            2. c. quick  
3. b. salty        4. c. like  
5. b. -ly          6. c. perfect

**Exercise on (Vocabulary)**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. fridge      2. b. crisps  
3. d. tea spoon    4. d. Raisins  
5. d. ingredients    6. c. saucepan  
7. a. pudding      8. c. stir  
9. b. milk          10. b. delicious  
11. a. recipe      12. b. boiled  
13. d. cheese     14. b. Nut  
15. c. to buy      16. b. into

**Exercises on (Language)**

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. b. some      2. c. aren't  
3. a. some      4. b. any  
5. c. any        6. d. is  
7. c. are some    8. b. any  
9. c. is          10. b. some

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. any            (some)  
2. Is              (Are)  
3. aren't        (isn't)  
4. some         (any)  
5. any            (some)  
6. some         (any)  
7. Are            (Is)  
8. any            (some)  
9. isn't          (aren't)  
10. is            (are)

**Exercises on (Language)**

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. a. many      2. c. enough  
3. c. much      4. a. too much  
5. d. enough    6. b. water  
7. d. too many    8. b. enough  
9. d. a lot of    10. c. enough



**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. many   | (much)     |
| 2. a lot  | (a lot of) |
| 3. enough | (too many) |
| 4. many   | (much)     |
| 5. much   | (many)     |
| 6. isn't  | (aren't)   |
| 7. much   | (many)     |
| 8. olive  | (olives)   |
| 9. many   | (much)     |
| 10. to    | (too)      |

**General Exercises** on lessons 1 & 2

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. a. recipe | 2. b. family |
| 3. d. sugar  | 4. c. food   |

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. OK
2. Is there any hummus ?
3. Yes, there is some.
4. No, there aren't.
5. Are there any raisins ?

**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. d. delicious    | 2. c. ingredients |
| 3. c. quick        | 4. d. recipe      |
| 5. b. rice pudding | 6. c. stir        |
| 7. b. aren't       | 8. d. too many    |
| 9. a. enough       | 10. c. cinnamon   |

**4. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| 1. much  | (many)   |
| 2. some  | (any)    |
| 3. many  | (much)   |
| 4. isn't | (aren't) |

**5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

Students' own answers

**Lessons 3 & 4**

**Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)**

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. a. unhealthy | 2. d. -al      |
| 3. b. kind      | 4. c. careless |
| 5. d. un-       | 6. c. -ness    |
| 7. a. starving  |                |

**Exercise on (Vocabulary)**

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                   |                |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. a. tastes      | 2. d. Onion    |
| 3. d. meal        | 4. b. teeth    |
| 5. c. traditional | 6. b. spices   |
| 7. a. healthy     | 8. b. dry      |
| 9. c. type        | 10. b. snacks  |
| 11. a. illness    | 12. c. diagram |
| 13. d. Chocolate  | 14. c. Salt    |
| 15. c. way        | 16. c. look    |

**Exercises on (Language)**

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. d. shouldn't | 2. a. eat        |
| 3. d. train     | 4. c. drink      |
| 5. a. shouldn't | 6. d. should     |
| 7. c. should    | 8. d. take       |
| 9. a. do        | 10. c. shouldn't |

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. should     | (shouldn't) |
| 2. eating     | (eat)       |
| 3. should to  | (should)    |
| 4. following  | (follow)    |
| 5. should     | (shouldn't) |
| 6. shouldn't  | (should)    |
| 7. were       | (be)        |
| 8. should     | (shouldn't) |
| 9. doing      | (do)        |
| 10. Shouldn't | (Should)    |



**General Exercises** on lessons 3 & 4**1. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. I'm eating sweets.
2. But they are not good for your teeth.
3. Why ?
4. What should I eat ?
5. You're right.

**2. Read the following, then answer the questions :****a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. c. bread
2. b. 4000
3. a. different

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. The Ancient Egyptian food.
5. The Ancient Egyptians.
6. They were clever people.

**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. d. shouldn't  | 2. b. stir      |
| 3. b. taste      | 4. b. shouldn't |
| 5. c. stew       | 6. a. fit       |
| 7. a. for        | 8. b. careful   |
| 9. b. ingredient | 10. c. illness  |

**4. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. to drink  | (drink)     |
| 2. should    | (shouldn't) |
| 3. plays     | (play)      |
| 4. shouldn't | (should)    |

**5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

Students' own answers

**Lessons** 5 & 6**Exercise on (Vocabulary Study)****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. a. much
2. b. un-
3. a. true
4. b. -er

**Exercise on (Vocabulary)****Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. c. chef      | 2. c. customers |
| 3. b. pounds    | 4. a. menu      |
| 5. d. waiter    | 6. a. beach     |
| 7. d. fresh     | 8. b. menu      |
| 9. c. walls     | 10. a. reason   |
| 11. c. got      | 12. b. support  |
| 13. c. Basbousa | 14. a. hope     |
| 15. d. with     | 16. c. out of   |

**Pop quiz on (Speaking)**

1. I'm fine, than you.
2. Have you got any cheese ?
3. One kilo
4. How much is it ?
5. You're welcome.

**General Exercises** on lessons 5 & 6**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. d. Last weekend
2. c. family
3. b. lunch
4. c. walls

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

1. Do you have pizza ?
2. Small, please.
3. What would you like to drink ?
4. No, thanks.
5. They are 70 pounds.



**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. c. menu   | 2. d. some     |
| 3. b. should | 4. d. too much |
| 5. a. see    | 6. b. careful  |
| 7. c. have   | 8. a. café     |
| 9. b. chef   | 10. b. for     |

**4. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |             |         |
|-------------|---------|
| 1. many     | (much)  |
| 2. to clean | (clean) |
| 3. much     | (many)  |
| 4. did      | (do)    |

**5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Students' own answers"

**Question Collected**  
from previous exams

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. d. popular  | 2. c. kettle  |
| 3. c. pounds   | 4. c. meal    |
| 5. b. too much | 6. d. enough  |
| 7. a. should   | 8. a. Pudding |
| 9. b. stir     | 10. c. recipe |

**2. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1. any        | (some)      |
| 2. some       | (a)         |
| 3. much       | (many)      |
| 4. I should   | (should I)  |
| 5. drinks     | (drink)     |
| 6. should     | (shouldn't) |
| 7. much       | (many)      |
| 8. eating     | (eat)       |
| 9. any        | (some)      |
| 10. shouldn't | (should)    |

**Test on Unit 6**

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- b. Morocco
- b. Tagine
- d. amazing
- a. pot

**2. Complete the following dialogue :**

- Koshari
- What are its ingredients ?
- Is it delicious ?
- I like rice pudding.
- I like pasta.

**3. Read the following, then answer the questions :**

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- a. terrible
- d. Beans and vegetables
- b. a lot of salt

**b. Answer the following questions :**

- Healthy and unhealthy food
- Snacks are great but some of them are bad for health.
- You should eat between (2) and (4) pieces of fruit a day.

**Vocabulary & Structure**

**4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. c. Cinnamon  | 2. a. ingredients |
| 3. b. including | 4. a. sugar       |
| 5. b. menu      | 6. c. fat         |
| 7. b. amazing   | 8. a. some        |
| 9. c. shouldn't | 10. b. too many   |

**5. Read and correct the underlined words :**

- |              |          |
|--------------|----------|
| 1. shouldn't | (should) |
| 2. some      | (any)    |
| 3. Is        | (are)    |
| 4. much      | (many)   |



### 6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Students' own answers

"Stop here" اختبار مصغر خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

### 1. Supply the missing parts in the following two mini – dialogues :

A. No, there isn't.

B. What do you like to eat ?

### 2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. a. share | 2. d. Equipment |
| 3. d. any   | 4. b. a lot of  |
| 5. b. meal  | 6. a. listen    |

تدريبات طبقاً لنموذج امتحان محافظة بورسعيد  
الاختباري

- |       |      |      |
|-------|------|------|
| 1. a  | 2. c | 3. a |
| 4. a  | 5. c | 6. c |
| 7. a  | 8. b | 9. c |
| 10. d |      |      |

### General Exercises on Units ( 4 , 5 , 6 )

### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. 3D printers
2. a. taking selfies
3. c. grandmother
4. b. uncle

### 2. Complete the following dialogue :

- A. 1. Yes, we do.      2. Yes, I can.  
3. What subjects do you use tablets in ?  
4. Yes, it has.  
5. Can you use mobile phones in the class ?
- B. 1. Good evening Rana, I'm fine.  
2. Yes, I am.  
3. We have pasta.  
4. Are there any olives ?  
5. Do you have any cheese ?

### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

- A. 1. b. tagine  
2. a. Zimbabwe  
3. c. very old  
4. Tagine  
5. Koshari is the best meal in Egypt because it is tasty and cheap.  
6. Popular food.
- B. 1. b. two weeks  
2. a. train  
3. b. remember  
4. Omar's visit to London  
5. London  
6. It helped him to speak English all the time.

### 4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| A. 1. d. tell    | 2. c. charge  |
| 3. a. Click      | 4. b. sign    |
| 5. d. did        | 6. b. jungle  |
| 7. a. saucepan   | 8. c. any     |
| 9. c. snack      | 10. a. player |
| B. 1. a. many    | 2. a. recipe  |
| 3. c. souvenir   | 4. d. castle  |
| 5. c. beach      | 6. c. is      |
| 7. b. is reading | 8. c. tablet  |
| 9. b. spices     | 10. a. menu   |

### 5. Read and correct the underlined words :

- |               |              |
|---------------|--------------|
| A. 1. are     | (is)         |
| 2. had        | (have)       |
| 3. don't      | (didn't)     |
| 4. Listening  | (Listen)     |
| B. 1. talking | (is talking) |
| 2. goes       | (go)         |
| 3. near       | (next)       |
| 4. some       | (any)        |

### 6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words :

Students' own answers



### 23 Schools Examinations

(٢٣) اختبار من امتحانات المدارس

ثلاثة وعشرون اختبار من امتحانات المدارس المختلفة على المنهج بالكامل.

1

Cairo Governorate

Al-Basateen and Dar El-Salam  
Educational Directorate

#### A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- The Cheshire Cat is a funny .....  
a. class                      b. subject                      c. animal                      d. block
- The Cheshire Cat is very .....  
a. friendly                      b. sad                      c. adventurous                      d. famous
- The Cheshire Cat ..... Alice about Wonderland.  
a. sees                      b. tells                      c. helps                      d. meets
- What does the Cheshire Cat help Alice to find ?  
a. Games                      b. Stories                      c. Places                      d. Books

#### B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rashad : Where are you, Mariam ?

Mariam : I am here in the living room.

Rashad : What are you (1) ..... here ?

Mariam : Nothing. Why ?

Rashad : I want to play (2) ..... together.

Mariam : But I don't like chess. (3) ..... play table tennis.

Rashad : I am not good at tennis. What about (4) .....  
to music ?

Mariam : That sounds nice. I love music most.

Rashad : Me, too. We both love music.

Mariam : Yes. I love (5) ..... the drums, too.



### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a **fast** runner and a clever footballer.

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. Mohamed Salah has got dark, curly hair and a beard.

He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans.

He has not got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

#### a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the best title for the passage ?

2. Who does Salah talk to ?

3. Do you think Salah is a great sports star ? Why / Why not ?

#### b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "his" refers to

- a. fans                      b. Salah                      c. his father                      d. poor people

5. "**Fast**" is the opposite of

- a. short                      b. weak                      c. slow                      d. friendly

6. One of Salah's hobbies is

- a. giving money to the poor                      b. building schools  
c. getting much time                      d. playing video games

### D. Vocabulary & Structure

#### 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Gymnastics is a type of

- a. subject                      b. sport                      c. object                      d. team

2. All students come to the school ... when they hear the bell.

- a. hole                      b. hall                      c. hill                      d. hell



3. I don't like watching TV. I think it is ..... .  
 a. fantastic      b. interesting      c. surprising      d. boring
4. Something scary makes you feel ..... .  
 a. happy      b. bad      c. funny      d. frightened
5. A/An ..... person takes good decisions.  
 a. stupid      b. scary      c. sensible      d. angry
6. My arms are weak, so I can't ... .. up that box.  
 a. get      b. pick      c. give      d. drive
7. Habiba Marzouk is a top ..... in Africa.  
 a. gymnastic      b. gymnast      c. gymnastics      d. gym
8. .... Nabil's sister play tennis ?  
 a. Do      b. Does      c. Don't      d. Doing
9. My father gave ..... his watch.  
 a. I      b. my      c. mine      d. me
10. We can ..... money to help the poor.  
 a. give      b. gave      c. giving      d. to give

**5 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Osama likes playing football, basketball but tennis. ( ..... )
2. The wind stopped and we go on a boat trip. ( ..... )
3. There are too much raisins. ( ..... )
4. You should eat too many crisps and cakes. ( ..... )

**E. Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

***"Your favourite hobby"***

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع الى معلمك واختر الاجابة الصحيحة (مقدم الاستماع من نهاية الاختبار)

1. Egypt and Morocco are in  
a Asia                      b Africa                      c. Europe                      d. America
2. Arabic is a  
a language                      b country                      c. place                      d. city
3. All Arab countries speak  
a English                      b. Arabic                      c. French                      d. German
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is in Asia.  
a Egypt                      b Morocco                      c. Oman                      d. Sudan

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman : Hello! Baleegh.

Baleegh: Hello, Ayman.

Ayman : Did you go to Siwa ?

Baleegh: Yes, I (1)

Ayman : When did you go there ?

Baleegh: When I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ eight years old.

Ayman : What did you do there ?

Baleegh: I (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in the lake.

Ayman : Where did you (4) \_\_\_\_\_ there ?

Baleegh: I slept in a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ in the desert

## C Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

To : Azza

From : Fatma

Subject : My holiday

Hi, Azza !

I came back from my holiday in Paris. I had a wonderful time there. Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and to do. The food is **delicious**. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails!



One day, we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity! We did not have time to go to the Science Museum. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre, but it was closed. Near our hotel, there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards. I also bought you a souvenir; it is a very small Eiffel Tower. You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.

See you soon !

Fatma

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What's the main idea of this passage ?

2. Where did Fatma go on a boat ?

3. What do you think of Fatma's holiday ? Why ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4. Why didn't Fatma visit the Louvre ? - Because

a. it was closed

b. she had a picnic

c. she did not have time

d. it was open

5. The opposite of the underlined word "delicious" is

a. funny

b. weak

c. terrible

d. good

6. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

a. the Louvre

b. the river

c. the Eiffel Tower

d. a picnic

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. On a ..... weekend, I visit my aunt and uncle.

a. typical

b. helpful

c. careful

d. famous

2. Students learn about ..... in the maths lessons.

a. rivers

b. lakes

c. numbers

d. colours

3. I ..... a lot of friends in my new school.

a. took

b. made

c. put

d. gave



- 5** Read and correct the underlined words :

- ### E. Writing

- 6** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

### ***"A visit to the Pyramids"***

[illegible]



3

Alexandria Governorate

English Language - 1st Grade

## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Heba is ..... years old.  
a. 12                      b. 13                      c. 16                      d. 60
2. Mr Adel is a ..... teacher.  
a. bad                      b. clever                      c. funny                      d. lazy
3. Mr Adel goes to school by .....  
a. car                      b. plane                      c. ship                      d. train
4. Mr Adel teaches .....  
a. Arabic                      b. English                      c. history                      d. maths

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mr Ashraf : Is your school near your house ?

Toka : No, sir. It is a long way from my house.

Mr Ashraf : How do you (1) ..... to school ?

Toka : My father always (2) ..... me to school.

Mr Ashraf : How long does it (3) ..... ?

Toka : It takes 20 (4) .....

Mr Ashraf : But why do you come to school late ?

Toka : Sorry, sir. The streets are (5) ..... in the morning.

Mr Ashraf : Try to be early. Don't come late again.

Toka : OK, sir.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

Last Friday evening, John watched a long film on TV. He went to bed very late. The next morning, he couldn't get up early. He got out and ran to school. He forgot to prepare his school bag well. In the class, he didn't find his pen or the book of English which he was going to use. He tried to borrow them from his classmates, but they couldn't give what he wanted



because they were using them. His teachers weren't pleased with him. He was sorry and promised to go to bed early and get up early.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Do you think John is a careless pupil or not ? How do you know ?

2. Give a suitable title for this passage ?

3. Why were the teachers angry with John ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4. John got up late on .

- a. Friday      b. Monday      c. Saturday      d. Tuesday

5. The underlined word "pleased" means .

- a. high      b. happy      c. exciting      d. sorry

6. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to John's .

- a. classmates      b. pens      c. cousins      d. teachers

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Aya is sitting under a tree. As it is very .

- a. cold      b. sunny      c. stormy      d. cloudy

2. Baby birds are very . They can't fly for many days.

- a. kind      b. strong      c. unkind      d. weak

3. He'd like to spend all day . video games.

- a. play      b. played      c. playing      d. plays

4. Lovely things make you feel .

- a. bad      b. frightened      c. happy      d. sad

5. Pupils wear school .

- a. uniforms      b. forms      c. reforms      d. performs

6. Sensible persons are . with their friends.

- a. friendly      b. short      c. tall      d. unfriendly



7. They ..... a video call at the moment.  
a. are making      b. is making      c. made      d. make
8. We know it is the end of the lessons when we hear the .....  
a. bell      b. ball      c. bill      d. doll
9. Your father never works ..... Saturdays.  
a. at      b. for      c. in      d. on
10. Ziad doesn't ..... swimming when it is cold.  
a. watch      b. play      c. go      d. do

**5** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Camels are very strong. They can't carry 100 kilos of bags. ( ..... )
2. My best friend have got short, dark hair. ( ..... )
3. Tarek is my cousin. Today is her birthday. ( ..... )
4. Where does Mona's father **lives** ? ( ..... )

### E. Writing

**6** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

**"Your favourite sports star"**



## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- The story of Sara is about ..... girl.  
a. a clever      b. a lazy      c. an orphan      d. an old
- Sara's grandfather lives in .....  
a. Cairo      b. Egypt      c. France      d. England
- Sara goes to live with her .....  
a. grandmother      b. father      c. mother      d. grandfather
- Sara's grandfather has a lot of .....  
a. goats      b. cows      c. sheep      d. ships

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed : Where did you spend your summer holiday ?

Omar : I went to (1) .....

Ahmed : Great ! (2) ..... did you go with ?

Omar : I went with my family.

Ahmed : How did you (3) ..... to Alexandria ?

Omar : We went by train.

Ahmed : Where did you (4) ..... there ?

Omar : In a hotel.

Ahmed : Did you enjoy your time there ?

Omar : (5) .....

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mr Ali is a teacher in Cairo. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday, Friday and Saturday, he usually stays home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch ; chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in winter in Cairo. Mr Ali did not want to stay home, so he went to a restaurant near the school. He loves the food there. The cook makes it all himself.



**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What does Mr Ali usually do twice a week ?

2. Give a suitable title for the passage.

3. Do you think Mr Ali will go to this restaurant again ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The underlined word "near" is the opposite of \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. fast                      b. far                      c. old                      d. new

5. The weather is sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ in winter in Cairo .

- a. sunny                      b. good                      c. windy                      d. rainy

6. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. the weather                      b. the food                      c. the cook                      d. restaurant

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Your brother is your parents' \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. son                      b. sister                      c. brother                      d. daughter

2. A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is at the top of the house.

- a. orphan                      b. attic                      c. mountain                      d. hill

3. Huda's grandmother is very kind. She loves \_\_\_\_\_ so much.

- a. theirs                      b. her                      c. their                      d. hers

4. I arrived \_\_\_\_\_ Spain last week.

- a. in                      b. at                      c. on                      d. no word

5. Rania is a top \_\_\_\_\_ in Africa.

- a. gymnast                      b. gymnastics                      c. athletics                      d. physics

6. He is very busy. He \_\_\_\_\_ take any holiday.

- a. can't                      b. don't                      c. hasn't                      d. wasn't

7. We can \_\_\_\_\_ a video call with your cousins in England.

- a. write                      b. make                      c. have                      d. do



**5** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I have got one brother but I have got any sisters. (                      .. )
2. Doesn't tell people your personal information. (                      .. )
3. There are some milk in the fridge, but there is not any juice. (                      .. )
4. I don't like this tea. There is too many sugar in it ! (                      .. )

### E. Writing

**6** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

**"Your family"**



5

Sharkia Governorate

El-Dokki Educational Complex

## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. At school, I have science and ..... lessons every day.  
a. Arabic                      b. English                      c. art                      d. PE
2. I do my homework ..... watching TV.  
a. before                      b. after                      c. when                      d. with
3. My ..... helps me study English.  
a. brother                      b. mother                      c. father                      d. uncle
4. I study English ..... with my mother.  
a. at home                      b. at school                      c. in the street                      d. in the club

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sara : This is a photo of my cousin.

Mona : What's his (1) ..... ?

Sara : It's Ali.

Mona : How (2) ..... is he ?

Sara : 14 years old.

Mona : Where does he (3) ..... ?

Sara : In Zagazig.

Mona : What's his favourite food ?

Sara : He (4) ..... eating fish.

Mona : He (5) ..... like your dad.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

It's important to eat the right things, but we shouldn't **forget** about what we drink. We should drink a lot of water. Water is great because **it** hasn't got any fats or sugar. So we should drink more water. Some drinks have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink them because they are bad for our bodies and our teeth. Milk is good for teeth. We should try to drink a glass of milk every day. Fizzy drinks are also bad for our teeth even when they don't have sugar.



**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

2. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to ?

3. Why do you think we have to drink the right things ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4. Fizzy drinks are ..... for our bodies.

- a. bad                      b. good                      c. easy                      d. difficult

5. Milk is good for our .....

- a. blood                      b. teeth                      c. ears                      d. noses

6. The underlined word "forget" means to be .....

- a. able to remember                      b. unable to remember  
c. able to help people                      d. unable to move to a place

**D. Vocabulary & Structure****4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. .... is an interesting subject.

- a. English                      b. Gym                      c. Volleyball                      d. Handball

2. Some students in Egypt ..... to school. Bikes are fantastic.

- a. run                      b. walk                      c. cycle                      d. meet

3. My aunt is very ..... She gives me presents.

- a. kind                      b. sad                      c. unkind                      d. poor

4. My dad charges his phone with a phone .....

- a. screen                      b. micro                      c. charger                      d. printer

5. .... is not a cooking verb.

- a. Stir                      b. Boil                      c. Run                      d. Add

6. The ..... which I always remember is fish and rice.

- a. mall                      b. male                      c. mail                      d. meal

7. To ..... is to sleep for a time in a tent.

- a. stop                      b. step                      c. camp                      d. drop

8. This is my pen. It's .....

- a. me                      b. I                      c. my                      d. mine



9. What subject are you good ..... ? - Arabic.  
a. at                      b. from                      c. on                      d. for
10. There is ..... cheese in the fridge.  
a. some                      b. any                      c. a lot                      d. many

**5** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We played games and Ali rides his bike. ( ..... )
2. Are there some apples in the fridge ? ( ..... )
3. There is too many sugar in my tea. ( ..... )
4. Nabil and Ali are twins. **There** sister is called Hams. ( ..... )

### E. Writing

**6** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
*"Your favourite hobby"*

[illegible]



## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (انصوب الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did Ali go yesterday ?

- a. To the cinema    b. To the theatre    c. To the zoo    d. To the school

2. Who went with Ali ?

- a. His family    b. His friends    c. His teacher    d. No one

3. What did Ali see ?

- a. Buses    b. Animals    c. Balls    d. Bills

4. How was Ali when he went home ?

- a. Happy    b. Sad    c. Tired    d. Unhappy

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rami : Do you play any sport, Hani ?

Hani : Yes, I (1) ..... tennis.

Rami : (2) ..... do you play tennis ?

Hani : At a sports (3) ..... near my house.

Rami : (4) ..... do you go there ?

Hani : On foot.

Rami : (5) ..... do you play it with ?

Hani : With my friends.

Rami : I wish you good luck.

Hani : Thank you so much.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following. then answer the questions :

Egypt is a big country in Africa. It is a fine country. Every year, a lot of tourists come to visit Egypt. They come by air or by sea. Most of them prefer visiting Egypt in winter because it is usually warm. They visit



a lot of beautiful places. They visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. They also go to Giza to see the Pyramids and the Sphinx. They go to Luxor to see the Temple of Karnak. In summer, they go to the beaches to enjoy swimming and fishing. They spend a lot of money which is important for Egypt.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Why do you think tourists prefer visiting Egypt in winter ?
2. Give a suitable title for this passage.
3. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. Tourists can see the ..... in Giza.  
a. sea                      b. pyramids                      c. beaches                      d. temple
5. The ..... spent by tourists is very important for Egypt.  
a. time                      b. holiday                      c. food                      d. money
6. The underlined word "fine" means .....  
a. very bad                      b. very cold                      c. very hot                      d. very good

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Good students work hard to ..... their dreams.  
a. achieve                      b. forget                      c. sleep                      d. watch
2. He plays the piano in a famous .....  
a. bend                      b. pink                      c. band                      d. bark
3. I can't see very well, so I need .....  
a. classes                      b. glasses                      c. boots                      d. shoes
4. After we put sugar in tea, we should ..... it.  
a. eat                      b. cut                      c. stir                      d. add
5. Drivers should follow the traffic .....  
a. rolls                      b. roles                      c. rules                      d. roils



- 5** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I would like playing outdoors. (play)
2. What did you bought yesterday? (buy)
3. This is my book. It's me. (I)
4. Heba don't like football. (be)

**6** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

### "Your favourite sports star"

[illegible]



7

Gharbia Governorate

West Mahalla Educational Directorate

## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Habiba is a .....  
 a. farmer                      b. teacher                      c. gymnast                      d. nurse
2. Habiba wants to go to the .....  
 a. Olympics                      b. stadium                      c. club                      d. school
3. Habiba ..... for five or six hours.  
 a. trains                      b. eats                      c. works                      d. cooks
4. Habiba is ..... years old.  
 a. 80                      b. 8                      c. 17                      d. 18

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed : What is your favourite sports star ?

Yasser : Mohamed Salah. He plays (1) ..... Egypt.

Ahmed : Which sport does Mohamed Salah play ?

Yasser : He plays (2) .....

Ahmed : Does he (3) ..... a lot of goals ?

Yasser : Yes, he does.

Ahmed : How does he help people ?

Yasser : He gives them (4) ..... to build schools and hospitals in Egypt.

Ahmed : Has he got many fans ?

Yasser : Yes, he (5) .....

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name is Omar. Last summer, I went on a holiday to London with my family. We went there by plane. My uncle was waiting for us at the



airport. We visited many places. My favourite place was Windsor Castle. We went there by train. We walked around the castle. My favourite activity was a ride on London Eye. We stayed in London for two weeks. The holiday helped me to speak English all the time. My sister Nada bought a lot of souvenirs. It was a nice holiday. I hope to go there again.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What is the main idea of this passage ?

2. What does the underlined word "there" refer to ?

3. How do you think the holiday helped Omar ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The family stayed in London for .....

- a. one week    b. two weeks    c. a month    d. two months

5. The family went to Windsor Castle by ... ..

- a. train    b. plane    c. car    d. bus

6. "Souvenirs" are things which help you ... .. the places you visited.

- a. forget    b. remember    c. study    d. stay

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. I'd like to ..... a selfie in front of the river.

- a. make    b. take    c. write    d. do

2. Something scary makes you feel .....

- a. happy    b. funny    c. bad    d. frightened

3. How ..... is the Cairo Tower ? - It is 187 metres.

- a. tall    b. long    c. fast    d. kind

4. Maher ..... voluntary work at a hospital.

- a. does    b. makes    c. listens    d. plays



5. I ..... in the lake at Siwa yesterday.<sup>1</sup>  
 a. swim                      b. is swimming                      c. swam                      d. swims
6. This is ..... father's car.  
 a. mine                      b. I                      c. my                      d. me
7. My sister ..... the computer now.  
 a. use                      b. uses                      c. is using                      d. used
8. Gymnastics helps you to ..... strong.  
 a. find                      b. stay                      c. sleep                      d. spend
9. My ..... is my father or mother's sister.  
 a. uncle                      b. aunt                      c. daughter                      d. son
10. The ..... is a room at the top of a house.  
 a. city                      b. goat                      c. orphan                      d. attic

**5** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We shouldn't eat healthy food. ( ..... )
2. She always goes to school on Friday. It is a holiday. ( ..... )
3. There aren't some figs in the fridge. ( ..... )
4. Manals bag is yellow. ( ..... )

**E. Writing**

**6** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :  
 "Your family"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. How old is Ali's grandfather ?

a. 80

b. 70

c. 60

d. 50

2. Samy is his .....

a. dad

b. uncle

c. grandfather

d. brother

3. .... is 30 years old.

a. Ali

b. Samy

c. Grandfather

d. Helmi

4. His grandfather's hair is white and .....

a. tall

b. long

c. old

d. short

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Aya : Hi, Mona.

Mona : Hi, Aya.

Aya : What are you doing (1) ..... the moment ?

Mona : I am looking at a (2) .....

Aya : A website! (3) ..... ?

Mona : Because I want to (4) ..... a present.

Aya : A present! Why ?

Mona : For my sister's (5) ..... party.

Aya : That's great. Happy birthday for her.

Mona : Thank you.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks ? It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.



Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are delicious. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Which food doesn't have much of fat or sugar ?

2. What do you think about snacks ?

3. Give a suitable title for this passage.

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. When something is "delicious", it is .....

- a. tasty                      b. salty                      c. expensive                      d. cheap

5. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to .....

- a. cakes                                      b. crisps and cakes  
c. snacks                                      d. bodies

6. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have .....

- a. a lot of sugar                                      b. a lot of salt  
c. a lot of fat                                      d. a lot of food

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. We are going to do a ..... on "How to be healthy".

- a. shopping                      b. housework                      c. subject                      d. project

2. She ..... a coat as it is hot.

- a. wears                      b. doesn't wear                      c. didn't wear                      d. wore

3. Tagine is a ..... from Morocco.

- a. mean                      b. mail                      c. meal                      d. male

4. .... is a game for two players.

- a. Chess                      b. Football                      c. Basketball                      d. Volleyball



5. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ a clever tennis player.  
 a. never is      b. always is      c. is often      d. usually is
6. It's \_\_\_\_\_ to cycle to school.  
 a. ugly      b. unhealthy      c. healthy      d. slow
7. You should check your teeth regularly at .....  
 a. the baker's      b. the dentist's      c. the chemist's      d. the butcher's
8. Which sport can ..... you happy?  
 a. give      b. do      c. make      d. drive
9. Old people usually have white .....  
 a. games      b. beards      c. films      d. stars
10. There's too ..... milk.  
 a. much      b. many      c. a lot of      d. lots of

**5 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. They names are Emad and Mona. ( ..... )
2. I drink orange juice now. ( ..... )
3. Ali didn't felt well yesterday. ( ..... )
4. Can I have any water, please? ( ..... )

**E. Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

*"What you want to be when you grow up."*



## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Magda is a/an ..... girl.  
a. lazy                      b. orphan                      c. clever                      d. helpful
2. Magda lives with her .....  
a. aunt                      b. mother                      c. father                      d. grandmother
3. Her grandmother is a/an .... woman.  
a. old                      b. young                      c. tall                      d. short
4. Magda sleeps in a bed in the ..... of the house.  
a. hall                      b. kitchen                      c. living room                      d. attic

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Son : That is my friend, Mazin. Can you see him ?

Father : I don't know Mazin. What does he (1) ..... like ?

Son : He's got long, curly (2) .....

Father : Oh ! I think I can (3) ..... him. Has he got glasses ?

Son : No, he (4) .....

Father : Is his father with him ?

Son : Yes, he's got a beard.

Father : Has he got a (5) ..... ?

Son : No, he hasn't got a moustache.

Father : Oh! Yes. I can see them now.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hager is an orphan girl. She lives with her grandfather. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in a village. He has lots of goats. Hager sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goats' milk and eats bread and cheese. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy! One day, her uncle arrives and takes her to the city. The city life is exciting but she doesn't like to live there. She is very sad to be away from her grandfather.



**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?
2. What does Hager see in the village ?
3. Do you think that life is exciting in the city ? Why ? / Why not ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The underlined word "orphan" means
 

a. has no father or mother	b. has no brother
c. has no home	d. has no food
5. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to
 

a. grandfather	b. mother	c. uncle	d. Hager
----------------	-----------	----------	----------
6. Hager's grandfather has lots of
 

a. dogs	b. cats	c. goats	d. lions
---------	---------	----------	----------

**D. Vocabulary and Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. He was late, but he could \_\_\_\_\_ the plane.
 

a. catch	b. hold	c. have	d. pick
----------	---------	---------	---------
2. We can borrow or read books at the \_\_\_\_\_.
 

a. library	b. laboratory	c. playground	d. theatre
------------	---------------	---------------	------------
3. His life is \_\_\_\_\_, he hasn't got time for hobbies.
 

a. exciting	b. boring	c. wonderful	d. amazing
-------------	-----------	--------------	------------
4. You can \_\_\_\_\_ a new icon on your tablet.
 

a. design	b. print	c. charge	d. mime
-----------	----------	-----------	---------
5. A \_\_\_\_\_ is something you buy to remember a holiday.
 

a. present	b. souvenir	c. prize	d. medal
------------	-------------	----------	----------
6. What a \_\_\_\_\_ ! I couldn't meet my friends.
 

a. pity	b. party	c. poem	d. play
---------	----------	---------	---------
7. \_\_\_\_\_ are hard, dry potato pieces that you eat as a snack.
 

a. Crisps	b. Biscuits	c. Cinnamons	d. Figs
-----------	-------------	--------------	---------







## 10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate

State Educational Directorate

## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. My school is ..... from my house.  
a. near                      b. far                      c. easy                      d. long
2. I go to school by .....  
a. bus                      b. car                      c. bike                      d. train
3. I ..... at my school on time.  
a. drive                      b. arrive                      c. walk                      d. talk
4. It's ..... to go to school by bike.  
a. unhealthy                      b. bad                      c. slow                      d. healthy

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sama : Hi, Abeer. How was your holiday ?

Abeer : Hi, Sama. It was great, thanks.

Sama : Where (1)..... you go ?

Abeer : I went to France.

Sama : Did you (2)..... the Eiffel Tower ?

Abeer : Yes, I did.

Sama : Did you (3)..... your time there ?

Abeer : Yes, I enjoyed my time there.

Sama : (4)..... did you come home ?

Abeer : I came back (5)..... Sunday.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Lamees is 12 years old. She lives in a big house with her family. Her grandparents live with them, too. Her father is a doctor. He helps sick people. Her mother, Nadia, is a teacher. She teaches home economics at school. Lamees and her only sister, Rodina are twins. They look the same, both of them have got big blue eyes and blond hair. They have no brothers, so they spend their free time together playing with their toys. Their grandfather Kamal doesn't work. He is 65 years old. He always



tells the children stories. Grandmother Munira is a good cook. She often makes them delicious cakes.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What does this passage talk about ?

2. How does Rodina look like ?

3. Why do you think the children like their grandfather ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4. The underlined word "sick" is the opposite of ..  
 a. delicious    b. lazy    c. fast    d. healthy
5. .... makes delicious cakes.  
 a. Nadia    b. Kamal    c. Munira    d. Lamees
6. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ..  
 a. Nadia and Lamees    b. Lamees and Rodina  
 c. Lamees and Munira    d. Nadia and Munira

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. There ..... much water on the floor.  
 a. is    b. are    c. has    d. have
2. A ..... is a group of people who play music together.  
 a. hand    b. band    c. team    d. family
3. In Alexandria, you can have a wonderful ..... from your own window.  
 a. review    b. view    c. preview    d. interview
4. Salma ..... a story yesterday.  
 a. wrote    b. writes    c. writing    d. write
5. Meat is the main ..... in tagine in Morocco.  
 a. subject    b. ingredient    c. sport    d. place
6. When you put sugar in the glass, you should ..... it well.  
 a. start    b. spill    c. stir    d. stop



- 5** Read and correct the underlined words :

- ### E. Writing

- 6** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

***"A day in your life"***

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 600 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 700 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 800 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 900 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 1000 1001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1008 1009 1010 1011 1012 1013 1014 1015 1016 1017 1018 1019 1020 1021 1022 1023 1024 1025 1026 1027 1028 1029 1030 1031 1032 1033 1034 1035 1036 1037 1038 1039 104



11

Damietta Governorate

El-Zarka Educational Directorate

## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Habiba is a .....  
 a. farmer                      b. teacher                      c. gymnast                      d. nurse
2. Habiba's family lives in .....  
 a. Alexandria                      b. Cairo                      c. Mansoura                      d. Damietta
3. Habiba ..... for five or six hours.  
 a. trains                      b. eats                      c. works                      d. cooks
4. Habiba is ..... years old.  
 a. 80                      b. 8                      c. 17                      d. 18

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Amjad : Hello, Hany. How are you today ?

Hany : I'm (1) ..... , thanks.

Amjad : Who's your (2) ..... teacher ?

Hany : Mr Wael, our teacher of English.

Amjad : (3) ..... you good at English ?

Hany : Yes, of course.

Amjad : How (4) ..... English lessons have you got every week ?

Hany : We have got 5 lessons.

Amjad : When is the break ?

Hany : It's (5) ..... 11 o'clock. We play and have fun.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Once, a train stopped at a small station and a woman opened the window. There was a boy **outside** and the woman said to **him**. I don't want to get out of the train because I am old and I can't walk fast. Please run to the station café and get me an ice cream and get one for yourself, too. Here is six pounds". The boy came back before the train moved again. He was eating an ice cream. He ran to the woman's window and gave her three pounds. He said, "There was only one ice cream".



**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "him" refer to ?

.....

3. What do you think of the boy ?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4. The woman doesn't want to get out of the train because she was

.....

a. old and slow

b. young and fast

c. old and fast

d. young and slow

5. The boy bought .....

a. one ice cream

b. no ice creams

c. two ice creams

d. three ice creams

6. The opposite of the underlined word "outside" is .....

a. sides

b. beside

c. before

d. inside

**D. Vocabulary & Structure****4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. What's your favourite ..... in this story ? - Alice.

a. colour

b. character

c. event

d. actor

2. A brave person is happy to do something .....

a. fun

b. safe

c. dangerous

d. bad

3. Something scary makes you feel .....

a. happy

b. funny

c. good

d. frightened

4. Camels are very ..... They can carry 200 kilos of bags.

a. tall

b. strong

c. poor

d. weak

5. Nada always ..... her homework in the evening.

a. makes

b. goes

c. watches

d. does

6. Mohammed Salah is a kind person. He ..... money to the poor.

a. gives

b. takes

c. puts

d. reads



7. .... names are Hany and Haidy. They are cousins.  
a.His                      b.Her                      c.Their                      d.Our
8. I like swimming in the pool ..... it is nice and cool.  
a.because                      b.and                      c.but                      c.or
9. Are you ..... the tablet ? - Yes, I am.  
a.use                      b.used                      c.uses                      d.using
10. It's very high. There's lots of water in it. It is a ..  
a.jungle                      b.sea                      c.waterfall                      d.river

**5** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They didn't travelled to Alexandria by car. ( ..... )
2. It's her bag. It's her. ( ..... )
3. Do your friend play football on Mondays ? ( ..... )
4. She usually have breakfast with her family. ( ..... )

### E. Writing

**6** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

**"Your favourite food"**



### A. Listening

#### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did you go ? - To .....  
 a. Cairo                      b. Siwa                      c. Tanta                      d. Aswan
2. What did you climb ?  
 a. A river                      b. A house                      c. A mountain                      d. A tower
3. What did you see ?  
 a. Dogs                      b. Cats                      c. Cows                      d. Camels
4. Where did you sleep in the desert ?  
 a. In a tent                      b. In a hotel                      c. In a bedroom                      d. At home

### B. Language Functions

#### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

**Sami** : Good morning. How are you ?

**Ahmed** : Good morning. I'm fine, thanks.

**Sami** : (1) ..... is your favourite sports star ?

**Ahmed** : Mohamed Salah.

**Sami** : What sport does he play ?

**Ahmed** : He (2) ..... football.

**Sami** : What does he look (3) ..... ?

**Ahmed** : He has got curly (4) .....

**Sami** : Does he (5) ..... goals ?

**Ahmed** : Yes, he scores a lot of goals.

### C. Reading Comprehension

#### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name's Rahma. My favourite subject at school is science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths. I quite like doing sports. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not good at it. I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too. I go to bed at ten o'clock in the evening. I live happily with my family.



**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What does this passage talk about ?

2. What does Rahma like doing at home ?

3. What do you think of Rahma ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. You can learn how things work in ..... lesson.

- a. science      b. maths      c. English      d. French

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....

- a. TV      b. tennis      c. school      d. subject

6. The underlined word "not good" means .....

- a. clever      b. bad      c. fast      d. slow

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Salma likes ..... pictures.

- a. draw      b. draws      c. drawn      d. drawing

2. In Egypt, we have the longest ..... in the world.

- a. sea      b. waterfall      c. river      d. forest

3. Healthy ..... are good for you.

- a. snakes      b. snacks      c. snails      d. songs

4. This is Hala's book. It is .....

- a. hers      b. her      c. she      d. his

5. You should ..... your study and your hobbies.

- a. play      b. balance      c. stay      d. spend

6. We have to follow the school .....

- a. roles      b. rulers      c. rules      d. ruler

7. Some children in Uganda usually cross the river in a .....

- a. canoe      b. taxi      c. bus      d. train



- 5** Read and correct the underlined words :

- ### E. Writing

- "Your best friend Reda"**

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 600 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 700 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 800 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 900 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 1000 1001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1008 1009 1010 1011 1012 1013 1014 1015 1016 1017 1018 1019 1020 1021 1022 1023 1024 1025 1026 1027 1028 1029 1030 1031 1032 1033 1034 1035 1036 1037 1038 1039 104



13

Suez Governorate

Suez Educational District

## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Andy is ..... years old.  
a. ten                      b. twelve                      c. thirteen                      d. eleven
2. Andy is from .....  
a. France                      b. England                      c. The USA                      d. Egypt
3. Andy usually goes to school .....  
a. on foot                      b. by bike                      c. by car                      d. by taxi
4. Andy goes to school on a snowmobile in .....  
a. summer                      b. fall                      c. winter                      d. spring

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Omnia : What is your favourite subject ?

Heba : My favourite subject is (1) .....

Omnia : (2) ..... do you like it ?

Heba : Because English is an interesting subject.

Omnia : (3) ..... 's your English teacher this year ?

Heba : It's Mrs Mona.

Omnia : How often do you (4) ..... it ?

Heba : I study it (5) ..... a week.

Omnia : Who is your maths teacher ?

Heba : Mr Hamdy.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Most people have three meals every day, breakfast, lunch and dinner. They eat these meals in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But most people don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that healthy food is very important and people should



eat lots of fruits and vegetables to keep healthy. People should not eat too many cakes. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every day and not to have too many sugar drinks. Doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time. They should go for walks to do exercise or practise any sport.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What do you think people should eat to keep healthy ?

.....

2. Give a suitable title for this passage.

.....

3. What do doctors advise people not to do ?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to . . . .

a. a few people

b. doctors

c. all doctors

d. most people

5. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every . . . . .

a. month

b. week

c. day

d. year

6. The underlined word "keep" means . . . . .

a. do

b. stay

c. leave

d. make

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Brothers or sisters of the same age are called . . . . .

a. doubles

b. towers

c. toilets

d. twins

2. . . . . are animals that are like sheep.

a. Cows

b. Buffaloes

c. Goats

d. Snakes

3. In the area of the Pyramids, you can . . . . . horses.

a. drive

b. give

c. eat

d. ride

4. I would like to . . . . . a selfie in front of the Pyramids.

a. take

b. make

c. write

d. do



5. We paint and draw in ..... lesson.  
 a. art                      b. English                      c. maths                      d. Arabic
6. It is important to ..... safe online.  
 a. sleep                      b. stay                      c. stand                      d. sit
7. Ali uses a/an ..... because he cannot walk.  
 a. stair                      b. stool                      c. wheelchair                      d. armchair
8. Listen! A nice singer ..... on the radio.  
 a. sings                      b. sang                      c. is singing                      d. would sing
9. My father ..... a lot of work today.  
 a. has got                      b. have got                      c. is got                      d. are got
10. Aya always ..... tennis every Friday.  
 a. play                      b. playing                      c. played                      d. plays

**5 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. This is mine new house. ( ..... )
2. Is there some coffee ? ( ..... )
3. Does Salwa like watch TV ? ( ..... )
4. He didn't played football yesterday. ( ..... )

**E. Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

***"Your family"***

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did you go ?

- a. To Cairo      b. To Luxor      c. To Alexandria      d. To Siwa

2. We ..... in the lake.

- a. swam      b. saw      c. ate      d. slept

3. We saw ..... and slept in a tent.

- a. dogs      b. camels      c. cats      d. cows

4. It was my ..... holiday.

- a. favourite      b. bad      c. lazy      d. sad

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali : Who is your best friend, Omar ?

Omar : He is Ayman, my cousin.

Ali : How (1) ..... is he ?

Omar : He's 13. He is in the same classroom.

Ali : What are his (2) ..... subjects ?

Omar : He likes English and science.

Ali : What is his favourite (3) ..... ?

Omar : He (4) ..... basketball.

Ali : Is he tall ?

Omar : Yes, he (5) .....

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

All work and no play make your life "dull". So you need fun activities, too. Hobbies are activities that are fun. Your hobbies can be useful, too. There are many kinds of hobbies. Hobbies will help you use your free time well. Music, reading stories, writing, sports and painting may all be hobbies.



I love to paint, it's my hobby. I paint with water colour. I like to paint beautiful nature. When we go on holidays to different places like the desert areas, rivers, mountains or the countryside, I always take my art material with me. I like to sit and paint. I keep all my paintings carefully in my bedroom. Also, I like making painting with water colours because water colours are quick to dry. What about you ?

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. Why does the writer use water colours ?

3. Why do you think hobbies are important ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....

- a. music      b. painting      c. writing      d. reading

5. The underlined word "dull" means .....

- a. fantastic      b. happy      c. interesting      d. boring

6. The writer likes to paint .....

- a. houses      b. nature      c. people      d. places

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Don't ..... photos to people you don't know.

- a. make      b. see      c. send      d. eat

2. Are you ..... next to your best friend ? - Yes, I am.

- a. sat      b. sitting      c. sits      d. sit

3. Do you ..... swimming after school ? - No, I don't.

- a. make      b. take      c. play      d. go

4. Your mum or dad's brother is your .....

- a. uncle      b. aunt      c. sister      d. brother



5. A/An ..... has no mother or father.  
 a. twin                      b. orphan                      c. parent                      d. uncle
6. He never ..... , he can't swim.  
 a. not swim                      b. swims                      c. doesn't swim                      d. swim
7. I ..... a horse in the forest, when we had a picnic there.  
 a. drove                      b. rode                      c. went                      d. flew
8. We learn about countries in ..... lessons.  
 a. social studies                      b. religion                      c. maths                      d. computer studies
9. You drink ..... coffee. It's not good for you.  
 a. too many                      b. a lot of                      c. enough                      d. a lot
10. I eat healthy food to stay .....  
 a. weak                      b. strong                      c. unhealthy                      d. poor

**5** Read and correct the underlined words :

1. First, taps the messages icon. ( ..... )
2. She didn't at school yesterday. ( ..... )
3. This bag belongs to Noha. It's her. ( ..... )
4. I doesn't listen to music. ( .. ..... )

**E. Writing**

**6** Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

*"Your favourite sports star"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



15

Minia Governorate

## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Tagine is a traditional meal in ..... .  
 a. Italy                      b. Athens                      c. Egypt                      d. Morocco
2. Mazin likes ..... ..  
 a. koshari                      b. tagine                      c. meat                      d. chicken
3. Tagine's name comes from the cooking ..... for this food.  
 a. pan                      b. pot                      c. plate                      d. dish
4. The taste of tagine is .....  
 a. amazing                      b. amazed                      c. bored                      d. boring

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nada : That's the bell. What is the next lesson ?

Malak : Let's look at the timetable.

Nada : We have got computer (1) .....

Malak : Yes, I love it. It's my (2) ..... subject.

Nada : I am not good at computer studies.

Malak : So, what are your favourite (3) ..... ?

Nada : I love science and languages.

Malak : What languages are you good (4) ..... ?

Nada : I am quite good at English.

Malak : Oh, I (5) ..... like languages. I am bad at English.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Although Khalid and Marawan are twins, they are different in some ways. For example, Khalid's favourite hobby is playing football. He plays it with his friends at school and in the club near their school. He also watches football matches on TV at home after finishing his homework. On the other side, Marawan is very interested in music. He plays it in



a band at school. At home, he likes listening to music on the radio or plays the guitar. Their parents help them study hard for school and also let them enjoy their hobbies.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. When does Khalid watch football matches ?

3. Do you think the twins are always the same ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4. How are Khalid and Marawan different ?

a. In their hobbies

b. They have different classes

c. In their schools

d. With their friends

5. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to .....

a. schools

b. their parents

c. the band

d. the twins

6. The underlined word "band" means .....

a. some people who play a sport together

b. some people who play music together

c. some people who have the same hobby

d. some people who cook together

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. A ..... works in the restaurant.

a. waiter

b. doctor

c. teacher

d. nurse

2. The Eiffel ..... is a famous place in Paris.

a. River

b. Museum

c. Tower

d. Garden

3. It is important to keep your ..... secret on the internet.

a. passport

b. password

c. keyboard

d. mobile

4. All students like ..... teacher.

a. their

b. her

c. you

d. them



5. People, who can't walk, can use a ..... to travel around.  
a. rope                      b. wheel                      c. wheelchair                      d. ship
6. Our English teacher always asks us to do .....  
a. beds                      b. projects                      c. showers                      d. photos
7. How ..... do you get up at 6:30 a.m ? - Always.  
a. many                      b. long                      c. much                      d. often
8. Gymnastics helps you to ..... strong.  
a. spend                      b. find                      c. stay                      d. sleep
9. We ..... any bikes.  
a. have got                      b. haven't got                      c. has got                      d. hasn't got
10. The hair growing over the man's mouth is called .....  
a. moustache                      b. mouse                      c. feature                      d. beard

**5 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. Are their any mobile phones ? ( ..... )
2. Did you bought a new jacket ? ( ..... )
3. There are too much apples. ( ..... )
4. I drink tea at the moment. ( ..... )

**E. Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :**

***"Your favourite sport"***

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

- Famous people have a/an ..... life.  
a. free                      b. busy                      c. boring                      d. interesting
- Famous people do their work for a ..... time.  
a. short                      b. tall                      c. long                      d. dark
- It is important for famous people to ..... their work and life.  
a. train                      b. balance                      c. take                      d. ask
- Life of famous people is important but it is .....  
a. easy                      b. lazy                      c. difficult                      d. happy

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nada : This is a photo of my cousin.

Reem : What's his (1) ..... ?

Nada : It's Fares.

Reem : How (2) ..... is he ?

Nada : He is 14.

Reem : Where does he live ?

Nada : He (3) ..... in Qus.

Reem : What is his favourite food ?

Nada : He (4) ..... eating fish with rice.

Reem : He (5) ..... like his father.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

"Heidi" is the story of an orphan girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic of the house. She drinks goats' milk and eats bread and cheese.



Every day, she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend, Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy.

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats. Heidi has lots of adventures in the countryside.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. Why was Heidi sad in the city ?

3. What do you think about Heidi and Peter's life ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. When someone is "orphan", he has no .....

- a. brothers      b. sisters      c. friends      d. parents

5. .... mentioned in the passage.

- a. Two males      b. Two females  
c. Two males and one female      d. Two males and two females

6. The underlined pronoun "she" refers to .....

- a. Heidi's sister      b. Heidi's mother  
c. Heidi's aunt      d. Heidi

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. On a ..... weekend, I visit my uncle and aunt.

- a. typical      b. careful      c. helpful      d. famous

2. .... on the icon on your laptop.

- a. Write      b. Click      c. Type      d. Read

3. Students learn about ..... in the maths lesson.

- a. rivers      b. lakes      c. numbers      d. colours

4. I ..... a lot of friends in my new school.

- a. took      b. made      c. put      d. gave



5. Nader always talks nicely to people. He's very .....  
 a. bad                      b. kind                      c. angry                      d. unkind
6. When you put sugar in the glass, you should ..... it well.  
 a. start                      b. spill                      c. stir                      d. stop
7. .... are animals that are like sheep.  
 a. Dogs                      b. Cows                      c. Goats                      d. Rats
8. Dina likes ..... very much.  
 a. paint                      b. painted                      c. painting                      d. paints
9. Mohammed Salah ..... score a lot of goals. He is very clever.  
 a. can                      b. must                      c. mustn't                      d. has
10. .... they got any pencils ? - Yes, they have.  
 a. Has                      b. Are                      c. Do                      d. Have

### 5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Does Mona and Sara like painting ? ( ..... )
2. They are drinks tea. ( ..... )
3. The house is our. It belongs to us. ( ..... )
4. There are some laptops and there are a whiteboard. ( ..... )

### E. Writing

#### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A typical day for you"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



17

Sohag Governorate

Saguita Educational Directorate

## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (انصت للاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Gymnastics is a/an ..... sport.  
a. easy                      b. difficult                      c. interesting                      d. boring
2. The gymnast ..... many hours daily.  
a. waves                      b. tells                      c. keeps                      d. trains
3. A gymnast must ..... his hobby, work and study.  
a. train                      b. balance                      c. make                      d. charge
4. The gymnast always wants to ..... his dream.  
a. achieve                      b. study                      c. take                      d. agree

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hana : Hi, Nour. How was your holiday ?

Nour : Hi, Hana. It was great, thanks.

Hana : Where (1) ..... you go ?

Nour : I went to France.

Hana : Did you (2) ..... the Eiffel Tower ?

Nour : Yes, I did.

Hana : Did you (3) ..... your time there ?

Nour : Yes, I enjoyed my time there.

Hana : (4) ..... did you come home ?

Nour : I came back (5) ..... Sunday.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The internet is a great way to talk to your friends and learn new things. But it's also important to stay safe online. There are a few ways can help you to make sure you're not in danger when you use the internet. Use strong passwords that are hard for others to guess, using letters,



numbers and symbols (like £, \$, &!, etc). Keep passwords to yourself and change **them** regularly. If somebody you don't know adds you as a friend, don't say yes quickly. Don't share personal information like your address or phone number with somebody you don't know. If you have an email from a **stranger**, think before clicking on it.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What's the main idea of this passage ?

2. What do you do if someone you don't know asks you to give him your phone number ?

3. What do you think of the internet ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4. The underlined word "**stranger**" means a person you .....  
 a. met                      b. don't know                      c. know                      d. see

5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to .....  
 a. numbers                      b. emails                      c. computers                      d. passwords

6. It's important to ..... safe on the internet.  
 a. stay                      b. say                      c. tell                      d. ask

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Alice's ..... in Wonderland is my favourite.  
 a. Characters                      b. Adventures                      c. Books                      d. Lessons

2. A ..... takes people from one side of a lake to another.  
 a. bike                      b. snowmobile                      c. canoe                      d. car

3. The science teacher shows us many interesting ..... for that lesson.  
 a. sports                      b. words                      c. dialogues                      d. diagrams

4. The twins are two children born at the ..... time.  
 a. different                      b. same                      c. similar                      d. difficult







## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Doaa El-Ghobashy plays .....  
 a. basketball      b. football      c. handball      d. volleyball
2. She is very .....  
 a. long      b. tall      c. short      d. heavy
3. She plays for .....  
 a. England      b. Brazil      c. Egypt      d. Syria
4. She always has a big .....  
 a. smile      b. smell      c. house      d. sister

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali : What are you eating ?

Hany : I'm eating (1) .....

Ali : But they are not (2) ..... for your teeth.

Hany : But I like sweets very much.

Ali : I know, but you (3) ..... eat too many sweets.

Hany : Why ?

Ali : Because they have too much (4) .....

Hany : What should I eat ?

Ali : You should eat (5) ..... and vegetables.

Hany : OK. I will have an apple.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I like to collect fossils حفريات. It's an interesting hobby, although it is not always easy to find them. The first thing you have to do is to find the right place. I know a place in the desert where there are many fossils. When I see a fossil, first I look carefully to see if it was a plant or a small animal. After that, I put the fossil in a small bag. Then, I take it home. The next step, is deciding where to put the fossil. I group the fossils of animals and plants and keep them in different boxes. Finally, I find out the name of the animal or plant and write it in my notebook.



**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Do you think the writer could keep his fossils at home ?
2. What does the writer do in his notebook ?
3. What's the best title of this passage ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to a  
 a fossil                      b. box                      c. notebook                      d. bag
5. There are many fossils in the  
 a desert                      b field                      c farm                      d school
6. The underlined word "finally" means  
 a at last                      b. first                      c. usually                      d sometimes

**D. Vocabulary & Structure****4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d .**

1. Athletes work hard to \_\_\_\_\_ their studies, their sport, their friends and their family.  
 a break                      b practice                      c balance                      d pour
2. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ snacks!  
 a love                      b loves                      c loving                      d to love
3. You can learn a lot about rice pudding recipes \_\_\_\_\_  
 a online                      b line                      c outline                      d fine
4. There is \_\_\_\_\_ milk in the fridge.  
 a an                      b some                      c any                      d a
5. It's \_\_\_\_\_ to cycle to school.  
 a bad                      b harmful                      c unhealthy                      d healthy
6. The canoe \_\_\_\_\_ students to school and home again every day.  
 a gives                      b takes                      c talks                      d rides
7. A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is a room at the top of a house.  
 a hall                      b attic                      c kitchen                      d stair



8. Your brother is your parent's .....  
 a. son                      b. daughter                      c. uncle                      d. sister
9. .... is not a cooking verb.  
 a. Add                      b. Boil                      c. Stir                      d. Run
10. Let's go to the shops. There is ..... time before our train leaves.  
 a. many                      b. a lot                      c. enough                      d. any

### 5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My sister goes to a girl's school. ( ..... )
2. I love learn about how things work. ( ..... )
3. Boils the water. ( ..... )
4. What is your sister look like ? ( ..... )

### E. Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

***"How to be safe on the internet"***



19

Luxor Governorate

## A. Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Salma is ..... years old.  
a. 12                      b. 13                      c. 14                      d. 15
2. Salma goes to school .....  
a. on foot                b. by car                c. by bus                d. by bike
3. Salma is in .....  
a. prep 1                b. prep 2                c. prep 3                d. prim 6
4. What does Salma like ?  
a. Her bike                b. Her car                c. Her doll                d. Her friends

## B. Language Functions

## 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Dina : This is a photo of my cousin.

Dalia : What (1) ..... his name ?

Dina : It's Maged.

Dalia : How (2) ..... is he ?

Dina : He's 14 (3) ..... old.

Dalia : What (4) ..... does he like ?

Dina : He likes basketball.

Dalia : What is his favourite subject ?

Dina : He likes (5) .....

Dalia : Oh ! I like English, too.

## C. Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last summer, Ali decided to spend his holiday with his uncle Mohamed. Mohamed lives in Cairo. It is a big city. A lot of people live there. It is famous for its interesting places. Ali saw the Egyptian Museum. It's full of amazing things. It's open daily from 9:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. He also visited the Cairo Tower. It is a very tall building. He enjoyed the view



of the city from the top of the tower. He travelled by boat on the Nile. He took many photos there. He went shopping at Khan El-Khalili and bought a lot of souvenirs for his friends. He also went to the clothes shops and bought nice clothes for his family. Ali was very happy.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. How did Ali travel on the Nile ?

3. Why do you think many people visit the Egyptian Museum ?

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The underlined word "top" is the opposite of .....

- a. popular      b. bad      c. bottom      d. slow

5. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to .....

- a. Cairo      b. the Egyptian Museum  
c. the Cairo Tower      d. Giza

6. Ali bought a lot of ..... from Khan El Khalili for his friends.

- a. souvenirs      b. computers      c. clothes      d. photos

**D. Vocabulary & Structure**

**4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Keep your password .....

- a. secret      b. famous      c. late      d. happy

2. What is ..... father's name ?

- a. yours      b. he      c. you      d. your

3. .... give us milk and meat.

- a. Lions      b. Dogs      c. Goats      d. Cats

4. The students play football in the ..... at school.

- a. museum      b. zoo      c. playground      d. library

5. How ..... do you get up at 5 o'clock ? - Always.

- a. old      b. often      c. long      d. many







## A. Listening

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Mohamed Salah is a .....  
a. teacher      b. sports star      c. doctor      d. swimmer
2. What sport does Mohamed Salah play ?  
a. Tennis      b. Basketball      c. Handball      d. Football
3. Where does Mohamed Salah play ?  
a. In Africa      b. In America      c. In Europe      d. In Asia
4. Mohamed Salah is good at .....  
a. scoring goals      b. singing      c. swimming      d. drawing

## B. Language Functions

### 2 Complete the following dialogue :

Reem : Hello, Dalida. What's this ?

Dalida : This is a photo of my cousin.

Reem : (1) ..... 's her name ?

Dalida : Her name is Sama.

Reem : How (2) ..... is she ?

Dalida : She's 14.

Reem : Where (3) ..... she live ?

Dalida : She lives in Giza.

Reem : What's her (4) ..... hobby ?

Dalida : She (5) ..... chess.

## C. Reading Comprehension

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Ali and Omar are twins. They are both aged twelve. They are in prep one. They usually walk to school. Ali likes maths and wants to be an engineer but Omar likes English and wants to be a teacher of English. Ali likes to go swimming on Tuesdays, but Omar doesn't like swimming. Omar likes music. He plays the drums and listens to music. They play chess together on Thursdays and Ali usually wins. Both of them like voluntary work. They help in a children's hospital. They play games with the children and read them stories. I'm proud of being their father.



**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Do you think that Ali and Omar are good boys ? Why / Why not ?

2. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to ?

3. Give a suitable title for the passage.

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. Omar wants to be a/an .....

- a. doctor      b. teacher      c. engineer      d. farmer

5. The underlined word "**voluntary**" means for .....

- a. much time      b. many people      c. no money      d. no one

6. Ali likes .....

- a. football      b. music      c. swimming      d. English

**D. Vocabulary & Structure****4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. We keep all our old things in the .....

- a. attic      b. selfie      c. orphan      d. adventure

2. Sama likes ..... sports.

- a. did      b. do      c. doing      d. does

3. A baby bird is ..... It can't fly for many days.

- a. week      b. weak      c. strong      d. spring

4. Egypt is a ....., but Cairo is a city.

- a. room      b. town      c. village      d. country

5. She has got short, ..... hair.

- a. busy      b. care      c. curly      d. fast

6. Use the mouse to ..... on the icon.

- a. kick      b. click      c. tape      d. top

7. This question is ..... difficult.

- a. quiet      b. quit      c. quite      d. noisy

8. Where did you ..... on Saturday evening ?

- a. went      b. goes      c. going      d. go

9. My favourite ..... is koshari.

- a. meal      b. mail      c. mean      d. main

10. This is ..... book.

- a. Amal      b. Amal's      c. to Amal      d. Amals



### 5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Ahmed sometimes watch football matches on TV. (                      )
2. Stops playing on your phone. (                      )
3. He have got a big smile. (                      )
4. My mother cook lunch now. (                      )

### E. Writing

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

*"Your last summer holiday"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

21

Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Central Administrative  
Dakahlia Institutes

### A. Language Functions

### 1 Complete the dialogue with these words :

**looking – using – watching – writing**

**Nasser** : What are you doing, Mazin ?

**Mazin** : Hi, Nasser. I'm (1) ..... our new tablet.

**Nasser** : Are you (2) ..... an email ?

**Mazin** : No, I'm not. Look ! Can you see the photos on it ?

**Nasser** : Oh ! Yes. Are you (3) ..... a film ?

**Mazin** : No, I'm not. I'm (4) ..... at information for our homework.

### B. Reading Comprehension

### 2 Read and match :

(A)	(B)
1. (            ) What food do you like ?	a. I'm quite short with dark hair.
2. (         ) Fares is doing his	b. chess online.
3. (            ) What do you look like ?	c. I like fish with rice.
4. (            ) I'm playing	d. computer studies homework.



**3 Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Mr Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Friday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch; chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant near the school. He loves the food there. The cook makes it all himself.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. Where does Mr Taha work ?

.....

2. What does he usually eat for lunch at his home ?

.....

3. Who makes the food in the restaurant ?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

4. The weather is sometimes ..... in Port Said.

- a. rainy      b. sunny      c. hot      d. cloudy

5. The underlined word "there" refers to the ...

- a. club      b. home      c. school      d. restaurant

**C. Usage and writing****4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Something scary makes you feel ...

- a. clever      b. happy      c. funny      d. frightened

2. We ..... go to school on Fridays.

- a. never      b. always      c. often      d. sometimes

3. .... the water when you make a cup of tea.

- a. Boil      b. Boils      c. Boiled      d. Boiling

4. Who has ..... a bag with balls on it ?

- a. get      b. gets      c. got      d. getting

5. There ..... cheese in the fridge.

- a. is any      b. are any      c. are some      d. is some



**5 Read and correct the underlined words :**

1. You are very good at play tennis. ( ..... )
2. Let's made lunch. ( ..... )
3. What is your mother look like ? ( ..... )
4. This is Alis phone. It's new. ( ..... )
5. First, putting some water in the kettle. ( ..... )

**6 Reorder the words to make questions :**

1. your / live / do / grandparents / Where ?  
.....
2. a / mountain / Did / climb / you / yesterday ?  
.....
3. brother / Does / football / your / play ?  
.....

**7 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :  
"Your best friend"**

.....

.....

.....

.....

**22**

**Al-Azhar Al-Sharif**

**A. Language Functions**

**1 Complete the following dialogue :**

**Tarek** : Sports are very good for us. (1) ..... you like sports ?

**Kareem** : Yes, I like sports very much.

**Tarek** : What is your (2) ..... sport ?

**Kareem** : My favourite sport is football. What about you ?

**Tarek** : I (3) ..... tennis.

**Kareem** : When do you practise it ?

**Tarek** : I practise it (4) ..... Fridays.



**2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues :**

1. Alaa : What does your father look like ?

Hany : .....

2. Hassan : ..... ?

Ahmed : I went to Hurghada on holiday.

**B. Reading Comprehension****3 Read and match :**

(A)	(B)
1. (.....) There aren't	a. we use a mouse in this lesson.
2. (.....) In computer studies,	b. the opposite of weak.
3. (.....) She is sending	c. in the desert.
4. (.....) Strong is	d. you a photo now.
5. (.....) There are camels	e. any figs in the cupboard.

**4 Read the following , then answer the questions :**

Egyptian food is popular all over the world. Salma's favourite soup is molokhia. It's a kind of vegetable soup and it's very healthy. Her friend, Noha likes koshari. Koshari is a very popular dish. There isn't any meat in it, but there are lentils. The other main ingredients are rice and pasta. There aren't any tomatoes in this dish, but it's delicious with some tomato sauce on the top.

**a. Answer the following questions :**

1. What kind of soup is molokhia ?

.....

2. What are the ingredients of koshari ?

.....

3. What is Salma's favourite soup ?

.....

**b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

4. Koshari is ..... with some tomato sauce on the top.

a. cold

b. salty

c. hot

d. delicious

5. There isn't any ..... in koshari.

a. pasta

b. meat

c. lentil

d. tomatoes



## C. Usage and Writing

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A brave person is ready to do something .....  
a. fun                      b. strange                      c. dangerous                      d. bad
2. I like biscuits with ..... raisins in them.  
a. too little                      b. too much                      c. any                      d. a lot of
3. You can ..... a video call to your cousin in England.  
a. send                      b. write                      c. make                      d. take
4. Munir and Mostafa are twins. .... sister is called Radwa.  
a. His                      b. Her                      c. Their                      d. Our
5. A ..... is a hole in the mountain.  
a. lake                      b. cave                      c. river                      d. forest
6. My sister Huda has got long hair ..... glasses.  
a. so                      b. because                      c. but                      d. and
7. We went to the beach and ..... in the sea.  
a. swam                      b. swim                      c. swum                      d. swims
8. The canoe ..... the children to school every day.  
a. drives                      b. takes                      c. rides                      d. cycles

## 6 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I do voluntary job at a children's hospital. ( ..... )
2. Grandma is read a book. ( ..... )
3. I stay many subjects at school. ( ..... )
4. Let's had some juice. ( ..... )
5. We can give money to help rich people. ( ..... )

## 7 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

*"Your best friend"*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



23

Gharbia Governorate

East Tanta Directorate

امتحان خاص بطلاب الدمج

**A. Language Functions****1 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

1. What is your favourite subject ? .....
  - a. It's English
  - b. It's basketball
  - c. It's chicken
2. Do you like vegetables ? .....
  - a. I'm sorry
  - b. Yes, I do
  - c. No, I can't
3. How do you go to school ? .....
  - a. I get up at 7:00
  - b. I play football
  - c. I go to school by car

**B. Vocabulary & Structure****2 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

1. A ..... is a group of people who play music together.
  - a. band
  - b. hobby
  - c. chess
2. It is not your watch. It is .....
  - a. me
  - b. mine
  - c. my
3. Some students ..... to school.
  - a. fly
  - b. swim
  - c. cycle
4. We ..... got some bread.
  - a. are
  - b. has
  - c. have
5. My friend sent me a ..... message yesterday.
  - a. test
  - b. text
  - c. taxi
6. The children are ..... football.
  - a. playing
  - b. play
  - c. played



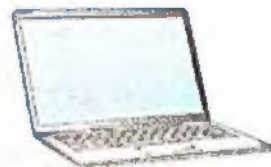
### C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the sentence under each picture and put (✓) or (X) :

1. He is reading a book. ( )



2. It is a laptop. ( )



3. It is a mouse. ( )



4 Finish the sentences with words from the list :

did – female – are – short – should – tent

1. "Male" is the opposite of .....
2. My hair is .....
3. We sleep in a ..... in the desert.
4. When ..... you do your homework yesterday ?
5. There ..... four books on the table.
6. You ..... do sport every day.

5 Rearrange the following words to make meaningful sentences :

1. the – English – language – England – is – of.

2. clever – person – knows – A – a lot.

3. can – fast – you – run – How ?